



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

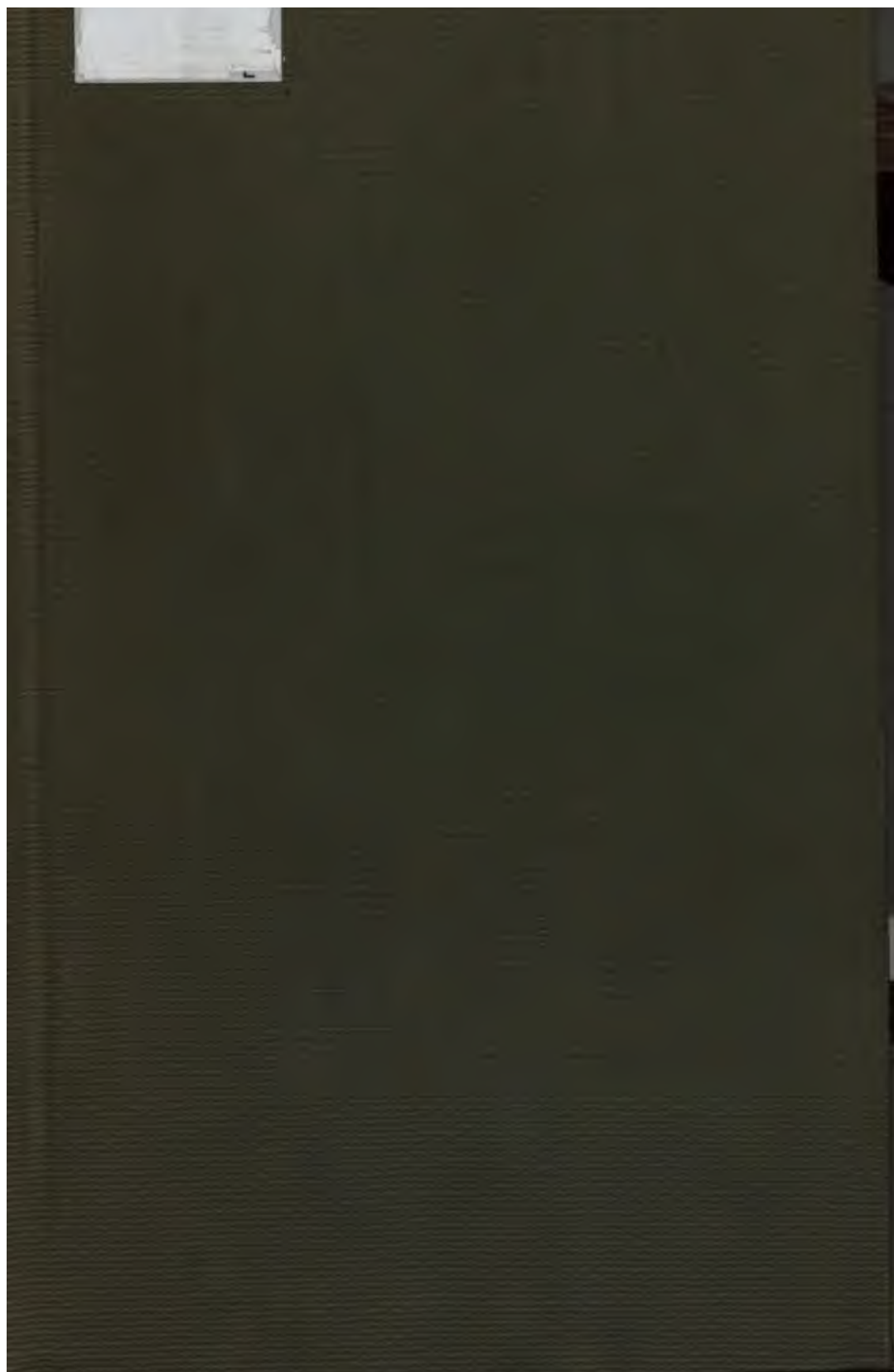
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>











of polycarp and the apostolic fathers.

THE  
**GENUINE EPISTLES**

OF THE

**Apostolical Fathers,**

ST. BARNABAS,  
ST. IGNATIUS,  
ST. CLEMENT,

ST. POLYCARP;  
THE SHEPHERD OF  
HERMAS;

AND THE

MARTYRDOMS OF ST. IGNATIUS AND ST. POLYCARP;

WRITTEN

*By those who were present at their Sufferings:*

BEING,

TOGETHER WITH THE HOLY SCRIPTURES

OF

*The New Testament,*

A COMPLETE COLLECTION OF THE MOST PRIMITIVE ANTIQUITY,

FOR ABOUT

*A Hundred and Fifty Years after Christ.*

---

TRANSLATED AND PUBLISHED,

WITH

A PRELIMINARY DISCOURSE,

BY THE

MOST REVEREND FATHER IN GOD,

WILLIAM, LATE LORD ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY.

---

THE FIFTH EDITION.

---

**LONDON:**

PRINTED FOR SAMUEL BAGSTER,  
NO. 15, PATERNOSTER ROW.

---

MDCCKXVII.

W. Flint, Printer, Old Bailey, London.

578  
A645.2

Eng

## 1875 PREFACE.

HAVING, in the Second Edition of "The Apostolical Fathers," so far improved the Translation I before published of them, as to render it almost a new work, it will be necessary for me to give some account of the changes that have been made in it, and what advantages I have had for the making of them.

The EPISTLES of ST. CLEMENT had been so correctly set forth from the Alexandrian Manuscript, by the learned Mr. PATRICK YOUNG, that having no other copy to recur to, there are no considerable alterations to be expected in the present edition of them. And yet, even in these, I have not only carefully reviewed my Translation, and compared it with the Original Greek, and corrected whatsoever I thought to be less exact in it, but, by the help of a new and more accurate collation of Mr. YOUNG's copy with that venerable MS. from which it was taken, I have amended some places in the text itself, which had hitherto escaped all the Editors of these Epistles. For this I was beholden to the friendly assistance of the very learned and pious Dr. GRABE; to whose ready help these Apostolical Fathers owe a great part of that exactness, with which, I presume, they will appear in this edition of them.

The EPISTLES of ST. IGNATIUS having been lately published at Oxford, by our Reverend

## PREFACE.

Dr. SMITH, not only with a much greater correctness in the text than ever they were before, but with the advantage of his own and Bishop PEARSON's observations upon the difficult places of them, it cannot be thought but that I must have very much improved my Translation of those Epistles, from the learned labours of two such eminent masters of antiquity; and who had taken such great care, not only to restore those venerable pieces to their primitive purity, but to render them clear and intelligible to the meanest capacities. One of those Epistles had never been set forth, from any good MS. in its Original Greek, when I published my first edition of them. This, together with the Martyrdom of that blessed Saint, has since been printed by Monsieur RUINARD at Paris, and from thence by Dr. GRABE at Oxford. I have compared my Translation of both with their copy; and not only corrected it where it disagreed with that, but have noted in the margin the chief variations of this last edition, from those which had been published by Archbishop USHER, and ISAAC VOSSIUS before.

Of the EPISTLE, and MARTYRDOM, of ST. POLYCARP, and the EPISTLE of BARNABAS, I have little to say more, than that I have revised the Translation of them with all the care I could, and rendered it much more correct (especially the EPISTLE of BARNABAS) than it was before. But as for the BOOKS of HERMAS, I may without vanity affirm, that they are not only more exact in the Translation than they were before, but that the

## PREFACE.

very Books themselves will be found in greater purity in this, than in any other edition that has ever yet been published of them. The Old Latin Version has been entirely collated with an ancient manuscript of it in the Lambeth Library; and from thence amended in more places than could well have been imagined. And that very Version itself has been farther improved from a multitude of new Fragments of the Original Greek, never before observed; and for the most part taken out of the late magnificent edition of the Works of ST. ATHANASIUS; though that Piece be none of his, but the Work of the YOUNGER ATHANASIUS, Patriarch of the same church, who lived about the seventh century. [See tom. II. p. 251, *Doctrin. ad Antioch. Ducem.*] Both these advantages I do likewise owe to the same learned person I before mentioned; who not only purposely collated the one for me, but readily communicated to me the extracts he had made for his own use out of the other.

Having said thus much concerning the several Pieces themselves here set forth, and the Translation of them, I shall not trouble the Reader with any long account of my own Introductory Discourse; in which I have added some things, and corrected others. I hope, as it now stands, it may be of some use to those who have not any better opportunities of being acquainted with these matters; and convince them of the just regard that is due to the Discourses which follow it, upon this double account, both that they were (for the most part)

---

<sup>1</sup> Dr. Grabe.

## PREFACE.

truly written by those whose names they bear; and that those writers lived so near the Apostolical times, that it cannot be doubted but that they do indeed represent to us the doctrine, government, and discipline of the Church, as they received it from the Apostles; the Apostles from Christ, and that blessed Spirit, who directed them, both in what they taught, and in what they ordained.

What that doctrine, government, and discipline is, I have particularly shewn in the eleventh chapter of my Discourse. I shall only observe here, that it is so exactly agreeable to the present doctrine, government, and discipline of the Church of England by law established, that no one who allows of the one, can reasonably make any exceptions against the other. So that we must either say, that the immediate successors of the Apostles had departed from the institutions of those holy men from whom they received their instruction in the Gospel of Christ, and by whom they were converted to the faith of it: or, if that be too unreasonable to be supposed of such excellent persons, who not only lived in some of the highest stations of the Christian Church, but the most of them suffered martyrdom for the sake of it, we must then conclude, what is indeed the truth, that the Church of England, whereof we are members, is, both in its doctrine, government, discipline, and worship, truly Apostolical; and in all respects comes the nearest up to the primitive pattern of any Christian Church at this day in the world.

GENERAL  
CONTENTS.

---

PRELIMINARY DISCOURSE, *relating to the several Treatises, and the Authors of them.*

PART I.

*The First Epistle of ST. CLEMENT to the CORINTHIANS.*

*The Epistle of ST. POLYCARP to the PHILIPPIANS.*

*The Genuine Epistles of ST. IGNATIUS.*

*A Relation of the Martyrdom of ST. IGNATIUS, written by those who were present at his Sufferings.*

*The Epistle of the Church of Smyrna, concerning the Martyrdom of ST. POLYCARP.*

PART II.

*The Catholic Epistle of ST. BARNABAS.*

*The SHEPHERD of HERMAS, in three Books.*

*The Remains of ST. CLEMENT's Second Epistle to the CORINTHIANS.*

---

*An INDEX to both Parts.*

PRELIMI-





# PRELIMINARY DISCOURSE

---

RELATING TO  
THE SEVERAL TREATISES HEREIN CONTAINED,  
AND  
*THE AUTHORS OF THEM.*

---

## CHAP. I.

### THE INTRODUCTION.

1. **H**AD I designed the following Collection either for the benefit or perusal of the Learned World, I should have needed to say but very little by way of introduction to it: the Editors of the several treatises here put together having already observed so much upon each of them, that it would, I believe, be difficult to discover—I am sure would be very needless to trouble the reader with—any more.

2. But, as it would be ridiculous for me to pretend to have designed a Translation for those who are able, with much more profit and satisfaction, to go to the Originals; so, being now to address myself to those especially who want that ability, I suppose it may not be amiss, before I lead them to the Discourses themselves, to give them some account both of the Authors of the several pieces I have here collected, and of the Tracts themselves, and of that Collection that is now the first time made of them in our own tongue. Though, as to the first of these, I shall say the less, by reason of that excellent account that has been already given of the most of them by our pious and learned

Dr. Cave, whose *Lives of the Apostles and Primitive Fathers*, with his other admirable discourse on *Primitive Christianity*, I could heartily wish were in the hands of all the more judicious part of our English readers.

3. Nor may such an account, as I now propose to myself to give of the following pieces, be altogether useless to some even of the Learned themselves; who, wanting either the opportunity of collecting the several Authors necessary for such a search, or leisure to examine them, may not be unwilling to see that faithfully brought together, under one short and general view, which would have required some time and labour to have searched out, as it lay diffused in a multitude of Writers, out of which they must otherwise have gathered it.

## CHAP. II.

### OF THE FIRST EPISTLE OF ST. CLEMENT TO THE CORINTHIANS.

*Of the value which the Ancients put upon this Epistle—Of St. CLEMENT himself, who was the author of it—That it was the same CLEMENT of whom St. PAUL speaks, Phil. iv. 3.—Of his Conversion to Christianity—When he became Bishop of Rome, as also whether he suffered Martyrdom uncertain—Of the occasion of his writing this Epistle, and the two main parts of it—Of the time when it was written—That there is no reason to doubt but that the Epistle we now have was truly written by St. CLEMENT—The objection of TENTZELIUS against it of no force—How this Epistle was first published by Mr. PATRICK YOUNG; and translated by Mr. BURTON into English—Of the present edition of it.*

1. THE first Tract which begins this Collection, and perhaps the most worthy too, is that admirable, or, as some of the Ancients have

called it, that "Wonderful Epistle of St. Clement to the Corinthians<sup>1</sup>;" which he wrote, not in his own name, but in the name of the whole Church of Rome, to them;—an epistle so highly esteemed by the Primitive Church, that we are told it was wont to be publickly read in the assemblies<sup>2</sup> of it; and, if we may credit one of the ancient Collections of the Canon of Scripture<sup>3</sup>, was placed among the sacred and inspired writings. Nor is it any small evidence of the value which in those days was put upon this epistle, that in the only copy which, for aught we know, at this day remains of it, we find it to have been written in the same volume<sup>4</sup> with the books of the New Testament: which seems to confirm what was before observed concerning it, that it was heretofore wont to be read in the congregations together with the Holy Scriptures of the Apostles and Evangelists.

2. But of the epistle itself, I shall take occasion to speak more particularly by and by. It will now be more proper to inquire a little into the author of it; and consider when, and upon what occasion, it was written by him.

3. And, first, for what concerns the person who wrote this epistle, it is no small commendation which the Holy Ghost, by St. Paul, has left us of him; Phil. iv. 3. where the Apostle mentions him, not only as his fellow-labourer in the work of the Gospel, but as one whose name was written in the Book of Life;—a character which, if we will allow our Saviour to be the judge, far exceeds that of the highest power and dignity, and who therefore, when his Disciples began to rejoice upon

---

<sup>1</sup> Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. iii. cap. 16.

<sup>2</sup> Idem. lib. iii. cap. 12.

<sup>3</sup> Canon. Apostol. Can. ult.

<sup>4</sup> MS. Alexan.

the account of that authority which he had bestowed upon them, insomuch *that even the devils were subject unto them*, Luke x. 17. though he seemed to allow that there was a just matter of joy in such an extraordinary power, yet bade them *Not to rejoice so much in this, that those spirits were subject unto them; but rather (says he) rejoice that your names are written in the Book of Life.*

4. It is indeed insinuated by a late very learned critic<sup>1</sup>, as if this were not that Clement of whom we are now discoursing, and whose Epistle to the Corinthians I have here subjoined. But, besides that, he himself confesses that the person of whom St. Paul there speaks was a Roman. Both Eusebius, and Epiphanius, and St. Hierome,<sup>2</sup> expressly tell us, that the Clement there meant was the same that was afterwards Bishop of Rome: nor do we read of any other to whom either the character there mentioned, of being the fellow-labourer of that Apostle, or the elogy given of having *his name written in the Book of Life*, could so properly belong, as to him; whom therefore the generality of learned men, both of the ancient and present times, without scruple conclude to have been referred to in that passage.

5. I shall not say any thing of what is reported by some<sup>3</sup> concerning his noble birth and family; of his studies at Athens; and of the occasion and manner of his conversion to Christianity; which they tell us was wrought by St. Peter, whom he met with Barnabas at Cæsarea, and who there first declared to him the doctrine of Christ, and

<sup>1</sup> Grot. Annot. in Phil. iv. 3.

<sup>2</sup> Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. iii. cap. 12. Epiph. lib. i. adv. Carpocr. n. 6. Hieronym. de Script. Eccles. Et Comment. in loc. Item, lib. i. adv. Jovin. Photii Cod. tmem. 113, &c.

<sup>3</sup> Vid. Eucher. Lugd. de Contempt. Mundi, et Chron. Albert. Stad. inter Testimonia a Junio citata.

inclined him to a good opinion of it: all which is very uncertain, and justly doubted of by many. I shall choose rather to observe, that whatever his condition was before he became a Christian, he was held in no small reputation after, but merited such a character from the ancient Fathers as is hardly given to any besides the Apostles. Nay, some of them doubt not in plain terms to call him an Apostle<sup>4</sup>: and though St. Hierome durst not go so far as that, yet he gives him another title but little short of it; he tells us that he was an "apostolical man<sup>5</sup>," and, as Ruffinus adds<sup>6</sup>, "almost an apostle."

6. To declare more particularly how he spent the first part of his life, after his conversion, is neither necessary to the design I have now in hand, nor can any certain account be given of it: only, as we are told in the general that he was St. Peter's disciple, so it may not be improbable that for some time he attended his motions, and was subject to his direction.

7. But whatever he was, or wherever he laboured before, in this I think antiquity is absolutely agreed, that he at last came to be bishop of Rome, and was placed in that See by the express direction of one or both the Apostles, St. Peter and St. Paul. To whom he succeeded, or at what time to fix his entrance on that great charge, is a point that I suppose will never be agreed upon among learned men. If any could have settled this matter beyond dispute, it had without question been done by those<sup>7</sup> of our own nation, who, as they

---

<sup>4</sup> Clem. Alex. Strom. lib. iv.

<sup>5</sup> Hieron. in Isaiam, c. 52.

<sup>6</sup> De Adulterat. lib. Originis.

<sup>7</sup> Pearson Dissert. de Success. prim. RR. PP. cum Append. Hen. Dodwelli. Pearson. Dissert. Posthum. cap. v. num. 7.

have the latest searched with all possible diligence into it, so never were there any better qualified for the determination of it. But, as their mutual disagreement<sup>1</sup>, after all their endeavours to fix this point, shews that one of them must have been mistaken, so I doubt not but it will sufficiently satisfy all such as shall consider the high character they have so justly obtained, both by their learning and judgment in these kind of disquisitions, that they are points not to be determined; and that he who shall do the best upon them, may only be said to have made a good guess, in a subject too hard for any at this distance clearly to decide<sup>2</sup>."

8. Nor is there any less controversy, among learned men, concerning the death of St. Clement, than there has been about the order and time of his succession to his bishopric. That he lived in expectation of martyrdom, and was ready to have undergone it, should it have pleased God to have called him to it, the epistle<sup>3</sup> we are now speaking of sufficiently shews us. But that he did glorify God by those particular sufferings which some have pretended, is, I confess, to me a matter of some doubt. For, first, it must be acknowledged that Ruffinus<sup>4</sup> is one of the first authors we have that speaks of him as a martyr. Neither Eusebius, (who is usually very exact in his observation of such things), nor any of the Fathers yet nearer his time, as Irenæus, Clemens Alexandrinus, Tertullian, &c. take any notice of it. And for the account which some others have yet

<sup>1</sup> Dodwelli Dissert. singul. cap. xv. p. 220.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. cap. xi. p. 151.

<sup>3</sup> Clem. *Epistle to the Corinths*. num. vii.

<sup>4</sup> De Adulterat. lib. Orig.

<sup>5</sup> Hist. Eccles. lib. iii. c. 34.

more lately given us of the manner of his death, besides that in some parts it is altogether fabulous, it is not improbable but that, as our learned Mr. Dodwell<sup>6</sup> has observed, the first rise of it may have been owing to their confounding Flavius Clemens, the Roman consul, with Clement bishop of Rome; who did indeed suffer<sup>7</sup> martyrdom for the faith about the time of which they speak, and some other parts of whose character, such as his relation to the Emperor and banishment into Pontus, they manifestly ascribe to him.

9. However, seeing Eusebius<sup>8</sup> refers his death to the third year of Trajan, famous for the persecution of the Church, and may thereby seem to insinuate that Clement also then suffered among the rest; and that Simeon Metaphrastes<sup>9</sup> has given a long and particular account of his condemnation, to the mines first, and then of his death following thereupon; as I shall not determine any thing against it, so they who are desirous to know what is usually said concerning the passion of this holy man, may abundantly satisfy their curiosity in this particular, from the accurate Collection of Dr. Cave, in the Life of this Saint, too long to be transcribed into the present discourse.

10. And this may suffice to have been observed, in short, concerning St. Clement himself. As for the Epistle we are now speaking of to the Corinthians, I have already taken notice how great a value was put upon it in the most primitive ages of the Church, and what a mighty commendation has

---

<sup>6</sup> Dodwelli Addit. ad cap. vi. Dissert. Posthum. Pearson. num. 22. p. 215.

<sup>7</sup> Vid. Euseb. Chron. An. xcvii. Et in Euseb. Annot. Scalig. p. 205. b. Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. iii. cap. 18.

<sup>8</sup> Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. iii. cap. 34.

<sup>9</sup> Apud Coteler. Patr. Apostol. tom. I.



been left us of it, by the writers of those times. Nor indeed does it at all come short of the highest praises which they have given to it; being a piece composed with such an admirable spirit of love and charity; of zeal towards God, and of concern for the Church of Christ; of the most excellent exhortations, delivered with the greatest plainness and simplicity of speech, and yet pressed many times with such moving eloquence too, that I cannot imagine what could have been desired in such an epistle more proper for the end for which it was composed; what could have been written more becoming an apostolical age, and the pen of one of the most eminent bishops of it.

11. But that it may be the better understood by those who shall now think fit to peruse it, there are a few things which it will be necessary for me, in this place, to observe concerning it.

12. And the first is, the occasion that was given for the writing of this epistle. For however we have no particular account what it was, yet may we, from the subject of it, give a very probable guess at it. When St. Paul wrote his First Epistle to the Corinthians, the two great things that seemed to have especially called for it, were, first, the divisions of that Church upon the account of their teachers, and through their vain conceit of their own spiritual gifts; and, secondly, the great mistake that was getting in among them concerning the nature of the future resurrection. And however the apostle, by his writing and authority, did for the present put a stop to the one, and set them right as to the other, yet it seems, after his death, they began again to fall not only into the same contentions, but into the same error too, that had caused them so much trouble before.

13. Now this gave occasion to St. Clement to write the present epistle to them: in which, having first taken notice of the rise of those new seditions that were broken out among them, and exhorted them to a Christian composure of them, he, in the next place, goes on, by many arguments, to establish the undoubted truth and certainty of the future resurrection; which was the other thing in which St. Paul had before observed them to have been greatly and dangerously mistaken.

14. This then was the occasion, and is the main subject and design of the following epistle. But now about what time it was written, is not so easy to determine. Junius<sup>1</sup> supposes it was written by St. Clement, in the name of the Church of Rome, about two years before his martyrdom, and that from the place of his banishment; which also seems to have been the opinion of our learned Mr. Burton<sup>2</sup>, in his Notes upon this epistle. Baronius<sup>3</sup> places it six or seven years sooner, about the twelfth year of Domitian. With him Cotelierius<sup>4</sup> agrees; only he supposes the persecution was then drawing towards an end; it being otherwise unlikely that such an embassy could have been sent from Rome with the epistle, as by the close of it we find there was. But Mr. Dodwell<sup>5</sup>, with much greater probability, thinks it to have been written yet sooner, viz. immediately after the end of Nero's persecution; and to that refers those troubles complained of by St. Clement in the very beginning of his epistle<sup>6</sup>, and in which he elsewhere speaks of

---

<sup>1</sup> Vid. in Annot. in Epist. Clem. in princip.

<sup>2</sup> Annot. 2. p. 41.

<sup>3</sup> Baron. Annal. ad Ann. xcv. num. 1.

<sup>4</sup> Cotelier. Not. in Clem. Epist. p. 82.

<sup>5</sup> Dodwelli Append. ad cap. vi. Dissert. 3. Pearson, p. 219. num. 24.

<sup>6</sup> Epistle, c. i.

<sup>7</sup> Ibid. c. v.

St. Peter and St. Paul, as some of the latest instances of any that had died for the sake of their religion.

15. Now that which seems yet more to countenance this opinion is, that St. Clement, in another part of his epistle<sup>1</sup>, speaks of the Temple service not only as still continuing, but as being in such a state as necessarily supposes all things to have been yet in peace and quiet at Jerusalem. From whence that learned man<sup>2</sup>, with great reason, concludes that this epistle must have been written somewhat before the twelfth year of Nero, in which the Jewish wars first broke out. Let us add to this, that in the close of this epistle we find mention made of Fortunatus<sup>3</sup>, as the person whom the Church of Corinth had probably sent to Rome with an account of their disasters; and by whom, together with the two delegates of their own, the Roman Church returned this epistle to the Corinthians. Now Fortunatus is expressly said, by St. Paul, to have been an old disciple in his time; insomuch, that he places him with Stephanas, who was the first fruits of Achaia. (1 Cor. xvi. 15, 17.) And therefore we must conclude, that this epistle could not have been written so late as some would have it, seeing this man was not only still alive, but in a condition of undertaking so great a journey as from Corinth to Rome: for from thence, it is most likely, he was sent with a letter from that Church to Rome, and so became the bearer of this epistle, which was written in the name of the Church of Rome in answer to it.

16. I conclude, then, that this epistle was written shortly after the end of the persecution

---

<sup>1</sup> Chap. xli.

<sup>2</sup> Dodwelli loc. supr. cit.

<sup>3</sup> Epist. c. lix.

under Nero<sup>4</sup>, between the 64th and 70th year of Christ; and that, as the learned defender of this period supposes, in the vacancy of the See of Rome, before the promotion of St. Clement to the government of it. But of this last circumstance, as there is no certainty, so the express authority of Tertullian<sup>5</sup>, that St. Clement was made bishop of Rome by St. Peter, and this delivered as the tradition of the Roman Church in the days that he lived, has inclined others rather to think that he must have been bishop of that church when he wrote this epistle; though neither can this be affirmed as certain and indubitable.

17. But this is not all: There is still a difficulty remaining, and that of much greater consequence than any I have hitherto mentioned: namely, whether the epistle we now have be, after all, the genuine Epistle of St. Clement, so much applauded by the Ancients; so long looked upon as lost to us; and so lately discovered in the last age. And this I mention, not that I think there is any real occasion offered to incline us to doubt of it, but because I find there are some<sup>6</sup> who would seem still to make a question of it.

18. And here I would, in the first place, ask these wary men, What mark they can propose, whereby to distinguish the true work of any antient writer from a false and supposititious, that does not occur in the present piece?

19. That St. Clement<sup>7</sup> wrote an Epistle to the

---

<sup>4</sup> Dodwel. loc. sup. cit. Add. Cave Hist. Literar. in Clement. p. 18. Compare Dr. Grabe Spicileg. tom. I. p. 255, &c.

<sup>5</sup> De Præscript. adv. Hæres. cap. 32.

<sup>6</sup> See Dr. Grabe, loc. cit. p. 259.

<sup>7</sup> Callovius Bibl. Illustr. N. T. tom. II. Exam. Præf. Grot. in 1 Cor. p. 250. Voëtius Paralip. p. 1167, &c. Vid. Tentzel. Exercit. select. Exerc. 2. de Phœnice.

<sup>8</sup> Vid. Collov. Oper. Socin. tom. II. p. 427.

Corinthians; that he wrote it on the same occasion that we find expressed in this we now have; that this epistle was of great reputation, so as to be publicly read in the churches heretofore; all this the authority of the ancient Fathers will not suffer us to doubt. That the copy we now have of this epistle was taken from the end of a manuscript of the New Testament, written, as is supposed, not long after the first general council of Nice, about three hundred years after St. Clement's death; and at the very time that it was yet wont to be so read in the churches; both the learned editor<sup>1</sup> of it assures us, and the manuscript itself sufficiently declares. Now, how can it be supposed, that an epistle so famous in those days, so well known to every Christian at that time when the very copy was written which we at this day have of it, should have been alone concealed from the transcriber of this manuscript Bible, and a spurious piece introduced to supply the place of it?

20. Nor is this all: for if we have not now the true copy of this epistle, it is manifest that then neither had the ancient Fathers of those first ages a true copy of it; for the passages which they have quoted<sup>2</sup> are the very same in our epistle: and so they too were imposed upon, no less than we are, in this matter. And can this be rationally supposed? Can we think that those great men, and diligent searchers into antiquity, were ignorant of an epistle, not only in every body's hand, but almost in every body's memory, through their constant reading and hearing of it.

21. Yet farther: Let me ask those who call in

---

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Jun. Præfat. in Epist. Clem.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. Baron. Annal. Anno xcv. Num. lii. &c.

question the credit of this excellent piece, What do they find in it either unworthy of St. Clement, or disagreeable to those times in which we suppose it to have been written? Certainly, if this be a counterfeit piece, it was not only exceedingly well done, but without any design to serve any party or interest by it; there being nothing in the whole epistle that might not have become as excellent an age, and as holy a man, as that age and that man were, in which we have all the reason in the world to believe it was composed.

22. But what then is it that makes these learned men so unwilling to own this epistle to be the genuine work of that holy bishop to whom we ascribe it? It is in short this: That the author of this epistle, in proof of the possibility of a future resurrection, reports the story of the Phœnix reviving out of its own ashes; which is not only a thing false in itself, but unworthy of such a person as St. Clement to mention.

23. Now not to say any thing as to this matter: 1st. That Photius<sup>3</sup>, a severe critic of the ancient Fathers, who first started it as a fault in St. Clement; that he made use of this as a true observation, which it seems the other looked upon as a mere fable, yet did not think it any objection against the authority of this epistle, which he nevertheless acknowledged to be St. Clement's. To pass by, 2dly, That the generality of the ancient Fathers have made use of the very same instance, in proof of the same point; as the learned Junius has particularly shewn, in his Notes upon this passage; and the authority of whose works no

---

<sup>3</sup> Tentablius Dissert. Select. de Phœnice, p. 33. Et Num. xvi. p. 45.

<sup>4</sup> Photii Biblioth. tmem. cxxvi. p. 306.

<sup>5</sup> Tertullian. Origen. Cyril. Hierosolym. Euseb. Greg. Nas. Epiphanius, Synesius, Hieronym. Lactantius, &c. Jun. Note in Clem. p. 34.

one yet ever called in question upon that account. I would only ask, 3dly, What if St. Clement really believed the truth of what he here wrote concerning this matter; that there was such a bird, and that he did revive out of the cinders of the body before burnt? Where was the great harm, either in giving credit to such a wonder, or, believing it, to make such a use as he here does of it?

24. The truth is, whosoever shall consider both the general credit which this story had in those days; and the particular accident which fell out, not long before the time that this epistle was written, to confirm their belief of it, (of which one of the most judicious of all the Roman historians<sup>1</sup> has left us a large account,) I mean of the Phoenix that was said to have come into Egypt a little after the death of Christ, and to have given occasion of much discourse to the most learned men, both of the Greeks and Romans, concerning the very miracle of which St. Clement here speaks; will find it to have been no such strange thing in this holy man to have suffered himself to be led away with the common opinion; and to have believed what so many learned men did, among the Jews<sup>2</sup> and Gentiles<sup>3</sup>, no less than among the Christians; viz. That God was pleased to give to the world this great earnest and type of a future resurrection; and to silence thereby the cavils of such as should pretend (what we know the generality of the wise men of the world did) that it was impossible for God to effect such a restitution.

---

<sup>1</sup> Tacitus Annal. lib. vi. num. 28.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. Annot. Edit. Oxon. in loc. Ezechartus Hierozoic. in Phœnice, &c. apud Tentzel. pag. 18, 19.

<sup>3</sup> Vid. Ed. Oxon. loc. cit. Adde Annot. Schetti in Photium, tæm. cævi. pag. 305.

25. But I insist too long on so trifling an objection, however magnified by some men; and may, I think, from what I have said, conclude, that if this be indeed, as they confess it is<sup>4</sup>, the greatest ground they have to call in question the credit of this epistle, there is then nothing that ought to move any considering man to entertain the least doubt or scruple concerning it.

26. There are, indeed, two other exceptions which Photius has made against St. Clement<sup>5</sup>, upon the account of the epistle before us, which yet he looked upon as unquestionably his. The one, for that he speaks in it of the "Worlds beyond the ocean:" the other, in that he seems not to have written so honourably as was fitting of the Divinity of our Blessed Saviour. But, as the latter of these is but a mere cavil against this holy man, who not only in his other epistle expressly asserts the divine nature of Christ, but even in this speaks in such a manner of him as shews him to be much more than a mere creature<sup>6</sup>; so in the former he said nothing but what was agreeable both to the notions and language of the times in which he lived, when it was common to call our British Isles another world, or, as St. Clement here styles them, the "Worlds beyond the ocean."

27. And these, I think, are the chief exceptions that have been raised against the following epistle; and which, however insisted upon in these latter times, yet did not hinder the first and best ages of the Church, when men were less curious, but much

---

<sup>4</sup> "Aliis argumentis, tum HOC IMPRIMIS." Tentzel. Dissert. cit. p. 33.

<sup>5</sup> Photii Bibl. cod. cxxvi.

<sup>6</sup> *Indeed to be God.* See Bishop Bull, Def. Fid. Nic. sect. ii. cap. 3. And Dr. Grabe's learned Annot. on that chapter.



more pious than they now are, from putting a very great value upon it. Nor will they, I suppose, have any more weight with any serious and ingenuous person at this day; or hinder him from esteeming it a very great blessing to our present times, that a work so highly esteemed among the ancient Fathers, but so long (and, as it was justly feared, irrecoverably) lost to these latter ages, was at last so happily found out, for the increase and confirmation both of our faith and charity.

28. Now the manner of its discovery and publication was this. It happened about the beginning of the last age, that Cyril, patriarch of Alexandria, being removed from thence to Constantinople, brought along with him a great treasure of books to that place. Among the rest, he had a very ancient manuscript copy, both of the Septuagint Old, and of the New Greek Testament, written about four hundred years after Christ<sup>1</sup>. This he sent, as the most valuable present that he was master of, to our late royal sovereign King Charles the First, by Sir Thomas Roe, his Majesty's ambassador at that time at the Porte. Being thus brought into England, and placed in the royal library at St. James's, Mr. Patrick Young, the learned keeper of the King's library at that time, discovered this epistle, with part of another, at the end of the New Testament; and was thereupon commanded by his Majesty to publish it for the benefit of the world. This he accordingly did, with a Latin translation, and Notes, at Oxford, anno 1633. It was not long<sup>2</sup> after, that a very learned man, and a great master of the Greek tongue, Mr. William Burton, translated it into English; and published it very accurately, and with new annotations of his own upon it. This I had

---

<sup>1</sup> Vid. *Præfat. Jun. in Edit.*

<sup>2</sup> Anno 1647. Lond. 4to.

not seen till the first sheets of the present edition were sent to the press: nor had I any other knowledge, either of that or of the author, than what I found in the accounts given by our late Reverend Dr. Cave and Monsieur Colomesius<sup>3</sup> of the one, and by our laborious antiquary Mr. A. Wood<sup>4</sup> of the other, in his useful collection of the lives and writings of our modern authors. And though I believe whosoever shall take the pains to compare the two translations together, will find them generally agreeing as to the sense; yet there will otherwise appear such manifest differences between them, as may abundantly satisfy any impartial person that I have truly translated it from the original Greek, and not revised only Mr. Burton's edition of it.

~~~~~  
CHAP. III.

ON THE EPISTLE OF ST. POLYCARP TO THE PHILIPPIANS.

*Of the time when St. POLYCARP wrote this Epistle—The reason of its being placed before the Epistles of IGNATIUS—That St. POLYCARP wrote several other pieces—yet nothing of his now remaining but only this Epistle—Whether this Epistle has been interpolated, as those of IGNATIUS were?—The latter part of it vindicated against the exceptions of Mons. DAILLE, and some others—Of the translation of it into our own language by Dr. CAVE—and of the present edition of it.*

1. THE next piece that follows in the present collection, is the Epistle of St. Polycarp to the Philippians: in placing of which, I have followed the example, not so much of our most reverend archbishop Usher<sup>5</sup>, as of St. Polycarp himself:

---

<sup>3</sup> Edit. Colomesil, lectori. Cave. Hist. Literar. in Clem.

<sup>4</sup> Athenæ Oxon. 2. part. pp. 137, 138.

<sup>5</sup> Edit. Polycarp. et Ignat. Oxon. Annot. 1644.

Though, in the order of time, the Epistles of Ignatius ought to have had the precedence; St. Polycarp not writing this letter to the Philippians till about, or a little after, the time that glorious martyr suffered for the faith of Christ; as from several passages in the epistle itself may plainly be made appear.

2. For, first, having in his ninth chapter exhorted the Philippians to “obey the world of righteousness, and to exercise all patience,” after the examples of those holy men whom they had seen among them, he particularly instances in Ignatius<sup>1</sup> as one of them. Now the acts<sup>2</sup> of the martyrdom of that holy bishop tell us, that the time when they beheld his “patience set forth before their eyes” was, when he passed by them in chains to Rome, in order to his being cast to the wild beasts, according to the sentence pronounced upon him by the emperor Trajan: by consequence that this epistle must have been written some time after his condemnation.

3. But St. Polycarp goes yet farther; and in the next words supposes, that Ignatius might have been dead at the time that he wrote to them. For enforcing his exhortation to them to follow the examples of Ignatius, and the rest of those excellent men whom he there names, he subjoins;—“Being confident of this, that all these have not run in vain, but in faith and righteousness, and are gone to the place that was due to them from the LORD, with whom also they suffered: for they loved not this present world, but him who died, and was raised again by God for us.” In which words he evidently implies that Ignatius too, as well as the rest of those whom he there mentions, was by this time gone to the “place that was due to him from the LORD, upon the account

<sup>1</sup> Epist. of Polycarp, num. ix.

<sup>2</sup> Mart. of Ignat. num. x.

of his sufferings;" and by consequence had finished his martyrdom.

4. It was then about the time of Ignatius's death, that St. Polycarp wrote this epistle to the Philippians. And yet that if this holy man had suffered, it was but a very little time that he had done so, as is clear from another passage of the same epistle<sup>3</sup>; where he desires the Philippians to send him word "what they had heard with any certainty concerning Ignatius, and those that went to Rome with him." From whence it appears, that, though he supposed that Ignatius by that time might have suffered, yet he had not received any certain account of it; but was still to learn the manner and circumstances of his passion.

5. Now this will lead us to a yet more exact conjecture of the time of St. Polycarp's writing the following epistle, viz. that it must have been just about the time of St. Ignatius's death: it being no way probable, that, had Ignatius been any long time dead, so great a bishop, and so dear a friend of his, as St. Polycarp was, should have been still to learn the certainty of it.

6. And this may serve, by the way, not only to fix the time when this epistle was written, namely, at the end of the year of our Lord 116, or in the beginning of 117; but also to shew how groundless the exception of those men<sup>4</sup> is against the authority of it, who pretend to find out a contradiction between the two passages I have now mentioned; and would from thence infer either the utter falseness of this whole epistle, or at least conclude that this latter part of it is none of Polycarp's, but added by some

---

<sup>3</sup> Epist. of Polycarp, num. xiv.

<sup>4</sup> Daillies in Pseudopigr. cap. xxxii. p. 428. Larroque Observat. in Pearson, p. 69.

later hand, to give the greater credit to the Epistles of St. Ignatius, which they are resolved by all means to reject as none of his. For, indeed, were not men willing to be contentious, where is the contradiction they so much boast of between the two places I have before alleged? Is it that in the former of them he sets before them the sufferings of St. Ignatius, and exhorts them to follow the example of his patience? But it is evident the sufferings he there speaks of were those which the Philippians had seen in him; the weight of his chains; the hardships of his journey; the rudeness of the soldiers that guarded him; and of which the blessed martyr himself complains, in one of his epistles<sup>1</sup>; and, to add no more, the expectation of that cruel death he was suddenly to undergo.

7. But I suppose the contradiction lies in what follows; that in one place<sup>2</sup> he speaks of him as if he had already suffered; and yet, in the other, desires the Philippians to send him word what they had heard of it. Now what is there in all this that does not very well agree together? St. Polycarp, either by the computation of the arrival of Ignatius at Rome, or by the consideration of the solemn festival that was wont at that time to be held there, and at which it was usual to exhibit such kind of spectacles to the people; or it may be, lastly, from the accounts which he had received of this holy martyr from some of those that were with him; did suppose, nay, if you will, did not doubt, but that Ignatius was dead when he wrote his Epistle to the Philippians. Yet, having not hitherto received any certain account of it, and not being absolutely sure

---

<sup>1</sup> Ignat. Epist. to the Romans, cap. v.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. Dailléum et Larroque, loc. cit.

whether he had suffered or not ; or, if he had, how he had been treated by his enemies, and how he had behaved himself in his last encounter with the beasts; desires the Philippians, who were much nearer to Rome than he was, and might, therefore, very probably have heard much later from thence than he had done, to send him a certain account of what they knew as to this matter. What is there in all this, I do not say that looks like a contradiction, but that is not very natural, and particularly most becoming the love and friendship of the blessed Polycarp towards him concerning whom he so diligently inquired? I am sure Photius<sup>3</sup>, who had not only read this epistle, but transcribed this last passage out of it, though a severe critic as any that have ever perused it since, saw no contradiction in it to any thing that went before: for if he had, he was not of a humour to have let it pass without making some reflection or other upon it.

8. Let me add yet more ; that neither could those see the contradiction here pretended, who, in our present times, would have been as forward as any to have made use of it to the disadvantage of this epistle, had they had but the least grounds so to do. I shall instance only in two :—the first, the late learned divine of Leyden, Monsieur le Moyne<sup>4</sup>; who, though he judged the passage relating to St. Ignatius's Epistles, which was wanting in his manuscript, to be abrupt, and would from thence argue against the authority of it, yet has he made no reflection on the words immediately following, in which those others will have the contradiction to lie.

9. The other that I shall mention, in opposition

---

<sup>3</sup> Photius *Bibl. tmem.* cxxvi. p. 305.

<sup>4</sup> *Proleg. ad Var. Sacr. in Polycarp.*

to this pretence, is a yet later writer, Ernestus Tentzelius<sup>1</sup>; who, though no great friend to this epistle, which he supposes to have been corrupted, no less than those of Ignatius were in the antient editions of them, yet utterly refuses to comply with this objection, as not apprehending that there was the least ground for it.

10. But, to return from this digression, in answer to the exceptions of two of the most learned adversaries of this epistle, against the credit of it. Though, as I have now shewn, St. Polycarp wrote not to the Philippians till after the death of St. Ignatius; and consequently this epistle, in order of time, ought to have been placed after those which the other wrote immediately before it; yet was it fit to give this the precedency in the following Collection, both as containing a most proper introduction to the Epistles of Ignatius, and as having, in all probability, been first sent, in the same order, by St. Polycarp to the Philippians.

11. For thus we find that holy man speaking to them in the close of his letter<sup>2</sup>: “The Epistles of Ignatius, which he wrote unto us, together with what others of his have come to our hands, we have sent unto you according to your order; which are subjoined to this epistle.” So both Eusebius<sup>3</sup> transcribed it out of the original Greek; and so we find it in our antient Latin version<sup>4</sup>, which is all that remains of that part of this epistle. From whence our learned archbishop Usher<sup>5</sup>, with great reason, concludes, that St. Polycarp caused the copies of St. Ignatius’s Epistles to be imme-

---

<sup>1</sup> Exercit. Select. exerc. iv. num. 42. p. 157.

<sup>2</sup> Polycarp. Epist. num. xiii.

<sup>3</sup> Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. iii. cap. 36.

<sup>4</sup> Apud Usser. p. 24.

<sup>5</sup> Dissert. de Ignat. Epist. cap. ii.

diately added at the end of his own; and sent them to the Philippians together with it.

12. And this, perhaps, may have been one great means of preserving this epistle of St. Polycarp from the fate that has attended all the rest of his writings. For being wont to be transcribed together with those of Ignatius, and commonly placed at the front of them, they mutually helped to secure one another: whilst the rest of his writings, for want of being thus collected together, have for a long time been so utterly lost to the world, that neither Photius<sup>6</sup>, nor St. Hierome<sup>7</sup>, nor Eusebius<sup>8</sup>, seem to have had any particular catalogue of them. Nor hath Irenæus, the disciple of St. Polycarp, given us such a one.

13. Indeed, for what concerns the last of these, I mean Irenæus<sup>9</sup>; he tells us that this great man did write several epistles, not only to the neighbouring churches, to confirm them in the faith, but even to particular persons, for their instruction and admonition. But what they were, or to whom they were sent, neither does he say, nor does Eusebius, where he speaks of the writings of St. Polycarp, mention any more than that Epistle to the Philippians of which we are now discoursing. And though a few later authors<sup>10</sup> pretend to give us the very titles of some other of his works, yet have we reason to doubt, from this silence of those who lived the nearest to his time, that their authority is but small; nor can we say that even the pieces which they name are any where to be found at this day.

---

<sup>6</sup> Photii Bibl. tmem. cxxvi. p. 305.

<sup>7</sup> De Script. Eccles. in Polycarp. a.

<sup>8</sup> Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. iv. c. 15.

<sup>9</sup> Iren. Epist. ad Florin. apud Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. v. c. 20.

<sup>10</sup> S. Maximus Prolog. in Dionys. Areop. Suidas in Polycarp. &c. Vid. Usserii Dissert. de Script. Ignat. p. 4, 5. Tentzel. Exerc. Select. de Polycarp. num. xxxvi, xxxvii.



14. Nor shall I except here those Fragments lately published by Fevardentius<sup>1</sup>, out of Victor Capuanus, and reprinted by Bishop Usher<sup>2</sup>, in his Appendix to Ignatius. In which, as there are some things which neither Father Halloix nor our learned Usher<sup>3</sup> could approve of, as written by St. Polycarp; so the distance of him<sup>4</sup> who was the first collector of them from the time of that blessed martyr; and the manifest proofs he has, on other occasions, given of his little care and judgment in distinguishing the works of the ancient Fathers who lived any long time before him; not to say any thing of the passages themselves ascribed to St. Polycarp<sup>5</sup>, but little agreeable to the apostolic age; all these considerations have justly restrained learned men from giving any great credit to those Fragments, or from receiving them as belonging in any wise to so ancient an author.

15. But, whatever becomes of these Fragments, certain it is that the epistle which I have here subjoined is the genuine work of this holy man, and worthy of that great character which antiquity has given of it. Even Monsieur Daillé<sup>6</sup> himself confesses, that, excepting only the close of it, against which it was necessary for him to declare himself, there is nothing in it that either ought to offend any, or that may be thought unworthy of Polycarp. But Le Moyne<sup>7</sup> goes yet farther: he tells us, that he does not see how any one can entertain the least suspicion against it; that

---

<sup>1</sup> Ad lib. iii. c. 3. Irenæi.

<sup>2</sup> Lond. 1647. p. 31.

<sup>3</sup> Usserii Annot. loc. cit. pp. 72, 73.

<sup>4</sup> Victor Capuanus: he lived anno 545.

<sup>5</sup> Cave Hist. liter. in Polyc. p. 38. Le Moyne Prol. ad Var. Sacr. Tentsel. Exercit. Select. iv. de Polyc. n. xlix. Du Pin. Bibl. Eccl. in Polycarp. &c.

<sup>6</sup> De Scriptis Ignatian, cap. xxxii.

<sup>7</sup> Prol. ad Var. Sacr. tom. i. in Polycarp.

there is not, perhaps, any work extant that has more certain evidences of its being genuine, than this: in short, that if it shall be lawful to doubt of this, there will be no monument of antiquity left which we may not as well call in question, and reject as spurious.

16. Indeed, so general is the reception which learned men<sup>a</sup>, on all sides, have given to this epistle, that I might well omit any farther discourse in confirmation of the credit and authority of it. But yet, seeing there have been two things started by some of late, if not utterly to destroy, yet at least to lessen, the reputation of this piece, I will consider, in short, what may fairly be replied to both their exceptions.

17. Now the first is that of Tentzelius<sup>b</sup>, in his Exercitation upon this epistle; who, though he allows it to be undoubtedly genuine, yet supposes it to have been corrupted by the same hand that we confess<sup>c</sup> did corrupt the Epistles of Ignatius, about 600 years after Christ. But to this I reply, First, that it is allowed that there is nothing in this epistle that may give any just grounds for the suspicion of any such fraud as this; it being acknowledged, even by Monsieur Daillé himself, (one of the greatest adversaries of it) to be an epistle in all respects worthy of St. Polycarp, excepting only in the close of it, which I shall more particularly consider by and by. So that either we have this epistle pure and uncorrupted as it was first written, or at least we have it so little prejudiced by any alterations that may have been made in it, that there is nothing in the epistle, as it now is, dangerous, in point either of

<sup>a</sup> Vid. apud Tentzel. de Polycarp. Dissert. iv. num. 41. p. 157.

<sup>b</sup> Exercit. Select. Exerc. iv. num. 42, &c. 47.

<sup>c</sup> Usserii Dissert. de Epist. Ignat. cap. vi. p. 23.

faith or manners; or that might not have well enough been written by St. Polycarp. But this was not the case with the epistles of St. Ignatius<sup>1</sup>; which not only laboured under many impertinences unbecoming the character of that great man, but were fraught with many things that were altogether fabulous: nay, if we may credit archbishop Usher<sup>2</sup>, had some passages in them that tended to corrupt the very faith of Christ, in one of the most considerable points of it.

18. But, secondly, that the Epistles of St. Ignatius had been corrupted, was evident from disagreement<sup>3</sup> of the copies which we usually had of them, from the quotations of the ancient Fathers of the first five centuries out of them. Now this was a most unquestionable demonstration of their having been changed from what they were in those first ages in which those Fathers lived: and accordingly proved to be so, when the old Latin version of bishop Usher first, and then the Florentine Greek edition of the learned Isaac Vossius, came to be compared with those editions that had before been extant of them. But neither does this exception appear against the present epistle, which agrees with what is quoted both by Eusebius<sup>4</sup> and others out of it; and thereby clearly shews our present copy to be sincere and uncorrupted.

19. Seeing then there is nothing but a mere conjecture for the depravation of this epistle, and such just reason to conclude that there is no good foundation for it, (to be sure none that may compare with the arguments we have against it,) I think

---

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Dissert. Usher. c. x. xi. p. 63, &c.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. c. xv. p. 108. This Dr. Grabe has confirmed, proving the interpolator of Ignatius's Epistles to have been an Arian. Spicileg. PP. sec. ii. p. 225, 226.

<sup>3</sup> Usserii Dissert. Ignat. cap. iii. p. 12.

<sup>4</sup> Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. iii. c. 36. Photius Bibl. mem. cxxvi. p. 305.

we may conclude, that, for any thing yet appearing to the contrary, we not only have the genuine Epistle of St. Polycarp; but that epistle free from any designed corruptions, or depravations of it.

20. Nor is there any more, I do not say that there is much less weight, in the other supposal of Monsieur Daillé<sup>s</sup>, continued and abetted by his learned defender Monsieur Larroque, though without any other or greater proof than what had been before fully answered by our most learned and judicious bishop Pearson; namely, that this epistle originally ended at the doxology which we meet with in chapter the twelfth; and that what follows, concerning the Epistles of St. Ignatius, has been added to it by some latter hand. But now what proof do they offer of this? What authority have they to support such a supposition? This they pretend not to. All they have to say is, that the doxology which we find there, seems to imply that the epistle originally went no farther: and that in what follows there is a flat contradiction to what went before; the close of the epistle speaking of Ignatius as if he were still alive, whom the true Polycarp had before set forth to the Philippians as having "suffered," and "been gone to the place that was prepared for him."

21. As for what concerns the latter of these suggestions, I have already shewn how vain and groundless it is. Nor can we reasonably suppose that any one who designed to serve a turn by corrupting such an epistle as this, would have been either so negligent as not once to read over the piece he was about to make so considerable an addition to; or having read it, would have been so foolish as to have, without any need, subjoined a request to the

---

<sup>s</sup> Vid. Larroque Observ. in Vind. Pears. p. 65, 66.

Philippians, directly contrary to what the true Polycarp had told them before; and which, by consequence, would be sure to discover the fraud, and frustrate the design of it.

22. So little appearance of reason is there in this suggestion, which yet these learned men insist upon, as their main argument against the latter part of this epistle. As for the other objection which they bring against it, viz. that St. Polycarp must have concluded at the twelfth chapter, because of the vow which he there makes for those to whom he wrote; I reply, First, That this is at the best but a very uncertain guess; seeing it is notorious to all that have ever read the Epistles, either of the apostles or those that followed after, that nothing is more common than to meet with such kind of conclusions, not only in the end, but in the<sup>1</sup> beginning and middle<sup>2</sup>; in short, in all the parts of their epistles. To look no farther than the Epistle, with which we have begun this collection, of St. Clement to the Corinthians, how many of these sort of stops may we find in the progress of it? I am sure there are not less than seven or eight of them. But I suppose he would be thought very ridiculous, who should therefore reject all that followed the first of these, as none of St. Clement's, but pieced on to the end of his epistle by some other hand, merely because the doxology seemed to imply his having concluded there.

23. But to lay aside conjectures, and proceed to that which will put a final end to this difficulty, I observe, secondly, that this passage, which these men deny to be St. Polycarp's, and suppose to have been added to it by some latter hand, is

---

<sup>1</sup> See 1 Tim. i. 17.

<sup>2</sup> Ephes. lii. 20. Rom. xv. 33. Dr. Hammond Annot. in Rom. xiv.

expressly quoted by Eusebius<sup>3</sup>, in his Ecclesiastical History, as a part of this epistle. If therefore it be the addition of some other hand, it is evident it was made to it before Eusebius's time, that is to say, within two hundred years after the time of St. Polycarp's writing of it; and whether this be probable, we will now more particularly inquire.

24. For the better clearing of which, I must observe, that this Epistle of St. Polycarp, like that of St. Clement foregoing, was for several hundreds of years wont to be publickly read in the churches of Asia: so St. Jerome<sup>4</sup> informs us; or as his interpreter Sophronius renders him, in the synod or convention of Asia: by which a learned<sup>5</sup> man supposes we are to understand some common meetings of the Christians in those parts, answerable to the like assemblies of the Gentiles there; and that in these, this epistle was wont to be read to them.

25. Hence Irenæus<sup>6</sup> speaks of it as an epistle that was in every body's hand, and obvious to be read by any, for the benefit of their faith and manners; which being so, it can hardly be supposed but that so inquisitive a searcher into antiquity as Eusebius was must needs have been very well acquainted with it, and doubtless have had a true and genuine copy of it. Seeing then he produces this passage as a part of this epistle, which was generally received as authentic in his days; and that the epistle itself, being spread into all hands, and publickly read in the Eastern churches immediately after the death of its great author, could not have been corrupted or altered but the cheat must needs have

---

<sup>3</sup> Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. iii. c. 36.

<sup>4</sup> Hieron. de Script. in Polycarp.

<sup>5</sup> Le Moyne Prolegom. ad Var. Sacr.

<sup>6</sup> Apud. Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. iv. cap. 14.

been discovered, (of which yet we have not the least intimation in all antiquity); I think it cannot be doubted but that this, as well as the rest of that epistle, was written by St. Polycarp himself; and not added to his epistle by some later hand, as is suggested, not only without all ground, but against such plain and unanswerable evidence to the contrary.

26. Having said thus much in vindication of this epistle, and to clear it from those prejudices that have of late been raised against it, it remains only for me to observe, that though the following translation was truly made from the Greek and Latin copies of it, set out by bishop Usher first, and since reprinted by Cotelerius in his Collection of the Apostolical Fathers, yet this is not the first time that this epistle has appeared in our language. For our most diligent and learned countryman Dr. Cave<sup>1</sup>, having a just respect to the worth of a piece so highly applauded among the ancients, and so well deserving the esteem of all good men, thought it would be no unuseful digression to present to his reader so venerable a monument of the primitive Church; and therefore subjoined it entirely to his account of the Life of St. Polycarp, in a most accurate English translation of it.

27. It would no doubt have been more to the reader's satisfaction, to have met with that translation of this epistle here, than to find another, which he may have just reason to suppose can never equal that which was finished by so great a hand. And indeed I could have been glad to have rendered the following Collection more considerable, by the reputation of a translation made by so eminent an author. But however, as it now is, I hope it may not be unacceptable to the pious

---

<sup>1</sup> Dr. Cave's *Lives of the Apostolical Fathers*, in St. Polycarp.

peruser of it; who, whatever other defects he may find in it, may yet, I am pretty confident, depend upon the exactness of the translation; seeing I perceive, by an after collation of it, that it does not differ, in any thing that is material, from that of the judicious and worthy Dr. Cave.

---

CHAP. IV.

ON THE EPISTLES OF ST. IGNATIUS.

*Of the different editions of St. IGNATIUS's Epistles; which are here translated from that of ISAAC VOSSIUS, and according to the enumeration made by EUSEBIUS of them—The authority of these Epistles vindicated, against the objections raised of late against them—The Epistle to St. POLYCARP one of those mentioned by EUSEBIUS—The exception against it taken from the substance of the Epistle itself answered—A short account of the following translation of all of them.*

1. **B**EFORE I enter upon that account which I am to give of the Epistles of St. Ignatius (the next that follow in the present Collection), it will be necessary for me to observe, that there have been considerable differences in the editions of the epistles of this holy man, no less than in the judgment of our latter critics concerning them. To pass by the first, and most imperfect of them; the best that for a long time was extant, contained not only a great number of epistles falsely ascribed to this author, but even those that were genuine so altered and corrupted, that it was hard to find out the true Ignatius in them.

2. The first that began to remedy this confusion, and to restore this great writer to his primitive simplicity, was our most reverend and learned archbishop Usher, in his edition of them at



Oxford, anno 1644. But still we wanted a correct copy of the original Greek; the epistles set out by him, though exceedingly more sincere than any we had seen before, yet consisting only of the old Latin translations of them. Now this was in great measure performed by the learned Isaac Vossius, in the edition printed by him at Amsterdam, anno 1646: in which, from the Florentine Manuscript, he published six of the epistles of this holy martyr mentioned by Eusebius, in their ancient and pure Greek; and the seventh so happily amended from the ancient Latin version, that there was but little doubt to be made of the integrity of that too. But to remove all scruple concerning this one epistle, Mr. Ruinart has also published that from a Greek uninterpolated copy, in the Acts of the Martyrdom<sup>1</sup> of this holy man, set forth by him at Paris, anno 1689. And concerning these Epistles of St. Ignatius, enumerated by Eusebius, and set out according to their primitive purity by those learned men whom I have before mentioned, and from them translated into the following collection, there are two things to be considered, and proved by me in this place: First, that<sup>2</sup> St. Ignatius did write such epistles as those I have here translated; and, secondly, that those epistles we here have, are the very epistles which he wrote.

3. That Ignatius did, in general, write such epistles to the churches about him, however it has been denied by some, is yet I think now universally allowed, even by those<sup>3</sup> who are the greatest opposers of these epistles which we affirm to be his. That he wrote to those particular churches to which the epistles here subjoined are addressed, we

---

<sup>1</sup> Acta Martyr. Sincera et Select. Paris, 1689.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. Vossii Præfat. in Ignat. ad Lectorem.

<sup>3</sup> Vid. Vindic. Pearson. in Proëm. p. 20.

have both St. Polycarp and Eusebius to assure us. For, first, St. Polycarp<sup>4</sup>, in the close of his epistle, (which I am now to look upon as sufficiently proved to be his,) speaking to the Philippians of this holy man, tells them that he had sent them all such epistles of his, as Ignatius had either written to himself, or to his Church at Smyrna, or as had hitherto come to his hands. So that here, then, we have a plain account of two of those epistles which we affirm Ignatius to have written: one to St. Polycarp himself; another to the Church of Smyrna, of which he was bishop.

4. But Eusebius will enable us to carry this testimony yet farther. Whilst assuring us that he wrote four epistles from Smyrna; namely, to the Churches of Ephesus, Magnesia, Tralles, and Rome, he gives us just grounds to conclude that these also must have been part of St. Polycarp's collection; and have been some of those others, besides the two before mentioned, which he tells us he sent to the Philippians, unless we should suppose that either he knew not of Ignatius's writing, though every day, almost every hour, with him at the time that he wrote them: or else, that knowing of it, he took no care to preserve the copies of his epistles; which yet we see he put the highest value, that can well be imagined, upon. Seeing, therefore, we cannot with any reason suppose, either that St. Polycarp did not know of Ignatius's writing to these churches; nor is it probable that, being present with him at the writing of them, and acquainted with it, he should not have kept any copies of his letters to them: seeing, lastly, he himself tells us that he had copies of more of the epistles

---

<sup>4</sup> Polycarp. Epist. num. xiii. Annot. Cotel. in loc. Polycarp. p. 486. B.

of this great saint, besides those that were sent to Smyrna, and that what he had he sent to the Philippians; neither can we reasonably doubt but that these also were in his hands, and sent by him to the Church at Philippi.

5. And thus have we, I think, upon very good grounds, concluded that six of the seven Epistles, which we affirm to have been written by St. Ignatius, were collected by St. Polycarp; and sent, together with his own Epistle, to the Philippians. Let me add yet farther, that neither can we reasonably question but that the seventh, too, was at that time in the hands of St. Polycarp; and by consequence, that what we now have is no other collection than what he made (and by that means helped to preserve to after-ages) of the epistles of this holy martyr. Now this I conclude, not only from the nearness of the Church of Philadelphia, to which it was written, to that of Smyrna, in which St. Polycarp presided; and from the great respect which all the neighbouring churches payed to him, as a kind of universal bishop of the whole Lesser Asia; but from the conclusion of the epistle itself, which tells us that it was sent by Ignatius to the Philadelphians, not only from the same place, and at the same time, that he wrote to St. Polycarp himself, and to his Church of Smyrna, but also by the same person that carried the other two, and that person St. Polycarp's own deacon, whom he had sent with Ignatius to Troas, and by whom Ignatius wrote back that epistle.

6. St. Polycarp therefore certainly knew of Ignatius's writing to the Philadelphians; and very probably sent on Burrhus, his deacon, from Smyrna to Philadelphia, with his letter. And then, I think, we may very reasonably conclude, that he brought back with him the copy of it;

and that St. Polycarp had that epistle too in his hands when he wrote to the Philippians.

7. Such good grounds are there to believe that the collection we now have of St. Ignatius's Epistles was no other than what St. Polycarp himself made, and referred to in that passage of his own epistle to the Philippians which I have before shewn to be truly his, and not the addition of any later hand. And the same is the account which Eusebius<sup>1</sup> himself has given us of this matter. He tells us, that, as Ignatius was on his way to Rome, where he was to be cast to the wild beasts, he not only confirmed the churches that were in the places through which he passed, by his exhortations, but wrote to the chiefest of those others that were near such epistles as these of which we are now speaking: and that, as he goes on, in this following order. First, from Smyrna<sup>2</sup>, where he tarried some time with his old acquaintance and fellow-disciple, St. Polycarp, he wrote to the Ephesians, Magnesians, Trallians, and Romans: and being gone farther on his way to Troas, he from thence wrote to the Philadelphians and Smyrnæans; *ιδίως τε τῇ ταύτης προηγουμένῳ Πολυκάρπῳ*, and a particular letter to Polycarp, the bishop of Smyrna.

8. I say nothing to the testimony of St. Hierome<sup>3</sup> as to this matter, who as he exactly agrees with Eusebius in all this, so I make no question but that he transcribed his account out of him. It is sufficiently evident, from what has been already observed, not only that St. Ignatius did in general write some epistles (which even Monsieur 'Daillé himself thinks ought not to be any question), but

---

<sup>1</sup> Hist. Eccles. lib. iii. cap. 36.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. Chrys. Orat. ad Antiochen.

<sup>3</sup> Libr. de Script. Illustr. cap. xvi.

<sup>4</sup> Apud. Pearson. Vindic. Ignat. Prolegom. p. 20.

that he wrote to those particular churches to which the epistles we now have are directed; and of which I am persuaded there ought to be as little doubt.

9. As for the other point proposed, and by which the foregoing also will be yet more fully confirmed; namely, that those epistles we now have are the same that Ignatius wrote; two things there are that seem to determine our belief of it: First, That there is nothing in these epistles, as we now have them, either unworthy of the spirit of Ignatius, or the character that antiquity has given us of them; nothing disagreeing to the time in which he wrote, or that should seem to speak them to have been the work of any later author. Now this, as it hardly ever fails to discover such pieces as are falsely imposed upon ancient authors; so there not appearing any thing of this kind in these epistles, inclines us the more readily to conclude that they were undoubtedly written by him whose they are said to be.

10. But this is only a presumptive argument in favour of these epistles; which though it may serve to dispose us the more readily to receive them as true and genuine, yet is it not alone sufficient to prove them so to be. The other argument I have to offer is positive and convincing; namely, That we find these epistles, as they now are, exactly agreeing both with the descriptions which St. Polycarp<sup>1</sup> and Eusebius<sup>2</sup> have left us of those which they took to be the authentic epistles of this holy man; and with the numerous quotations which the ancient Fathers<sup>3</sup> have made out

---

<sup>1</sup> Pearson. Vind. Ignat. par. I. cap. 3. p. 27.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. cap. 2. p. 8.

<sup>3</sup> Pearson. Ibid. p. 8. ad 25. Comp. Testim. Cotelarii de Ignat. et Usser. Dissert. Ignat.

of them; and which all occur in the same words, in our present copies of them, that they are cited in their writings.

11. This has been so fully shewn by our most learned bishop Pearson, and indeed was so manifest of itself to any one that had ever made any comparisons of this kind, that Monsieur Daillé<sup>4</sup> himself could not deny but that we have the same epistles now that Eusebius, Athanasius, St. Jerome, Theodoret, and Gelasius, had heretofore. So that the only question then to be considered by us is, Whether those epistles which Eusebius, &c. had, were not counterfeit, but the true epistles of this great martyr?

12. And here, first, it is evident, that if those epistles which Eusebius first, and then the rest of those ancient writers whom I before mentioned, took for the genuine Epistles of St. Ignatius, were none of his, the true epistles, which I have just now shewn, and which it is confessed were written by him, must before that time have been utterly lost, or otherwise destroyed, out of the world: it being very improbable that had the true epistles been still remaining, neither so inquisitive a searcher into antiquity as Eusebius should have heard of them, nor such great and learned men as those that followed after have had any suspicion of any such deceit. But now, whether this be probable; whether it can be supposed that such epistles as these, directed to so many great and eminent churches, collected by so venerable a man as St. Polycarp, and written by so glorious a martyr as St. Ignatius, should within so little time have been utterly lost out of the Church; I shall leave it to any one, who considers how great a

---

<sup>4</sup> Apud Pearson. Vind. Ignat. Proem. p. 20. et Vind. par. I. p. 8.

reverence the primitive Christians had for every thing that came from the hands of such holy and excellent men, and such glorious martyrs of Christ, to determine.

13. We read in the Acts<sup>1</sup> of the Martyrdom of this blessed Saint, with what a mighty care those who went with him to Rome, and were the eye-witnesses of his sufferings, gathered up the few hard bones of his body which the lions had left; and how they brought them back in a kind of triumph to his Church at Antioch. And we are told with what pomp they were many ages after taken up from the place where they were first buried, and carried by the command of the Younger Theodosius within the city; insomuch that, as our historians<sup>2</sup> observe, there was a festival solemnity established upon that occasion, and annually observed to the very time in which they wrote, in remembrance of it. *x* But was the Church then so careful of a few dead bones of such a saint as this, and did they esteem them as so great a treasure; and yet had they so little regard to his writings, the last testimonies of his affection to the churches to which he wrote, as to suffer them within two hundred years to be so utterly lost, as not to be once known or heard of by the greatest and most curious searchers into antiquity? This is, I confess, to me so very improbable, that I could almost as easily believe the holy Scriptures themselves to have been upon a sudden changed into some other epistles than what St. Peter or St. Paul wrote, as that such epistles as these could be so totally defaced, as some pretend, and new ones set out in the room of them, and yet nobody

*\* Reading: "neglected  
in antiquity." The  
Rom. Eccl. they esteem the bones as  
the treasure of the Church.*

<sup>1</sup> See his Martyrdom, num. xii.

<sup>2</sup> Evagrius, lib. i. cap. 16. Nicephor. lib. xiv. cap. 44.

know any thing of the doing of it. But such impossibilities as these must learned men be content to please themselves and to impose upon others withal, who resolve to be wiser than any that went before them: and to be able to know better at fifteen hundred years distance what Ignatius wrote, than those did who lived within two centuries of him.

14. For to press our argument yet more closely: since it is allowed that Ignatius did write some epistles, and I think sufficiently evident that St. Polycarp did make a collection of them, and send them, together with his own, to the Philippians, I presume it will not be questioned, but that he most certainly had the genuine writings of that holy martyr, his dear friend and fellow-disciple. Now St. Polycarp suffered not, according to the earliest computation of our accurate bishop Pearson<sup>3</sup>, till the year of our Saviour 147, and others suppose it to have been yet later. Hitherto therefore it is certain that the true Epistles of Ignatius continued in the Church: it being by no means probable that they should have been changed whilst the men lived to whom Ignatius wrote; while Polycarp was living, who collected them together; and whilst those of the Church of Philippi remained, to whom he sent them.

15. To St. Polycarp let us add his scholar and admirer, Irenæus, and, as himself professes, a most diligent collector of whatever fell from that holy man. That he had the Epistles of St. Ignatius, Eusebius<sup>4</sup> assures us; who particularly takes notice of his quoting several passages out of them;

---

<sup>3</sup> Pearson. *Dissert. Chron.* ii. cap. 14, ad 20.

<sup>4</sup> Usher, anno 169. Euseb. et in eum Vales. 167. Petitus, 175, &c. See below.

<sup>5</sup> Euseb. *Hist. Eccles.* lib. v. cap. 8.



and mentions one of his quotations<sup>1</sup> out of the Epistle to the Romans, which is still extant in the works of Irenæus<sup>2</sup>, and agrees with the copy published by Monsieur Ruinart; only that this hath *ἄπρος Χριστοῦ*, whereas it ought to be read *ἄπρος Θεοῦ*, as appears from the old interpretation both of Irenæus, and of Ignatius's Epistles; which, however, is no greater a difference than that of Acts xx. 28, where some copies have *Ἐκκλησίαν Θεοῦ*, others *Κύριον*, others *Χριστοῦ*; not to mention any other places of the New Testament. And it must be allowed that the other passages of which Eusebius<sup>3</sup> speaks were also to have been found in the epistles as he had them; because, otherwise, the difference between what the one quoted and the other read in his copy of those epistles would presently have discovered the fraud, and shewn that his epistles were not the same with those which Irenæus mentioned.

16. And this puts the matter yet more out of doubt: for if Eusebius had the same epistles that Irenæus had, we must allow one of these two things; either that he had a genuine copy of them, as we affirm; or that Irenæus, the disciple and contemporary of St. Polycarp, had not; which would be very unreasonable to suppose.

17. For not to say any thing as to this matter, that Irenæus lived too near the time, both in which Ignatius wrote, and St. Polycarp collected his Epistles; to have been imposed upon in this particular; seeing he himself tells us how careful he was to gather up whatever came from the hand of that holy man, and that he not only had the

<sup>1</sup> Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. iii. cap. 36.

<sup>2</sup> Irenæus, lib. v. cap. 29.

<sup>3</sup> Comp. Euseb. loc. cit. with the Epistle to the Romans and other epistles here translated.

Epistles of Ignatius, as appears by his citing of them, but, as himself<sup>4</sup> declares, had also the Epistle of Polycarp to the Philippians, at the end of which the Epistles of Ignatius were subjoined; what can we conclude, but that the copy he had of both was taken from that of his master Polycarp, which being to be sure authentic, it must remain that Irenæus's was so too?

18. Were it needful to add any thing yet farther, to shew that Eusebius, who is confessed to have had the same copy of St. Ignatius that we have now, had no other than that of St. Polycarp so often mentioned, I might to the testimony of Irenæus, before alleged, add that of Origen<sup>5</sup>, who began to live some time before the other died: for this father has not only spoken of these Epistles, but has left us two quotations out of them; and both to be found in our copies, which we affirm to be true and authentic. Now from him to Eusebius was not above half a century; too little a while for so great an alteration to have been made in writings spread up and down into so many hands; read by all the learned and pious men of those days; and upon all these accounts utterly incapable of such a change as is, without the authority of one single writer, only upon I know not what conjectures, supposed to have been made in them.

19. But I enlarge myself too much in so plain a matter; and which I should hardly have thought worth the examining thus distinctly, had it not engaged the pens of so many learned men of the reformed religion, that it might have seemed too great an omission in such a discourse as this not to have given some account of it. As for what

---

<sup>4</sup> Apud Euseb. Epist. ad Florin. Hist. Eccles. lib. v. cap. 20.

<sup>5</sup> Orig. Homil. vi. in Luc. et in Cantic. Prolog.

we find a late learned writer<sup>1</sup> advancing in opposition to the authority of these Epistles, that our copies, though exceedingly more perfect than any that were ever extant before those great men Bishop Usher and Isaac Vossius set out,—the one the old Latin Versions, the other the original Greek, from the Manuscript which he found of it in the Florentine Library,—yet there may be reason still to suspect that they are not so free from all corruptions as were to be wished: I reply, that if he means that the same has happened to these Epistles as has done to all other ancient writings, that letters, or words, have been mistaken, and perhaps even the pieces of some sentences corrupted, either by the carelessness or ignorance of the transcribers; I see no reason why we should deny that to have befallen these Epistles, which has been the misfortune of all other pieces of the like antiquity. It has been often declared<sup>2</sup>, therefore, that neither do we contend about this; nor can any one, who reads the best copies we have of them with any care or judgment, make any doubt of it. But as for any larger interpolations, such as were those of the copies before extant; for any changes or mistakes that may call in question either the credit or authority of these Epistles as we now have them, we<sup>3</sup> utterly deny that there are any such in these last editions of them; nor has that learned man offered any thing to induce us to believe that there are.

20. And here I should have concluded these reflections, but that there is yet one thing more to be taken notice of, which must by no means be passed by; namely, that our most learned

---

<sup>1</sup> Ernest. Tentzel. Exercit. select. iii. num. xi. xii. p. 67.

<sup>2</sup> Vossii Annot. passim. Pearson. Vind. Iguat. Proleg. p. 20.

<sup>3</sup> See the Objections of Tentzelius fully answered by the learned Dr. Grabe, Spicileg. sec. ii. p. 227, &c.

archbishop Usher<sup>4</sup> himself, though he agrees with us as to the authority of the other six epistles here translated, yet doubts whether the seventh, written to St. Polycarp, be genuine or no. Nor does Isaac Vossius<sup>5</sup> himself deny but that there are some things in it that may seem to render it suspicious; though more to prove it to be authentic. For, first, St. Polycarp<sup>6</sup> expressly assures us that Ignatius had written to him; so both 'Eusebius and St. Hierome<sup>7</sup> teach us to understand his expression. They mention the Epistle to St. Polycarp, as distinct from that to the Church of Smyrna. And, secondly<sup>8</sup>, the ancient Fathers quote it as Ignatius's, no less than the rest. From both which it seems to be very plain, that this also has the same evidence of being written by Ignatius that any of the rest have; and, therefore, that he who allows it as sufficient for the one, ought not to refuse it for the other.

21. As for that which seems to be the most difficult to account for in it; namely, his writing in the plural number, and giving several instructions about the behaviour of the common people, particularly that, "To adhere to the bishop;" (Chap. V. and VI.) it is rightly observed by Vossius, in his annotations on those chapters, that Ignatius in that place speaks not to St. Polycarp, but, by a usual change of person, intimates what he would have Polycarp say to his church: and whosoever shall consider in what manner he brings in what he there delivers, "Say to my sisters," &c. and

---

<sup>4</sup> Dissert. de Ignat. cap. iii.

<sup>5</sup> Annot. in Ignat. Epist. p. 264, 265.

<sup>6</sup> Polycarp. Epist. num. xiii.

<sup>7</sup> Hist. Eccles. lib. iii. c. 36.

<sup>8</sup> Hieronym. de Viris Illustr. in Ignat.

<sup>9</sup> Vid. Isaac. Voss. Annot. loc. supr. cit.

again, "Exhort my brethren," &c. will presently see how those instructions are to be understood.

22. And now it remains only that I give some short account of the following translation of these Epistles. The copies from which I did it were those of Isaac Vossius and bishop Usher; comparing both, as I had occasion, with the late edition of Cotelierius. In the salutation of the Epistle to the Romans, I have departed from all of them, and followed the correction of that judicious man, whose name I mention in the margin of it. I thought myself the more at liberty to do this, because that this epistle was not found in the Florentine Manuscript, but made up, in some measure, from the Latin Versions, by the conjectures of learned men: and however it has since been published, together with the Acts of the Martyrdom of St. Ignatius, in its original Greek, yet I have rather chosen to note the differences between that and the copy I before followed, than to give a preference to either. And the reader will have this advantage by it, that he will here see both; and may make use of his own judgment, if at any time the copies disagree, to inform him which he thinks to be the most correct. For the rest, I have kept as strictly to the text of Vossius as the sense would permit me to do: only where a place was manifestly imperfect, I have sometimes taken the liberty to express my own conjectures, though differing from those of others, with whom, nevertheless, I pretend not to compare myself. But then I seldom do this without taking notice of it, and telling my reader to whom he may recur for somewhat a different opinion. If, after all, there shall appear some faults in my translation; though I may modestly say, I have taken what care my little acquaintance in these matters

would enable me to do, to avoid them; I desire it may be considered, that I had a difficult author to deal with; and I shall be very ready thankfully to amend any error, that any more discerning person shall think fit to advertise me of, if ever this Collection should be thought worthy to come to another edition.

~~~~~  
CHAP. V.

OF THE MARTYRDOM OF ST. IGNATIUS; AND OF THE FOLLOWING RELATION OF IT, WRITTEN BY THOSE WHO WERE PRESENT AT HIS SUFFERINGS.

*Of the Life of St. Ignatius—Whence he was called THEOPHORUS—That he never saw Christ, but was converted to Christianity by the Apostles; and by them made Bishop of Antioch—How he behaved himself in that station—Of his Death—Why he was sent from Antioch to Rome, in order to his suffering there—METAPHRASTES' account of the effect which his Death wrought upon the Emperor TRAJAN, rejected—How the Persecution of the Christians came to be mitigated about the time that he suffered—An Inquiry into the Time of his Martyrdom.*

1. IN the foregoing Chapter I have given such an account of the Epistles of St. Ignatius as seemed necessary to vindicate the authority of them, and to remove those prejudices which some had of late endeavoured to raise against them. I am now to pass from the writings of this holy man, to his truly great and heroical sufferings: an account whereof is in the next place subjoined, in the relation of those who accompanied him from Antioch to Rome, and were there the eye-witnesses of his martyrdom.

2. But before I come to the consideration of this last and noblest part of his life, I cannot but

think it will be expected from me to give some account of the foregoing passages of it; that so we may have at once a full view of this great saint, and perceive by what steps he prepared himself for so constant and glorious a death.

3. And here it will be necessary for me, in the first place, to consider the character which he gives of himself in the beginning of all his epistles, and which he freely asserted before the 'Emperor himself, at his examination; namely, that of *Theophorus*. Now this, according to the different pronunciation of it, may be expounded after a different manner; and signify either a *person carried by God*, or else a *divine person*; one who *carries God in his breast*. And in both these significations we find this name to have been given to this holy man.

4. For, first, as to the former signification, we are told, by some of the writers of his life, that St. Ignatius was the child whom our blessed Saviour took in his arms, and set before his Disciples as a pattern of humility, when he told them, *That unless they should be converted, and become as little children, they should in no wise enter into the kingdom of God*<sup>1</sup>; and that from thence he took the name of Theophorus, one who was *borne, or carried by God*. And thus not only Metaphrastes<sup>2</sup> and Nicephorus<sup>3</sup> among the Greeks, but, as our learned bishop Usher<sup>4</sup> tells us, "some Syriac writers, more ancient than they, both interpret this name, and give an account of its being attributed to this blessed martyr."

5. But, as stories of this kind seldom lose in

<sup>1</sup> Acts of Ignatius, num. iv, v.

<sup>2</sup> Mat. xviii. 3.

<sup>3</sup> Metaphrast. apud Coteler. p. 991.

<sup>4</sup> Niceph. Hist. Eccl. lib. ii. cap. 35.

<sup>5</sup> Usher. Annot. in Act. Mart. Ignat. num. iv.

the relation, so we find the Latins<sup>6</sup> making a farther improvement of the present fable. For having confirmed the truth of what these men had before observed, of St. Ignatius's being taken up by our Saviour into his arms; they add, that for this reason the Apostles, when they made him bishop of Antioch, durst not lay their hands upon him, "He having been before both commended "by our Saviour Christ, and sanctified by his "touching of him."

6. There is so much of romance in all the latter part of this story, and so little grounds for the former, that I shall not need to spend any time in the confuting of either. It is enough that St. Chrysostom<sup>7</sup> has assured us, that this holy man never saw the LORD; and that all the other ancient writers are silent as to this particular; which makes me the rather wonder at the endeavour of a late learned writer<sup>8</sup> of our own country to give countenance to such a fable; which, if not destitute of all probability, yet at least wants any good authority to support it; and, as our learned bishop Pearson<sup>9</sup> very reasonably conjectures, was first started about the time of the Eighth General Council, by the party of that Ignatius who was then set up in opposition to Photius; and from thence derived both to Anastasius among the Latins, and to Metaphrastes among the Greeks.

7. To pass then from this fabulous account of this title, let us come to the consideration of the true import of it. Now, for that as we cannot have any better, so neither need we desire any

---

<sup>6</sup> Vid. Annot. in Concil. Œcum. viii. Concil. Lab. tom. viii. p. 994. D.

<sup>7</sup> Homil. in S. Ignat. tom. I. Fevardent. p. 499, 506. B. C.

<sup>8</sup> Montac. Origin. Eccles. tom. II. p. 211, 212.

<sup>9</sup> Viad. Ignat. Part. II. c. xii. p. 149.



other account than what this holy man<sup>1</sup> himself gave the Emperor of that name. When being asked by him, "Who was Theophorus?" he replied, "He who has Christ in his breast." And in this sense was this name commonly used among the Ancients; as has been shewn, in a multitude of examples, by bishop Pearson<sup>2</sup>, in his elaborate Vindication of Ignatius's Epistles. I shall offer only one of them, that of St. Cyrill, who anathematizes those who should call our Saviour Christ, Theophorus; "lest," says he, "he should thereby be understood to have been no other than one of the saints."

8. It remains, then, that Ignatius was called Theophorus, for the same reason that any other divine, or excellent person, might have been so called; namely, upon the account of his admirable piety: because his soul was full of the love of God, and sanctified with an extraordinary portion of the Divine Grace; as both his life shewed, and the earnest desire he had to be dissolved and to be with Christ; and his joy when he saw himself approaching towards it; and (to mention no more) his constancy in his last and most terrible conflict, with the wild beasts, will not suffer us to doubt.

9. But though the story of our Saviour's taking St. Ignatius into his arms be of no credit, yet thus much St. Chrysostom<sup>3</sup> tells us, that he was intimately acquainted with the holy Apostles, and instructed by them in the full knowledge of all the mysteries of the Gospel. What was the country that gave birth to this blessed saint, or who his parents were, we cannot tell. Indeed, as

---

<sup>1</sup> Acts of Ignat. num. v.

<sup>2</sup> Vind. Ignat. Part. II. p. 144.

<sup>3</sup> Homil. in Ignat. p. 499. tom. I. Fevardent.

to the former of these, his country, a late 'author has endeavoured, from a passage in Abulfaragius, set out by our incomparable Dr. Pococke, to fix it at Nora in Sardinia; a place which still retains its ancient name with very little variation. This is certain, that growing eminent, both in the knowledge of the doctrine of Christ, and in a life exactly framed according to the strictest rules of it, he was, upon the death of Euodius, chosen by the Apostles, that were still living, to be bishop of Antioch, the metropolis of Syria; and, whatever Anastasius pretends', received imposition of hands from them.

10. How he behaved himself in this great station, though we have no particular account left to us, yet we may easily conclude from that short hint that is given us of it, in the relation of his martyrdom<sup>4</sup>; where we are told that he was "a man in all things like unto the Apostles; that "as a good governor, by the helm of prayer and "fasting, by the constancy of his doctrine and "spiritual labour, he opposed himself to the "floods of the adversary: That he was like a "divine lamp illuminating the hearts of the faithful by his exposition of the holy scriptures; and "lastly, that to preserve his Church, he doubted "not freely, and of his own accord, to expose "himself to the most bitter death." This is in general the character of his behaviour in his Church of Antioch; a greater than which can hardly be given to any man. Nor indeed can we

---

<sup>4</sup> Ernest. Tentzel. Exercit. Select. III. num. ii. p. 47. Comp. Dr. Grabe Spicileg. tom. ii. p. 1.

<sup>5</sup> Vid. Chrysost. Orat. in Laud. Ignat. Theodoret. tom. iv. p. 33. Dial. 1. Comp. Usser. Annot. in Epist. ad Antioch. p. 107. Pearson. Vind. Ignat. part. II. p. 107.

<sup>6</sup> Acts of Ignat. num. i, ii, iii.

doubt but that he, who, as Eusebius<sup>1</sup> tells us, and as his Epistles still remaining abundantly testify, was so careful of all the other Churches, to confirm them in a sound faith, and in a constant adherence to their holy religion, was certainly much more vigilant to promote the interests of piety within his own diocese, which was blessed with his government above forty years<sup>2</sup>.

11. Hence we may observe, what a tender concern he expresses in all his Epistles for his Church at Antioch: with what affection he recommends it to the prayers of those to whom he wrote; and especially to the care of his dear friend and fellow-disciple, St. Polycarp. And when he heard at Troas of the ceasing of the persecution there, how did he rejoice at it? and require all the neighbouring<sup>3</sup> Churches to rejoice with him; and to send their messengers and letters thither, to congratulate with them upon that account?

12. Such was his affection towards his own Church, and his care of all the others round about him: by both of which he became in such an extraordinary favour with them, that they thought nothing could be sufficient to express their respect towards him. And therefore we are told, that when he was carried from Antioch to Rome, in order to his suffering, all the Churches every where sent messengers<sup>4</sup> on the way to attend him, and to communicate to his wants. And what is yet more, they were generally their bishops themselves that came to meet him, and thought it a singular happiness to receive some

---

<sup>1</sup> Hist. Eccles. lib. iii. cap. 36.

<sup>2</sup> Euseb. Chron. ab anno 69 ad 110. alii ad 116. Vid. infr.

<sup>3</sup> See his Epistles to the Philadelph. Smyrn. and to St. Polycarp.

<sup>4</sup> Vid. Ignat. Epist. et speciatim ad Rom. num. ix. Add. Act. Ignat. num. ix.

spiritual exhortations from him. And when he was dead, they paid such an honour to his memory, as to account the few bones' that were left of him by the wild beasts, more precious than the richest jewels: insomuch that we are told they were several<sup>5</sup> ages after taken up from the place where they were first deposited, as not honourable enough for them to lie in, and that, being brought within the city where he once was bishop, there was instituted a yearly festival in memory of him.

13. As for what concerns the circumstances of his death, they are so particularly recounted in the relation I have here subjoined of it, that nothing more needs to be added to what is there delivered of this matter. Yet one remark I cannot but make on that particular of his story which has puzzled so many learned<sup>7</sup> men to account for, but may easily be resolved, and I believe most truly too, into the over-ruling hand of the Divine Providence; and that is, of the sending of this holy man from Antioch as far as Rome to suffer. For whatever the design of the Emperor<sup>8</sup> may have been in it, whether he intended to increase his sufferings by a journey so wearisome, and attended with so many bitter circumstances, as that must needs have been to a person, very probably, at that time, fourscore years of age; or whether he hoped by this means to have overcome his constancy, and to have drawn him away from his faith; or lastly, whether, as Metaphrastes<sup>9</sup> tells us, upon his consulting with those of the Senate who were with

---

<sup>5</sup> Vid. Act. Ignat. num. xiii.

<sup>6</sup> Vid. Usserii Ann. in Act. Ignat. num. xxxvii.

<sup>7</sup> Vid. Scalig. in Euseb. ad Ann. 110.

<sup>8</sup> Vid. Usser. Not. in Act. Ignat. num. ix. p. 39, 40. Tentzel. Exerc. iii. p. 49.

<sup>9</sup> Matt. apud Cotelier.

him, he was advised "not to let him suffer at Antioch, lest thereby he should raise his esteem the more among the people, and render him still more dear and desirable to them;" we cannot doubt but that God hereby designed to present to all the nations through which he was to pass, a glorious instance of the power of his religion, that could enable this blessed martyr with so much constancy to despise all the violence of his enemies; and to be impatient after those trials which they hoped should have affrighted him into a base and degenerate compliance with their desires.

14. This was indeed a triumph worthy of the Christian religion: nor was it any small advantage to the Churches at such a critical time, to have their zeal awakened, and their courage confirmed, both by the example and exhortations of this great man, from Antioch even to Rome itself. And we are accordingly told with what mighty comfort and satisfaction they received his instructions, and, as the authors<sup>1</sup> of his Acts express it, "rejoiced to partake in his spiritual gift."

15. Nay, but if we may believe Metaphrastes as to the effect which the sufferings of this holy man had upon the mind of the Emperor, the Church received yet greater benefit by his death: "For Trajan," (says he,) hearing of what had been done to Ignatius, and how undauntedly he had undergone the sentence that was pronounced against him; and being informed that the Christians were a sort of men that did nothing contrary to the laws, nor were guilty of any impieties; but worshipped Christ as the Son of God, and exercised all temperance both in meat and drink, nor meddled with any thing that was forbidden; he began to

---

<sup>1</sup> Acts of Ignat. num. ix.

<sup>2</sup> Mart. Ignat. apud Cotelier. p. 1002.

“repent of what he had done, and commanded that  
“the Christians should indeed be searched out, but  
“that, being discovered, they should not be put to  
“death; only they should not be admitted into any  
“offices, nor be suffered to meddle with any public  
“employs. Thus was not only the life of Ignatius  
“of great use to the Church; but his very death  
“the means of procuring much good to it.” And  
what Metaphrastes here tells us, we find in effect  
delivered by another author<sup>3</sup> of his Acts, not yet  
set forth; from whom he seems to have taken his  
story, only with the addition of some farther cir-  
cumstances of his own, to make it the more  
complete.

16. But though I should be far from envying  
any thing that might make for the honour of this  
blessed martyr, yet are there many circumstances  
in the story, which Metaphrastes has here put  
together, that make me justly call in question the  
truth of it. For first, it is evident, beyond all  
doubt, that the persecution was abated at Antioch  
before Ignatius suffered, nay, before he was yet  
gone out of the Lesser Asia. Insomuch, that in  
his three last epistles which he wrote from Troas  
to the Philadelphians, the Smyrnæans, and to  
Polycarp himself, he particularly takes notice of  
the peace of the Church of Antioch, and exhorts  
them to send congratulatory messages thither upon  
the account of it.

17. Nor was this suspension of the persecution  
granted upon Ignatius's account, but upon the  
remonstrances which the Emperor's own officers  
made to him, both of the numbers of those that  
died for the Christian faith, and of the innocence  
of their lives; and lastly, of the readiness with

---

<sup>3</sup> Vid. Usser. Annot. in Act. Ignat. p. 55, 56.

which they not only suffered when taken, but voluntarily came and presented themselves before those who were to condemn them. Two of these epistles, relating to this very persecution, we have still remaining; the one written by Tiberianus<sup>1</sup>, President of Palæstina Prima; the other of 'Pliny the Younger, Pro-prætor of Bithynia: and the answer of Trajan' to the latter, of which we find to have been in the same words that Jo. Malela tells us he replied to the other; viz. "That the Christians should not be sought after; but if they were brought before them and convicted, should be punished unless they abjured."

18. The same is the account which not only Eusebius<sup>2</sup>, from Tertullian<sup>3</sup>, gives us of the Emperor's order as to this matter; but which Suidas<sup>4</sup>, after both, has left us of it: which makes it the more strange to find such a different relation both in Bishop Usher's manuscript author, and in Metaphrastes' Acts of Ignatius before mentioned. It is true that, notwithstanding these rescripts of the Emperor, the persecution still continued; nor was it so soon over in other places as it was at Antioch. This is not only evident from the history of this time left us by Eusebius<sup>5</sup>, but may in general be concluded from the 'prayer which this holy Saint made at his martyrdom; where, say our Acts, "He entreated the Son of God in behalf of the Churches, that he would put

<sup>1</sup> Apud Usser. Annot. in Epist. ad Philadelph. not. 82. Et in Append. p. 9.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. Secund. Epist. lib. x. Epist. 97.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. Epist. 98.

<sup>4</sup> Hist. Eccles. lib. iii. c. 33.

<sup>5</sup> Apologet. cap. ii.

<sup>6</sup> In voce *ὑπακούει*.

<sup>7</sup> Lib. iii. c. 32. Hist. Eccles.

<sup>8</sup> Acta Mart. Ignat. num. xii.

"a stop to the persecution, and restore peace and quiet to them." But these were only local persecutions, as Eusebius<sup>9</sup> calls them; and proceeded rather from the fury of the people, and the perverseness of some particular governors, than from the design or command of the Emperor.

19. As for the time of Ignatius's suffering, we are only told, in his Acts, that it was when "Syria and Senecius were Consuls; nor are learned men yet agreed in what year to fix it." Eusebius, in his Chronicle, places it in the year of Christ cx. Marius Scotus, cxii. Bishop Usher<sup>10</sup> yet sooner, in the year cvii. And lastly, to name no more, our most exact bishop Lloyd<sup>11</sup>, followed therein by the late critique upon Baronius, Antonius Pagi, yet later than any; to wit, in the year that the great earthquake fell out at Antioch, and from which Trajan himself hardly escaped; which, as "Jo. Malela accounts it, and is followed therein by bishop Usher in his computation, was in the year cxvi.

20. And this may suffice to have been observed concerning the most eminent passages that occur in the Acts of the Martyrdom of St. Ignatius. I shall need say nothing to the authority of the relation itself; which, as it is written with all sincerity, and void of those additions which later writers have made to these kind of histories, so we are told, in the close of it, that it was compiled by those who went with him from Antioch, and were the eye-witnesses of his encounters. That the latter part of these Acts was added to the original account of the martyrdom of this holy man, the

---

<sup>9</sup> Euseb. *ibid.*

<sup>10</sup> Or, *Sura*.

<sup>11</sup> Annot. in Act. Martyr. Ignat. not. 39.

<sup>12</sup> Vid. Ant. Pagi. Critic. in Baron. ad Ann. 108.

<sup>13</sup> Apud Usser. loc. *supr.* cit. Comp. the Dissert. of bishop Pearson in the late edition of his Epistles at Oxford.



learned Dr. Grabe has proved to be at least probable : but this does not at all affect the other parts of them, which the same judicious writer receives as true and authentic. These Acts were first published from two very ancient Manuscripts, by our most reverend archbishop Usher, in the appendix to his edition of Ignatius, anno 1647. They have since been printed in their original Greek, by a very learned man abroad; and reprinted by Dr. Grabe, in his *Spicilegium*, here in England. From this last edition they are now translated into our own language. I cannot tell whether it be worth the observing, that in the collection made by the late learned Cotelierius of the Writings of the Apostolical Fathers, instead of these genuine Acts, there is inserted the account which Metaphrastes put together of his sufferings, several ages after. It would perhaps have made a more agreeable history to the vulgar reader, had I translated that relation, rather than this, which is much shorter, and wants many notable passages that are to be found in that other. But, as I should then have departed from my design of setting out nothing but what I thought to be indeed of Apostolical antiquity; so, to those who love the naked truth, these plain Acts will be much more satisfactory, than a relation filled up with the uncertain, and too often fabulous, circumstances of later ages.

CHAP. VI.

OF THE MARTYRDOM OF ST. POLYCARP, AND OF THE  
EPISTLE WRITTEN BY THE CHURCH OF SMYRNA CON-  
CERNING IT.

*That there were heretofore several called by the name of POLYCARP—Both the country and parentage of St. POLYCARP uncertain—What he was before his Conversion; and by whom converted—He is made Bishop of Smyrna by the Apostles—How he behaved himself in that office—The great veneration which the Christians had for him—Of his journey to Rome, and what he did there—The testimony of St. JOHN concerning him, Rev. ii. 8.—Of the time of St. POLYCARP's Martyrdom—What Persecutions the Church then laboured under—Of the Epistle of the Church of Smyrna concerning his Sufferings; and the value which the Ancients put upon it—Of the Miracle that is said to have happened at his death—What his age was when he suffered—What the day of his suffering—In what place he was put to death—Of the authority of the present Epistle; and its translation into our own language.*

1. **THE** Epistle of the Church of Smyrna, (the next piece that follows in the present Collection) however it makes mention of some others that suffered at the same time with St. Polycarp, for the faith of Christ; yet, insisting chiefly upon the particulars of his passion, and being designed by that Church to communicate to all the world the glorious end of their beloved bishop, and most worthy and constant martyr of Christ, I shall observe the same method in treating of this, that I did in discoursing of the Acts of St. Ignatius before; and speak somewhat of the life of St. Polycarp first, before I come to consider the account that is here given us of his death.

2. That there were several of the name of

Polycarp heretofore, and who must therefore carefully be distinguished from him of whom we are now to discourse, has been evidently shewn by the late learned editor<sup>1</sup> of his epistle. As for our Polycarp, the disciple of St. John, and the great subject of the present martyrology, we have little account, either what was his country, or who his parents. In general, we are told that he was born somewhere in the East; as Le Moyne thinks<sup>2</sup>; not far from Antioch; and perhaps in Smyrna itself, says our learned Dr. Cave<sup>3</sup>. Being sold in his childhood, he was bought by a certain noble matron whose name was Calisto; and bred up by her, and at her death made heir to all her estate; which though very considerable, he soon spent in works of charity and mercy<sup>4</sup>.

3. His Christianity he received in his younger years, from Bucolus bishop of Smyrna; by whom being made<sup>5</sup> deacon and catechist of that Church, and discharging those offices with great approbation, he was, upon the death of Bucolis, made bishop of Smyrna by the Apostles<sup>6</sup>; and particularly by St. John<sup>7</sup>, whose disciple, together with Ignatius, he had before been.

4. How considerable a reputation he gained by his wise administration of this great office, we may in some measure conclude from that character which his very enemies gave of him at his death: when crying out that he should be thrown to the lions, they laid this to him as his crime, but which

<sup>1</sup> Le Moyne Prol. ad Var. Sacr.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid.

<sup>3</sup> Life of St. Polycarp, p. 112. So the Roman Martyrology.

<sup>4</sup> Le Moyne, Cave, &c.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid.

<sup>6</sup> Irenæus, lib. iii. cap. 3. Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. iv. cap. 14. Vid. Tentzel. Exerc. select. de Polyc. iii. sect. 5.

<sup>7</sup> Tertul. de Præscr. Hæret. c. 32. Hieron. de Script. in Polycarp. Vid. Martyrol. Rom. Jan. xxvi.

was indeed his chiefest honour<sup>8</sup>: "This (say they) "is the doctor of Asia, the father of the Christians, "and the overthrower of our Gods." And when he was burnt, they persuaded the governor not to suffer his friends to carry away any of his remains<sup>9</sup>, "Lest (say they) the Christians, forsaking him that "was crucified, should begin to worship Polycarp."

5. Nor was it any small testimony of the respect which was paid to him, that (as we are told in this epistle) the Christians would not suffer him to pull off his own clothes, but strove who should be the most forward so do him service; thinking themselves happy if they could but come to touch his flesh. "For," says the epistle, "he was truly "adorned with such a good conversation," as made all men pay a more than ordinary respect to him.

6. Hence St. Hierome<sup>10</sup> calls him the Prince of all Asia; Sophronius, the Ἀρχηγός, or Chief Ruler, perhaps, says a "learned man, in opposition to the Asiarchæ of the Heathen spoken of in this epistle: signifying thereby, that as they were among the Gentiles, the heads of their sacred rites, and presided in the common assemblies and spectacles of Asia; so was Polycarp among the Christians a kind of universal Bishop or Primate, the prince and head of the Churches in those parts.

7. Nor was his care of the Church confined within the bounds of the Lesser Asia, but extended even unto Rome itself: "whither we are told he went upon the occasion of the Quarto-deciman controversy, then on foot between the Eastern and Western Churches, and which he hoped to

---

<sup>8</sup> Epistle of the Church of Smyrna, num. xii.

<sup>9</sup> Ibid. num. xvii.

<sup>10</sup> De Script. in Polycarp. Sophron. Interp. Græc.

<sup>11</sup> Le Moyne Prol. ad Var. Sacr.

<sup>12</sup> Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. iv. cap. 14.

have put a stop to, by his timely interposition with those of Rome. But though Anicetus and he could not agree upon that point, each alleging Apostolical tradition to warrant them in their practice, yet that did not hinder but that he was received with all possible respect there; and 'officiated in their churches in presence of the bishop, and communicated' with him in the most sacred mysteries of religion.

8. While he was at Rome, he remitted nothing of his concern for the interests of the Church; but employed his time partly in confirming those who were sound in the faith, but especially in drawing over those who were not, from their errors. In which work, how successful he was, his own scholar Irenæus<sup>1</sup> particularly recounts to us.

9. What he did after his return, and how he discharged his pastoral office to the time of his martyrdom, we have little further account: nor shall I trouble myself with the stories which Pionius<sup>2</sup>, without any good grounds, has recorded of the life of this holy man. But that he still continued with all diligence to watch over the flock of Christ, we have all the reason in the world to believe; and that not only from what has been already observed, but from one particular more which ought not to be omitted; namely, that when Ignatius was hurried away from his Church of Antioch to his martyrdom, he knew none so proper to commend the care of it to as to this excellent man; or 'to supply by his own Letters, what the other

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Vales. Annot. ad Euseb. Eccl. Hist. lib. iv. cap. 14. Tentzel. Exercit. de Polycarp. sect. ix.

<sup>2</sup> Le Moynes, Prolegom. ad Var. Sacr.

<sup>3</sup> Apud. Euseb. loc. cit.

<sup>4</sup> Apud. Tentzel. Exercit. Select. IV. p. 76, &c.

<sup>5</sup> See his Epistle to Polycarp. num. viii.

had not time to write, to all the other churches round about.

10. But I shall close up this part of the life of this holy saint with the testimony which St. John has given to him, Rev. ii. 8. and which, as it affords us a sufficient evidence of the excellency of his life, so does it open the way to what we are next to consider; viz. his death and passion. *Unto the angel of the Church in Smyrna, write; These things saith the First and the Last, which was dead, and is alive. I know thy works, and tribulation, and poverty, (but thou art rich,) and I know the blasphemy of them which say they are Jews, and are not, but are the synagogue of Satan. Fear none of those things which thou shalt suffer: behold, the devil shall cast some of you into prison, that ye may be tried: and ye shall have tribulation ten days. Be thou faithful unto death, and I will give thee a crown of life.*

11. And this brings me to that which I am chiefly to insist upon, namely, the death of this blessed martyr; the subject of that epistle which is subjoined from the Church of Smyrna concerning it. And here I shall, in the first place, take for granted what our learned bishop <sup>6</sup> Pearson seems to have proved beyond contradiction; that St. Polycarp suffered, not, as is <sup>7</sup> commonly supposed, about the year of Christ CLXVII. or, as bishop Usher <sup>8</sup> has stated it, yet later, CLXIX. much less as Petit <sup>9</sup>, still later, CLXXV. but under the Emperor Antoninus Pius, in the year of our LORD CXLVII. Now that the Christians about that time,

---

<sup>6</sup> Dissert. Chron. part. II. à cap. 14 ad 20.

<sup>7</sup> Euseb. Chron.

<sup>8</sup> Not. in Epist. Smyrn. 104, 105. Comp. Tentz. Exercit. de Polycarp. sec. xxi.

<sup>9</sup> Vid. Cave Hist. Eccles. in Polycarp.

and especially those of Asia, lay under some severe persecutions, is evident from the Apology which Justin Martyr about this very time presented to the Emperor, in order to a mitigation of them: which however Baronius<sup>1</sup>, and after him Valesius<sup>2</sup>, place two or three years later; yet hath their opinion no certain grounds; nor does any thing hinder us from 'reducing that Apology to the same time with St. Polycarp's martyrdom; nay, and some have carried it still higher, even to the beginning of that Emperor's reign; as both Eusebius<sup>3</sup> among the Ancients, and his learned editor Scaliger<sup>4</sup>, not to mention any others<sup>5</sup>, of later times, have done.

12. What the effect of this Apology was, we cannot certainly tell; but that the persecution was not presently put to an end, not only the Second Apology of the same Father (however the critics differ about the same), but that which Eusebius<sup>7</sup> tells us was afterwards presented to his successor, Marcus Aurelius, by Melito bishop of Sardis, plainly makes appear, in which he complains, that "the Christians were still informed against by wicked men, greedy of what they had; and prosecuted, notwithstanding the several orders that his father had given, and the letters he had himself written to the contrary." It is true, Eusebius tells us that the Emperor Antoninus Pius<sup>6</sup> had set out an effectual edict in favour

<sup>1</sup> Ad An. 150. Comp. Spond. Epitom. *ibid.*

<sup>2</sup> Annot. in Euseb. lib. iv. c. 8.

<sup>3</sup> See Dr. Grabe's Dissert. de Justin. M. Spicileg. PP. sec. ii. p. 150, &c.

<sup>4</sup> Euseb. Chron. ann. 142.

<sup>5</sup> Scalig. Annot. in Euseb. p. 210.

<sup>6</sup> Petav. in Epiphan. Hæres. xvi. Anton. in Pagi in Baron. ad an. 150. num. 3. Heruan. Contract. Marian. Scot. &c.

<sup>7</sup> Hist. Eccles. lib. iv. cap. 26.

<sup>8</sup> *Ibid.* lib. iv. cap. 13.

of the Christians; and that particularly addressed to the Common Council of Asia, not long before the time in which we suppose St. Polycarp to have suffered. And this seems to leave it under some doubt how a persecution could have been again revived against the Church within so short a time, and after such a vigorous edict of an Emperor still living, to the contrary. But it is evident Eusebius must have mistook the Emperor, and have set down that for the rescript of Antoninus Pius which was indeed set out by Marcus Aurelius immediately after his death; as both the inscription shews, and Valesius<sup>9</sup> and others have evidently made it appear to be.

13. It was, then, in one of these "topical persecutions, so frequent in the Lesser Asia, that the storm happening to fall in a particular manner upon the Church of Smyrna, carried off this holy martyr among the rest. What the particular circumstances of his passion were, it would be impertinent for me to relate in this place, seeing they are so fully and exactly described in the epistle of which we are now discoursing; a piece so excellently composed, that Eusebius thought it worthy to be almost entirely transcribed into his Ecclesiastical History; and of which a very great man" of the last age professed, "That he  
"knew not anything, in all Ecclesiastical antiquity,  
"that was more wont to affect his mind; inso-  
"much that he seemed to be no longer himself  
"when he read it; and believed that no good Chris-  
"tian could be satisfied with reading often enough  
"this, and the like accounts, of the sufferings

---

<sup>9</sup> Vales in lib. iv. c. 13. Euseb. et infra, in c. 26. p. 73. Add. Ant. Pagi Critic. in Baron. ad an. 154. num. iv.

<sup>10</sup> Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. iv. cap. 15. p. 104.

<sup>11</sup> Scalig. Animadv. in Euseb. p. 221. num. 2183.



“ of those blessed martyrs, who in the primitive  
“ times laid down their lives for the faith.”

14. Nor did the Ancients put any less value upon this piece, which, as Gregory of Tours<sup>1</sup> tells us was even to his time read publickly in the Gallican churches; and no doubt made a part of that annual remembrance which the Churches of Asia kept of his martyrdom.

15. But though I think it needless to mention here any thing of what the following epistle relates concerning the passion of this holy man, yet one circumstance there is which both Eusebius and Ruffinus<sup>2</sup> having omitted, is also passed by in the following translation, though found in the Acts, as set out from the Barroccian Manuscript by archbishop Usher: and that is this; That the soldier or officer having struck his lance into the side of the saint, there came forth a pigeon, together with a great quantity of blood, as is expressed in the following epistle<sup>3</sup>. Now, though there may seem to have been something of a foundation for such a miracle in the raillery of Lucian<sup>4</sup>, upon the death of Peregrinus the Philosopher, who burnt himself about the same time that St. Polycarp suffered; and from whose funeral pile he makes a vulture to ascend, in opposition, it may be, to St. Polycarp's pigeon; if indeed he designed (as a learned man<sup>5</sup> has conjectured) under the story of that philosopher, to ridicule the life and sufferings of Polycarp, yet, I confess, I am so little a friend to such kind of miracles,

<sup>1</sup> De Glor. Mart. cap. LXXXVI.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. Usser. Annot. in Act. Polyc. num. lxxvii.

<sup>3</sup> Num. xvi.

<sup>4</sup> De Morte Peregrini, p. 1006. Aurel. Prudent. reports the same of Eulalia; but he made his pigeon to flee out of her mouth, just as she expired. *Περί Εὐδαλίας*. Hymn. iii. ver. 160.

<sup>5</sup> Le Moyne Var. Sacr. Prol. ad tom. I.

that I thought it better, with Eusebius, to omit that circumstance, than to mention it from bishop Usher's manuscript. And indeed, besides the strangeness of such an adventure, I cannot think, had any such thing truly happened at his death, that not only Eusebius should have been ignorant of it, but that neither St. Hierome, nor Ruffinus, nor the Menæa of the Greek Church, should have made the least mention of it. Either therefore there must have been some interpolation in the manuscript set forth by that learned man; or, because that does not appear, perhaps it may be better accounted for by the mistake of a single letter<sup>6</sup> in the original; which will bring it to no more than what Eusebius has in effect said, that "there came out of his left side a great quantity of blood."

16. As for what concerns the time of his martyrdom, I have before shewn the different computations which learned men have made of it. Nor are they less at variance about the age<sup>7</sup> of this holy martyr when he suffered, than about the year of his suffering: for though St. Polycarp expressly told the Pro-consul, as we read in the following epistle<sup>8</sup>, that he "had served Christ eighty and six years;" yet some<sup>9</sup> interpret this of the number of years since his conversion; <sup>10</sup>others of those of his whole life. But however thus much is evident, that whichever of the two be in the right, they will either of them make good what Irenæus<sup>11</sup> has told us of him, that "he

---

<sup>6</sup> So Le Moyne corrects it, Prol. ad Varia Sacra: reading for ἑξήλθε περισσεῖα, ἑξήλθε ἐκ' αἱματέρῃ.

<sup>7</sup> Vid. Tentzel. Exercit. Select. de Polycarp. sec. xxxiv.

<sup>8</sup> Num. ix.

<sup>9</sup> Vid. Præf. Usser. ad Act. Ignat. et Polycarp. p. nlt. Comp. Teutzel. disp. IV. de Polycarp. sec. iii, iv.

<sup>10</sup> Pearson. Dissert. Chron. part II. c. 15.

<sup>11</sup> Iren. contr. Hæres. lib. iii. c. 3.

was very old when he died;" from which nothing can be concluded either for the former of these opinions, or against the latter.

17. But the following acts of his martyrdom go yet farther: they tell us that he not only suffered at "so great an age;" but upon the "Great Sabbath, the second day of the month Xanthicus, before the seventh kalend of May, about two o'clock." What is meant by this Great Sabbath is another point much debated, but never like to be agreed among learned men; whose opinions are examined at large by bishop Usher<sup>1</sup>, Valesius<sup>2</sup>, Le Moyne<sup>3</sup>, bishop Pearson<sup>4</sup>, and others<sup>5</sup> upon this occasion. But if we were right before, in assigning the year of his suffering, as I think we were, then we must conclude the Great Sabbath have been the same here that is usually called by that name among ecclesiastical writers, namely, the *Saturday in the holy week*; to which all the other characters here assigned are exactly correspondent. And then, according to this computation, St. Polycarp will have suffered in the year of Christ cXLVII. being March the 26th, the Saturday before Easter, about the eighth hour.

18. The place in which he suffered was a large amphitheatre, in which the common assemblies of Asia were wont to be kept: and, as we are told, by those<sup>6</sup> who have travelled into those parts, is in some measure still remaining; and shewn as the place of St. Polycarp's martyrdom. I say nothing

---

<sup>1</sup> In Act. Polyc. num. 104, 105.

<sup>2</sup> Annot. in Euseb. p. 66. a.

<sup>3</sup> Proleg. ad Var. Sacr.

<sup>4</sup> Dissert. Chron. par. II. c. 18.

<sup>5</sup> Ant. Pag. Critic. in Baron. ad ann. 169. Tentzel. Exerc. Select. de Polyc. sec. xxv, xxxi, &c.

<sup>6</sup> Smith Epist. de vii. Asiæ Eccles. Tavernier, Wheeler, &c. Vid. Tentzel. Exercit. Select. IV. sec. xxxii, xxxiii.

to that which some have observed upon this occasion, of the calamities which not long after fell upon the city of Smyrna; and which may seem to have been the effect of the Divine vengeance, punishing them for their cruelty towards this excellent man and the rest of his companions who suffered together with him: because this is without the bounds of my present design; which leads me only to consider what concerns the Epistle of the Church of Smyrna, to which that which followed the death of Polycarp has no relation.

19. Having now passed through the chief parts of the following relation, and which seemed most to require our animadversion, it is time for me to observe concerning the Epistle itself, which is here subjoined, that it is a piece of most unquestionable credit and antiquity. As for the main body of it, we find ~~a~~ preserved in the Ecclesiastical History of Eusebius<sup>7</sup>, who lived not above an age and a half after the writing of it. And even the manuscript itself, made use of by bishop Usher, is so well attested, that we need not any farther assurance of the truth of it. The sum of the account which we have given us of it is this; “That Caius, an acquaintance of St. Irenæus the  
“disciple of Polycarp, transcribed it from the  
“copy of that Father; and Socrates the Corin-  
“thian from Caius; and from Socrates’ copy was  
“transcribed that manuscript which we still have  
“of it<sup>8</sup>.

20. Twice has this Epistle been put into our own language, as far as the History of Eusebius has given occasion for the translation of it. What those editions are I cannot tell, having never perused either of them. But I suppose it is now

---

<sup>7</sup> Lib iv. c. 15.

<sup>8</sup> See below.

the first time joined in an entire piece together, and so communicated to the English reader. In my translation of it I have strictly followed the edition of our most reverend Primate, from which Cotelierius's is but a copy: nor have I, that I know of, departed in the least circumstance from it, except in that one for which I have before accounted. So that I may venture to say, I have here truly set forth the Epistle of the Church of Smyrna, as near as our language would serve to express the sense, if not to come up to the beauty and vigour, of the original.

~~~~~

## CHAP. VII.

### OF THE CATHOLIC EPISTLE OF ST. BARNABAS.

*Why the pieces that follow are put in a Second Part, separate from the foregoing—The History of St. BARNABAS, chiefly from the Acts of the Apostles—Of his name, education, and travels, especially with St. PAUL—How he came to be separated from that Apostle—What he did afterwards—Of his death, and the invention of his Relics; and of the Cyprian privileges established on that account—Of the present Epistle; that it was truly written by St. BARNABAS—The principal objections against it answered—An apology for its allegorical interpretations of Scripture—The latter part of it originally belonging to this Epistle—That it was written after the destruction of Jerusalem—The design and usefulness of it.*

1. **W**HEN I first entered upon the design of publishing the present Collection, I intended to have here put an end to it;—the following pieces, under the names of Barnabas and Hermas, together with the Second Epistle of St. Clement, (however undoubtedly very ancient, and confessed by all to come but little, if any thing, short of the Apostolical times,) having yet neither been

so highly esteemed among the Ancients, nor so generally received by many of the present times, as those I have already mentioned. But when I considered the deference which others among the primitive Fathers have paid to them, and the value which is still put upon them, by many, not inferior either in learning or piety to those who speak against them, I thought I could not better satisfy all, than by adding them in a Second Part to the foregoing Epistles; that so both they who have a just esteem for them might not complain of being defrauded of any part of what remains of the Apostolical writings; and those who are otherwise minded might look upon them as standing in a second rank, and not taking place (which otherwise they must have done) of those undoubtedly genuine and admirable Discourses that make up the former part of this work.

2. And here the first piece that occurs is the Catholic Epistle of St. Barnabas, the companion of St. Paul, and disciple of our Saviour Christ; being generally esteemed to have been one of the Seventy<sup>1</sup> that were chosen by him: however, our countryman Bede<sup>2</sup> calls the verdict of antiquity in question as to this matter, upon this account, because St. Luke (Acts iv.) seemeth to intimate that he first came to the Apostles after the ascension of our LORD, and then embraced the Christian faith. To this it may be added, that he is there called a Levite of Cyprus, not one of the Seventy disciples, which would have been much more for his honour to have been mentioned. The mistake of Clemens Alexandrinus, &c. if it were one, seems to have arisen from hence, that

---

<sup>1</sup> Clem. Alex. Strom. lib. ii. p. 410. Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. i. cap. 12. et lib. ii. cap. 1.

<sup>2</sup> In Act. iv.

Joseph Barsabas, or, as other MSS. have it, Joses Barnabas, the competitor of St. Matthias, Acts i. (as on the contrary some MSS. Acts iv. have Joseph Barsabas) who probably was of the Seventy, as well as Matthias, was confounded by them with our Barnabas; of whom, whatever becomes as to his discipleship, this we are sure, that the Holy Ghost, by St. Luke, has left us this advantageous character of him, Acts xi. 24. *That he was a good man, full of faith, and of the Holy Ghost.*

3. It is not my design to enter on any long account of the life of a person so largely spoken of in the Holy Scriptures, and of whom little certain can be written, besides what is there recorded. His country was Cyprus, a famous island in the Mediterranean sea; where there inhabited in those days so great a number of Jews, that in the time of Trajan<sup>1</sup> they conspired against the Gentiles, and slew of them<sup>2</sup> two hundred and forty thousand men. Upon which being cast out of the isle, they were never suffered upon any account to set foot again in it, upon pain of death.

4. His name was at first Joses, but by the Apostles changed into Barnabas; which being interpreted, says St. Luke, is the *Son of Consolation*; and, as we may conjecture from the place<sup>3</sup> where it is first mentioned, was given him by the Apostles, as an honourable acknowledgment of his charity, in selling his whole estate for the relief of the poor Christians, and upon the account of that consolation which they received thereby.

<sup>1</sup> Euseb. Chron. ad ann. cxvii.

<sup>2</sup> Dion. lib. lxxviii. Xiphiline, &c.

<sup>3</sup> Acts iv. 36, 37.

5. His first education, Metaphrastes<sup>4</sup> tells us, was at the feet of Gamaliel; by whom he was instructed, together with St. Paul; which perhaps moved that great Apostle, upon his conversion, to apply himself to him, as the properest person to introduce him into the acquaintance of the other Apostles; and afterwards to embrace him as his chief friend and fellow-labourer in the work of the Gospel. For they are both mentioned, (Acts xi. 26.) *to have taught much people at Antioch*; and that for a whole year together: and, in the thirteenth chapter, are numbered among the prophets and teachers of the Christian Church there. Verse 2. where we read that they did *λειτουργεῖν τῷ Κυρίῳ*, which some in a special manner interpret of the celebration of the Holy Eucharist. Here then we find them both, by teaching and administering that blessed Sacrament, discharging the work of a priest, or presbyter, as we now understand that word. But they still wanted the apostolical, or episcopal, character; by virtue of which they might do that ordinarily, which, as prophets, they could only do in extraordinary cases, and by an express direction of the Holy Spirit; namely, *found churches*, and *ordain elders* or bishops in every place. This dignity therefore we are told they now received, by the laying on of the hands of the other three prophets there mentioned; namely, Simeon Niger, Lucius of Cyrene, and Manaën, Acts xiii. 3. And from thenceforth not only their title was changed (they being afterwards called Apostles, Acts xiv. 4, and 14.), but they exercised another sort of power, *Ordained elders in every church*, verse 23. Thus was Barnabas, together with St. Paul, first a teacher,

<sup>4</sup> Apud Baron. Annal. ad ann. xxxiv. num. 262. Comp. Dr. Cave, in his Life, num. 2.



and a prophet; then consecrated to be a bishop, or an apostle; according to the order which our Lord himself had appointed, that there should be in his Church, first, Apostles; secondly, Prophets; thirdly, Teachers, 1 Cor. xii. 29: which those, therefore, would do well to consider who thrust themselves at once into the highest station and full power of the Church, not allowing distinct degrees of the same, nor, by consequence, successive ordinations, or consecrations, to it. Whereas St. Paul, though he was called to be an Apostle, *not by man, but by Jesus Christ himself*, (Galat. i.) was yet consecrated to be an Apostle by the ordinary form of imposition of hands, after he had preached in the Church for some time before.

6. How these two Apostles travelled together, and what they did in the discharge of their ministry, is at large set down, both by St. Luke<sup>1</sup> in the Acts of the Apostles, and by St. Paul<sup>2</sup> himself in his Epistle to the Galatians: in which we have the history of men truly concerned for the propagation of the Gospel, and despising not only their ease, but their very lives themselves in comparison of it. Many a weary journey did they take, and danger did they run; they preached in the day, and, when they had so done, they wrought with their own hands in the night for their subsistence; that so they might not be burthensome to any, nor seem to seek their own advantage, but the profit of those to whom they tendered the Gospel.

7. Among other countries to which they went, we are told that one of the first was Cyprus, the native island of St. Barnabas: and that not of their own motion, but by the express order and

---

<sup>1</sup> Acts xiii, xiv, xv.

<sup>2</sup> Galat. ii.

appointment of the Holy Ghost. How they prevailed there, and by what miracles they made way for the conversion of it, first at Salamis, then at Paphos, we are at large informed by St. Luke, Acts xiii. From thence they fetched a pretty large compass through the Lesser Asia; and having, with various success, preached to several cities of it, after<sup>3</sup> about three years' travel they again returned to Antioch in Syria, the place from which they first set out.

8. Here they tarried a considerable space, in a sedulous discharge of their ministry; till some controversies arising between the Jewish and the Gentile converts, they were obliged, for the better composing of them, to go up to Jerusalem; where a final end was put to them, by a 'Synodical decree of the Apostles and Elders assembled together for that purpose.

9. With joy they returned to their disciples at Antioch, and brought the determination of that divine synod unto them. But it was not long ere St. Peter, coming down after them, a little abated their satisfaction; whilst<sup>4</sup>, to please the Jewish converts, he dissembled his Christian liberty, and, as St. Paul complains, led Barnabas also into the same dissimulation with him.

10. And here St. Paul had occasion, first of all, to reprove St. Barnabas, which he did with great freedom, for his unseasonable compliance. But it was not very long before he had another occasion offered for a yet worse contention with him: for the next year, these two holy men<sup>5</sup> having agreed to take a new progress together, and to visit the

---

<sup>3</sup> Usher. Chronol. ann. 45, 46. Pearson. Annal. Paulin. ad ann. 48.

<sup>4</sup> Acts xv. Comp. Galat. ii.

<sup>5</sup> Galat. ii. 11, 14.

<sup>6</sup> Acts xv. 36. Ann. Christi I. Pearson. LIII. Usserius.

Churches which they had planted in Asia some years before; Barnabas was for taking his cousin Mark again with them, but St. Paul would not consent to it; because that, in their former travels, he had too much consulted his own ease and safety, and left<sup>1</sup> them at Pamphylia in the midst of their journey.

11. Being both resolute in their opinions, the one to take Mark, his kinsman, with him; the other not to yield to it; they not only came to some sharp words with one another about it, but went their several ways<sup>2</sup>; Barnabas with Mark to Cyprus, and Paul with Silas into Syria and Cilicia. Thus, after a joint labour in their ministry for almost fourteen years, were these two excellent men, by a small punctilio, separated from one another: the Holy Spirit of God intending hereby to shew us, that the best Christians are still subject to the same infirmities with other men; and therefore ought not to be either too much exalted in the conceit of their own piety, or to despise others whom they suppose to be less perfect than themselves.

12. Nor was it a small benefit which from hence accrued, not only to the Church, which thereby enjoyed the benefit of these two great men much more in their separate labours than if they had continued still together, but particularly to St. Mark, who being, by the severity of St. Paul, brought to a deep sense of his former indifference in the work of the Gospel, and yet not left by St. Barnabas to give way to any desperate resolutions thereupon, became afterwards a most useful minister of Christ, and deserved not only to be made again the companion<sup>3</sup> of St. Paul, but to

---

<sup>1</sup> Acts xiii. 13.

<sup>2</sup> Acts xv. 39, 41.

<sup>3</sup> Coloss. iv. 10.

receive a very high testimony of his zeal<sup>4</sup> from him. So well does the wisdom of God know how to turn the infirmities of men to his own glory, and to the good of those who serve him with an honest and upright heart!

13. What became of St. Barnabas after this and whither he went, is very uncertain. 'Some tell us, that from Cyprus he went on to Rome, and preached the Gospel there, even before St. Peter came thither. But though Baronius can by no means allow of this, yet is he content that Barnabas should be thought to have come thither after him. At least this he pretends<sup>5</sup> to be without dispute, that St. Barnabas came into Italy, and preached the Gospel in Liguria; where he founded the famous Church of Milan, "as from many ancient monuments and writers," says he, "might be made appear;" though at the same time he produces not one testimony in proof of it. I shall therefore conclude, till I am better informed, that St. Barnabas spent the remains of his life in converting his own countrymen, the Jews; of which, as I have before observed, there were such vast numbers in that island, and from whom we cannot but think he must have had a very tender regard. Or, if we shall suppose him to have gone any farther, I presume it was only into the neighbouring parts of the Lesser Asia and Judea, where he had before preached; or at farthest into Egypt<sup>7</sup>, where some tell us he went, and consecrated his nephew, St. Mark, the first bishop of the Christian Church at Alexandria.

14. And in this opinion I am the rather con-

---

<sup>4</sup> 2 Tim. iv. 11.

<sup>5</sup> Recognit. Clem. apud Baron. Annal. ad ann. LI. num. 52, 54. Et Not. ad Mart. Rom. Jun. xi.

<sup>6</sup> Ibid. Annal. num. 54.

<sup>7</sup> Vid. in Vit. ejus. Edit. Oxon. Epist. p. 132.

firmed from the consideration of his Epistle, which I have here subjoined; which seems manifestly to have been designed for the benefit of the Jews; and to shew how all the parts of their law had a farther spiritual meaning than what at first sight appeared, and were designed to lead them to the faith and piety of the Gospel.

15. In this exercise, therefore, he most likely spent his life; and, if we may credit the relation of the Monk<sup>1</sup> in Surius, who writes the Acts of this holy evangelist, at last suffered martyrdom in the prosecution of it: being at the instigation of certain Jews that came from Syria to Salamis shut up in a synagogue where he was disputing with them, and at night stoned by them. What truth there is in this story I cannot tell; but this I must observe, which even Baronius<sup>2</sup> himself is forced to acknowledge, that there is nothing of this kind to be met with in any ancient author; nor does either Eusebius or St. Jerome<sup>3</sup>, where they treat expressly of this holy man, so much as once give the title of Martyr to him.

16. But whatever were the manner of St. Barnabas's death, yet famous is the story of the invention of his relics, delivered by the same monk; who, as Baronius<sup>4</sup> tells us, lived at the same time under Zeno the Emperor; and confirmed by the concurrent testimonies<sup>5</sup> of Theodorus, Nicephorus, Cedrenus, Sigebert, Marianus Scotus, and others. With what ceremony this was performed, and how this blessed saint appeared twice to Anthemius, then bishop of Salamis, in order to the

<sup>1</sup> Alexandr. Monach. Encom. Barnabæ.

<sup>2</sup> Baron. Annal. ann. L1. num. 64.

<sup>3</sup> Hieron. de Script. in Barnab.

<sup>4</sup> Baron. Annal. ann. 485.

<sup>5</sup> Id. Annot. ad Martyrol. Rom. Jun. xi.

discovery of his own relics; and how the Emperor commanded a stately church to be built over the place of his burial; I shall leave it to those who are fond of such stories, to read at large in Baronius<sup>6</sup>, and the monk<sup>7</sup> whom I have before mentioned. It will be of more concern to take notice, that Nilus Doxapater<sup>8</sup> tells us that this very thing was the ground of the Cyprian privileges: where, speaking of certain provinces that depended not upon any of the greater Patriarchats, he instances first of all in Cyprus; "which," says he, "continues free, and is subject to none of the " patriarchs, because of the Apostle Barnabas being " found in it." And the same is the account which Nicephorus<sup>9</sup> also gives us of it; and which was assigned before in the *Notitia*<sup>10</sup> ascribed to Leo, as I find it quoted by Monsieur Le Moyne, in his preface to his late Collection of several ancient pieces relating to ecclesiastical antiquity.

17. Together with his body was found, says Alexander<sup>11</sup>, the Gospel of St. Matthew, written in the Hebrew tongue, lying upon his breast; but Nilus<sup>12</sup> says that of his kinsman St. Mark. Which of the two it was, or whether any thing of all this was more than a mere story, contrived by Anthemius to get the better of Peter patriarch of Antioch, I shall not undertake to determine. It is enough that we are assured that by this means<sup>13</sup> he not only preserved his privileges against Peter, but got his see confirmed by the Emperor as an

---

<sup>6</sup> Annal. ann. 485.

<sup>7</sup> Apud Surium, Jun. xi. tom. III.

<sup>8</sup> Vid. Le Moyne, Var. Sacr. tom. I. p. 236.

<sup>9</sup> Hist. Eccles. lib. xvi. c. 37.

<sup>10</sup> Vid. Le Moyne, Prolegom. ad Var. Sacr.

<sup>11</sup> Alex. Monach. loc. citat. So Theodorus Lector, Collect. lib. ii. p. 184.

<sup>12</sup> Nilus Doxap. inter Var. Sacr. p. 236.

<sup>13</sup> Baron. Annal. loc. supr. citat.

he concludes the two Epistles to have been written by St. Polycarp: whereas in truth, by some chance in the copy from which the rest were transcribed, a few leaves were lost, containing the end of St. Polycarp's, and the beginning of St. Barnabas's Epistles; by which means the Greek of both is imperfect. But all the Latin copies constantly ascribing this Letter to Barnabas, and the Ancient Fathers all agreeing to the same, utterly destroy this opinion; in which as he had none to go before him, so I believe he will scarcely meet with any to follow him<sup>1</sup>.

21. Nor are the arguments which they bring against the authority of it of such moment as to overthrow the constant testimonies of the Ancients on its behalf. They tell us, first<sup>2</sup>, that it is evident, from the sixteenth chapter of this Epistle, that it was written after the destruction of Jerusalem. But why may not Barnabas have been then living, as well as we are sure St. John, and several others of the companions of the Apostles, were? And if he may have been living after it, why shall not we suppose that he was, as well as they that he was not? seeing it does not appear from the testimony of any ancient writers when he died.

22. But, secondly, 'They argue yet farther against it: "For if this (say they) be the genuine "Epistle of St. Barnabas, how comes it to pass "that it is not received as canonical?" Certainly, had the primitive Christians believed it to have been written by such a man, they would

---

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Tentzel. Exercit. Select. de Polyc. sec. 38, 39. Præf. Usser. in Edit. Oxon. S. Barnab. p. v.

<sup>2</sup> Coteler. Not. in Barnab. p. 7. C. Natal. Alex. Hist. Eccles. tom. I. sec. I. p. 100. Le Moyne Proleg. ad Var. Sacr.

<sup>3</sup> Coteler. Not. in Barn. p. 5, 6. Natal. Alex. ibid. Le Moyne Prolegom. ad Var. Sacr.

without controversy, have placed it among the Sacred Writings; and not have censured it as of doubtful authority. This is indeed a very specious pretence; but which, being a little examined, will be found to have no strength in it: it being certain, that the Primitive Fathers<sup>4</sup> did own this for St. Barnabas's Epistle, and yet not receive it into their canon; and therefore it does not follow, that had they believed it to have been his, they must have esteemed it canonical.

23. What rules they had, or by what measure they proceeded, in those first times, in judging of the canonical scriptures of the New Testament, it is not necessary for me here to 'inquire: It is enough that we know what books the Church did at last agree in as coming under that character. And for the rest: as we cannot doubt but that there was a due care taken in examining into a matter of such importance, and that those Primitive Fathers did not without very good reason distinguish those that were written by Divine Inspiration, from those that were not; so we are very sure that all was not admitted by them into the rank of Canonical Scripture that was written by any apostolical man; and therefore it can be no good argument, that Barnabas was not the author of this Epistle, because it is not placed among the sacred writings of the New Testament.

24. But there is yet one objection more, and that much insisted upon by those who are enemies to this Epistle. They<sup>5</sup> tell us, it is full of a strange sort of allegorical interpretations of Holy

---

<sup>4</sup> Vid. Cotel. Not. in Barnab. p. 6. E. 7. A.

<sup>5</sup> See this argument more fully handled by the learned Dr. Grabe, Spicileg. sec. ii. p. 6, 7.

<sup>6</sup> Cotel. Not. ad Barnab. p. 5. D. Natal. Alex. Hist. Eccles. sec. I. tom. i. p. 100. Le Moyne. Prol. ad Var. Sacr.



Scripture; and therefore unworthy to be fathered upon so evangelical an author. And yet, notwithstanding this, we find Clemens Alexandrinus and Origen, Eusebius and St. Jerome, (some of the greatest and most learned critics of those ages that were the nearest to the time in which it was written,) not doubting to ascribe it to St. Barnabas, and to think it worthy too of such an author.

25. I need not say how general a way this was of interpreting Scripture, in the time that St. Barnabas lived. To omit Origen, who has been noted as excessive in it; and for whom yet a learned<sup>1</sup> man has very lately made a reasonable apology. Who has ever shown a more diffusive knowledge than Clemens Alexandrinus has done in all his compositions? And yet in his works we find the very same method taken of interpreting the Holy Scriptures; and that without any reproach either to his learning, or to his judgment. What author has there been more generally applauded for his admirable piety than the other Clement? whose Epistle to the Corinthians I have here inserted; and yet even in that plain piece<sup>2</sup>, we meet with more than one instance of the same kind of interpretation, which was nevertheless admired by the best and most primitive Christians.

26. Even St. Paul<sup>3</sup> himself, in his Epistles received by us as canonical, affords not a few instances of this, which is so much found fault with in St. Barnabas; as I might easily make appear, from a multitude of passages out of them, were it needful for me to enlarge myself on a point

<sup>1</sup> Huetius Origen. lib. ii. Quæst. 13. p. 170, &c.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. Annot. Vossii in Barnab. p. 310.

<sup>3</sup> See 1 Cor. x. 1, 4. Galat. iv. 21. Ephes. v. 31. Heb. ix. 8, 23, 24. x. 1, &c.

which every one who has read the Scriptures with any care cannot choose but have observed.

27. Now that which makes it the less to be wondered at in St. Barnabas is, that the 'Jews, of which number he himself was originally one, and to whom he wrote, had of a long time been wholly addicted to this way of interpreting the law; and taught men to search out a spiritual meaning for almost all the ritual commands and ceremonies of it. This is plain from the account which Aristeeas<sup>4</sup> has left us of the rules which Eleazar the high priest, to whom Ptolemy sent for a copy of the Mosaical Law, gave him for the understanding of it. When—it being objected to him, "That their legislator seemed to have been too curious in little matters; such as the prohibitions of meats and drinks, and the like, for which there appeared no just reason"—he shewed him at large, "That there was a farther hidden design in it, than what at first sight appeared; and that these outward ordinances were but as so many cautions to them against such vices, as were principally meant to be forbidden by them." And then goes on to explain this part of the law, after the same manner that Barnabas has done, in the following Epistle.

28. But this is not all: Eusebius<sup>5</sup> gives us yet another instance, to confirm this to us; viz. of Aristobulus, who lived at the same time, and delivered the like spiritual meaning of the law, that Eleazar had done before. And that this was still continued among the Hellenistical Jews, is evident from the account that is left us by one of them, who was contemporary with St. Barnabas, and than

<sup>4</sup> See Hist. Crît. du V. T. liv. iii. chap. vii.

<sup>5</sup> Apud Euseb. Præparat. Evang. lib. viii. cap. 9.

<sup>6</sup> Præpar. Evang. lib. viii. c. 10. p. 576.

whom none has been more famous for this way of writing; I mean Philo<sup>1</sup>, in his description of the Therapeutæ—whether the same whom in the beginning of his book<sup>2</sup> he calls by the name of Essenes, as Scaliger<sup>3</sup> supposes; or a particular sect of Jews, as Valesius<sup>4</sup> will have it; or, lastly, a kind of monkish converts from Judaism to Christianity, as Eusebius<sup>5</sup> heretofore described them, and as some other<sup>6</sup> learned men seem rather to conjecture. But, whatever becomes of this, herein they all agree, that they were originally Jews; and therefore we may be sure they followed the same method of interpreting Scripture that the Alexandrian Jews were wont to do.

29. Now the account which Eusebius<sup>7</sup>, from Philo, gives us of them, is this. “ Their leaders “ (says he,) left them many ancient writings of “ their notions, clothed in allegories.” And again; “ They<sup>8</sup> interpret the Holy Scriptures, viz. of the “ Old Testament, allegorically. For you must “ know, (continues he,) that they liken the law “ to an animal; the words of which make up the “ body, but the hidden sense which lies under “ them, and is not seen, that they think to be “ the soul of it.” And this was that which a late learned author<sup>9</sup> supposes rendered their conversion to Christianity the more easy. For, being wont to seek out the spiritual meaning of the Law, they more readily embraced the Gospel, than those who looked no farther than the outward letter,

---

<sup>1</sup> Apud Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. ii. c. 17.

<sup>2</sup> De Vit. Contempl. p. 889.

<sup>3</sup> Scalig. de Emend. Tempor. lib. v.

<sup>4</sup> Vales. Annot. in Euseb. lib. ii. c. 17. p. 30, 31.

<sup>5</sup> Hist. Eccles. lib. ii. c. 17. p. 43, A. B. et p. 45, A. B.

<sup>6</sup> Bruno de Therapeut. Dissert. p. 183, &c.

<sup>7</sup> Euseb. Hist. Eccles. loc. cit. p. 44. B.

<sup>8</sup> Ibid. p. 45. B. C.

<sup>9</sup> Bruno de Therap. p. 193.

and were therefore the harder to be persuaded to come over to so spiritual an institution.

30. It was from hence, I suppose, that the most early heretics were so wedded to their mystical interpretations of Scripture, and so much valued themselves upon the account of them: against whose false and impure doctrines our late great critic, Dr. Hammond<sup>10</sup>, supposes St. Barnabas to have principally designed his Epistle: and therefore that, being to deal with men who valued nothing but such kind of expositions, he was forced to confute them in their own way; both as most suitable to their manners, and most proper either to convince them of their errors, or at least to prevent others, especially the Jewish converts, from falling into them.

31. But whether this were so or not, thus much is evident from what has been said: that the Hellenistical Jews, to whom it is most probable St. Barnabas addressed his Epistle, were altogether used to this way of interpreting the Holy Scriptures: and therefore that howsoever it may appear to us, who are so utterly unaccustomed to it, yet we ought not to wonder that St. Barnabas, who was himself a Jew, should at such a time, and upon such an occasion as this, make use of it, or suppose it at all unworthy of him so to do.

32. Nor indeed were they the Jews only that led the holy men in those days into these mystical expositions of the Sacred Scriptures. Even the Gentile philosophers conduced towards it: whilst the better to cover over the fabulous stories of their gods, which they saw were too ridiculous to be maintained, they explained the whole system of

---

<sup>10</sup> Dissert. de Antichristo, c. vii. Et Dissert. I. contr. Blondel. t. vii. sect. 4, 5.

their idolatry by allegorical analogies; and shewed all the poetical accounts of them to be only the outside shadows of a sort of natural theology included under those fictions. Thus Heraclides<sup>1</sup> of Pontus wrote a whole book of the allegories of Homer; and Metrodorus<sup>2</sup> of Lampsacus is fallen foul upon by Tatian, in his Oration against the Greeks, for pretending that neither Juno, nor Minerva, nor Jupiter, were what those imagined who built temples and altars to them, *Φύσεως δὲ ὑποστάσεις καὶ στοιχείων διακοσμήσεις*. Nay so far went this last author in his allegories, as to turn all the Trojan and Grecian heroes into mere fictions: and to make Hector, and Achilles, and Agamemnon, and even Helena herself, nothing less than what one would think they were, and what the common people ignorantly imagined them to be.

33. And for the influence which this had upon the Ancient Fathers<sup>3</sup>, who from philosophers became Christians: the writings both of Justin Martyr, and Clemens Alexandrinus, sufficiently shew. And if we may believe Porphyry<sup>4</sup>, an enemy, in the case of Origen; he tells us—in the same place in which he complains of him, “for turning those things that were clearly delivered by Moses into mystical significations”—not only that he did this in imitation of the Grecians, but that it was from his frequent conversation<sup>4</sup> with Numenius and Cronius, Moderatus, Nicomachus, and others among the Pythagoreans, and with Chæremón and Cornutus among the Stoics, that he had learnt his allegorical way of expounding the Holy<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Tatian. contr. Græc. p. 160. B. C.

<sup>2</sup> See Hist. Crit. du V. T. Liv. iii. cap. viii.

<sup>3</sup> Apud Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. vi. c. 19. p. 178.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. p. 179. Vid. Annot. Vales. p. 108, 109.

Scriptures; and applied that to his religion, which they were wont to do to their superstition.

34. From all which it appears, that this way of writing, in matters of religion, was in those days generally used, not only among the Jews, but among the wiser and more philosophical of the Gentiles too; and from both came to be almost universally practised among the Primitive Christians: which being so, we ought to be far from censuring of St. Barnabas for his mystical application of what God prescribed to the Jews in the Old Testament, to the spiritual accomplishment of it in the New. Much less should we ever the more call in question either the truth, or credit, of his Epistle upon this account.

35. Having said thus much either in vindication of the allegorical expositions of this Epistle, or at least by way of apology for them, I shall add but little more concerning the Epistle itself. I have before observed, as to the time of its writing, that it was somewhat after the destruction of Jerusalem; and as we may conjecture from the subject of it (for title at present it has none, nor does it appear that it ever had any), was addressed to the Jews, to draw them off from the letter of the law, to a spiritual understanding of it; and by that means dispose them to embrace the Gospel. Whether he had, besides this, a farther design in it, as Dr. Hammond<sup>s</sup> supposes: to confute the errors of the Gnostick heretics, and to prevent the Jewish converts from falling into them, it is not certain, but may, from the chief points insisted upon by him, be probably enough supposed. If any one shall think it strange, that disputing against the Jews for the truth of the Gospel, he

---

<sup>s</sup> Dissert. de Antichristo, cap. vii.

should not have urged any of those passages relating to the Messiah, which seem to us the most apposite to such a purpose; such as the Oracle of Jacob concerning the time that Shiloh was to come; the LXX Weeks of Daniel; the Prophecies of Haggai and Malachi, of his coming while the second temple stood, and which was now destroyed when he wrote this Epistle; and the like—'Monsieur Le Moyne will give him a ready answer, viz. that these passages relate chiefly to the time of Christ's appearing, and that this was no controversy in those days; the Jews not only confessing it, but being ready at every turn, through this persuasion; to set up some one or other for their Messiah, to their shame and confusion. It was therefore, then; but little necessary to use those arguments against them, which now appear to be the most proper and convincing. Since the state of the question has been altered: and the Jews deny, either that their Messiah is come; or that it was necessary for him to have come about the time that our Saviour Christ appeared in the flesh.

36. But though the chief design of this Epistle was to convince the Jews of the truth of our religion, yet are there not wanting in the latter part of it many excellent rules, to render it still very useful to the pious reader. Indeed<sup>a</sup> some have doubted whether this did originally belong to this Epistle; or whether it has not since been added to it. But seeing we find this part quoted by the Fathers as belonging to St. Barnabas, no less than the other,—and that the measure assigned to it, in the ancient Stichometries, can hardly be well accounted for without it,—I do not see but that we ought to conclude, that our author did divide his Epistle into

---

<sup>1</sup> Proleg. ad Var. Sacr.

<sup>a</sup> Præfat. Usser. ad edit. Oxon. p. 11, &c.

the two parts, in which we now have it; and that this latter, as well as the former, was written by him.

37. As for the Translation which I have here given of it: I have made it up out of what remains of the original Greek, and of the old Latin Version; and of each of which, though a part be lost, yet it has so fallen out, that between them we not only have the whole Epistle, but that, too, free of those interpolations which Vossius<sup>3</sup> tells us some had endeavoured to make in this, as well as in Ignatius's Epistles. The passages of Holy Scripture which are here quoted according to the Septuagint, I have chose rather to set down as they are in our English Bible, than to amuse the common reader with a new translation of them. Upon the whole, I have endeavoured to attain to the sense of my author, and to make him as plain and easy as I was able. If in any thing I shall have chanced to mistake him, I have only this to say for myself; that he must be better acquainted with the road than I pretend to be, who will undertake to travel so long a journey in the dark, and never to miss his way.

---

<sup>3</sup> Is. Vossius, Annot. in Barnab. p. 318.



## CHAP. VIII.

OF THE SHEPHERD OF ST. HERMAS; AND OF THE SECOND  
EPISTLE OF ST. CLEMENT TO THE CORINTHIANS.

*That the HERMAS mentioned by ST. PAUL (Rom. xvi. 14.) was probably the Author of that Book which is here subjoined under his name—There is little remaining of his Life, more than what is taken out of his own Book—Of his Death—Uncertain whether he died a Martyr—The ANCIENT FATHERS divided in their opinions of this Book: nor are our later Critics any less; that there are many useful things in it .....Of the Second Epistle of ST. CLEMENT—That it is not of equal reputation with the former—By some denied to be ST. CLEMENT'S—It is most probable that it was written by ST. CLEMENT; and has many excellent things, and worthy of that holy man, in it—These two pieces now the first time translated into our own language.*

1. THERE is not a greater difference between the learned men of the present times concerning the Epistle of St. Barnabas, than there was among the Ancient Fathers heretofore concerning the authority of that book which next follows under the name of Hermas. Who this Hermas was, what he did, and what he suffered for the faith's sake, is in great measure unknown to us. That there was one of that name at Rome when St. Paul wrote his Epistle to the Church there, his remembrance of him (Rom. xvi. 14.) will not suffer us to doubt. Nor is it improbable but that it was the same Hermas' who afterwards wrote this book: and who appears not only still to have continued his relation to the Church of Rome, but to have written at such a time as may well enough agree to one of St. Paul's acquaintance.

---

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Baron. Annot. ad Martyrol. Rom. Maii 9.

The former of these may be collected from his Second Vision<sup>1</sup>, which he seems to have had at the same time that Clement was bishop of Rome, and to whom therefore he is commanded to communicate a copy of it. And for the latter: might the conjectures of two of our greatest critics<sup>2</sup> be allowed, who apply the affliction of which he speaks in another of his Visions<sup>3</sup> to the destruction of Jerusalem then at hand, it would follow, that this book must have been written within twelve years after the Epistle to the Romans; and so in all probability by that Hermas of whom St. Paul speaks in that Epistle. But though I rather think, that the tribulation which Hermas<sup>4</sup> foretold relates to the persecution under Domitian, because it is there said to be the Trial of the Christians who should be "tried, as gold in the fire," but yet should overcome<sup>5</sup> it and not be hurt by it; (a character that exactly agrees with what Tertullian<sup>6</sup> writes of that persecution;) yet even this does not hinder but that the Hermas mentioned by St. Paul might still be living, and be the author of the book we here have under his name.

2. Hence Origen<sup>7</sup>, in his Homily upon that place of St. Paul before mentioned, delivers it as his opinion, that it was the Hermas there spoken of who wrote this book. But Eusebius<sup>8</sup> does more: he tells us that it was the received opinion, in those days, that it was composed by him. And that it continued to be so in the age after, St. Hierome<sup>9</sup> witnesses; who speaks yet more positively

---

<sup>1</sup> Vis. II. num. 4.

<sup>2</sup> Dr. Hammond and Mr. Dodwell. See Dr. Cave's Hist. Literar. in Herm.

<sup>3</sup> Vis. IV. sec. 3.

<sup>4</sup> Ib. sec. 1.

<sup>5</sup> Ib. sec. 2, 3.

<sup>6</sup> Apolog. c. 5.

<sup>7</sup> Hom. in Rom. lib. x. c. 16.

<sup>8</sup> Hist. Eccles. lib. iii. c. 3.

<sup>9</sup> Hieron. de Script. in Herm.

than Eusebius to the same purpose. From all which, we may conclude what is to be judged of that mistake which our latter writers have fallen into, by their too credulous following the 'author of the poem against Marcion under the name of Tertullian, viz. that it was written by Hermes, brother to Pope Pius; in which, not only the authors<sup>1</sup> of the Pontifical ascribed to Pope Damasus, and of the pretended Decretal Epistles<sup>2</sup> of the ancient bishops of Rome, but the Martyrologists of the middle ages, Bede, Ado, &c. have generally been involved.

3. It is true Cardinal Baronius has endeavoured to make up this difference, by supposing that the Hermes spoken of by St. Paul was brother to Pope Pius, and so all parties may be in the right. But, besides that this book was written by Hermas, not the Hermes of whom St. Paul there speaks,—the difference of the time<sup>3</sup> renders it altogether incredible, that a person of some considerable age at St. Paul's writing his Epistle, should have lived so long as that Pope's brother is said to have done: whom the Cardinal<sup>4</sup> himself observes to have been living CLXIV years after Christ, that is to say, CVII years after the writing of St. Paul's Epistle to the Romans. This his Epitomator Spondanus<sup>5</sup> was aware of: and therefore, though he seems to have allowed of the conjecture, yet he could not choose but add this reflection of his own upon it; that according to this reckoning, Hermas must have been

---

<sup>1</sup> Lib. iii.

<sup>2</sup> In Vit. Pii Papæ.

<sup>3</sup> Epist. I. attrib. Pio PP. p. 194. Edit. Blondel.

<sup>4</sup> See Bellarmin. de Script. sec. i. p. 45. in Herm.

<sup>5</sup> Annal. Eccl. in fine anni 164.

<sup>6</sup> Spondan. Epitom. Annal. Baron. ad ann. 159.

cxxx years old when he died, and, in all probability, a great deal more.

4. What the condition of this Hermas was before his conversion, we cannot tell; but that he was a man of some consideration, we may conclude, from what we read of him in his *Third Vision*<sup>7</sup>: where he is said to have been formerly “unprofitable to the LORD” upon the account of those riches, which, after he became a Christian, he seems to have dispensed in works of charity and beneficence.

5. Nor have we any more knowledge, how he was converted, than what his condition was before: it is probable, from several passages in his book<sup>8</sup>, that he was himself brought over to Christianity some time before his family; who continued yet in the practice of many and great impieties. During this while, Hermas was not only very kind to them, but seems to have been so indulgent towards them, as to permit them rather to go on in their sins, than he would take any rough measures with them to draw them off from them.

6. But this was not all: he not only patiently bore with them, but was himself disturbed with many anxious cares<sup>9</sup>, to supply them in their extravagancies; and oftentimes did not behave himself so well as he ought to have done upon that account. But however, being of an honest and upright disposition, and having a great sincerity in his religion, it pleased God at last not only to convince him of his faults, in thus neglecting his family,—but to give them grace to hearken to his admonitions, and to embrace at once both the

---

<sup>7</sup> Vis. III. num. 6..

<sup>8</sup> Vis. I. n. 3. Vis. II. n. 2, 3.

<sup>9</sup> See below, Vis. I. n. 2, 3.

Epistle to the Romans, gives us this character of it: "That he thought it to be a most useful writing: and was, as he believed, *Divinely Inspired*." Eusebius tells us, that "though, being admitted of by some, it was not esteemed canonical, yet was it by others judged a most necessary book, and is such read publicly in the Churches." And St. Hierome<sup>1</sup>, having in like manner observed that it was "read in some churches," makes this remark upon it, that it was indeed "a very profitable book;" and whose testimony was often quoted by the Greek Fathers. Athanasius<sup>2</sup> cites this book, together with the other books of Scripture, and calls it "a most useful treatise;" and in another<sup>3</sup> place tells us, that "though it was not strictly canonical, yet was it reckoned among those books which the Fathers appointed to be read to such as were to be instructed in the faith, and desired to be directed in the way of piety."

11. Hence we may observe, as a farther evidence of that respect which was paid to this book heretofore, that it was not only "openly read in the Churches," but, in some of the most ancient manuscripts of the New Testament, is joined together with the other books of the Holy Scriptures. An instance of this Cotelierius<sup>4</sup> offers us in that of the Monastery of St. Germain's in France, in which it is continued on at the end of St. Paul's Epistles. And in several of the old Stichometries, it is put in the same catalogue with the Inspired Writings: as may be seen in that which the same author<sup>5</sup> has

<sup>1</sup> Hist. Eccles. lib. iii. c. 3.

<sup>2</sup> Catal. Script. in Herm.

<sup>3</sup> De Incarnat. Verb. tom. I. p. 55. D.

<sup>4</sup> Epist. Pasch. tom. II. p. 39, 40.

<sup>5</sup> Annot. ad Herm. p. 41.

<sup>6</sup> Annot. in Barnab. p. 9, 10.

published out of a Manuscript in the King's Library, in his Observations upon St. Barnabas: in which St. Barnabas's Epistle is placed immediately before the Revelations; as the Acts of the Apostles, and Hermas's Shepherd, are immediately after it.

12. And yet, after all this, we find this same book not only doubted of by others among the Ancient Fathers, but slighted even by some of those who upon other occasions have spoken thus highly in its favour. Thus St. Jerome<sup>7</sup>, in Comments, exposes the folly of that Apocryphal Book, as he calls it, which in his Catalogue of Writers he had so highly applauded. Tertullian<sup>8</sup>, who spake, if not honourably, yet calmly, of it whilst a Catholic, being become a Montanist<sup>9</sup>, rejected it, even with scorn. And most of the other Fathers<sup>10</sup> who have spoken the highest of it themselves, yet plainly enough insinuate, that there were those who did not put the same value upon it. Thus <sup>11</sup>Origen mentions some who not only denied, but despised its authority. And Cassian<sup>12</sup> having made use of it in the point of free-will, Prosper<sup>13</sup> without more ado rejected it as a testimony of no value. And what the judgment of the latter ages was as to this matter, especially after Pope Gelasius<sup>14</sup> had ranked it among the Apocryphal Books, may be seen at large in the Observations of <sup>15</sup>Antonius Augustinus upon that decree.

13. How far this has influenced the learned

---

<sup>7</sup> Comment in Habac. l. 14. fol. 83. D. .

<sup>8</sup> De Orat. cap. xii.

<sup>9</sup> De Pudicitia, cap. x.

<sup>10</sup> Vid. Testimon. in edit. Coteler. p. 28, &c.

<sup>11</sup> Philocal. c. i.

<sup>12</sup> Cassian. Collat. xiii. c. 12.

<sup>13</sup> Contr. Collat. c. xxx.

<sup>14</sup> Decret. Gratian. Dist. xv.

<sup>15</sup> De Emend. Gratiani Dial. vi. p. 63, 64.

Christian faith, and a practice also suitable thereunto.

7. What he did after this we have no account : but that he lived a very strict life, we may reasonably conjecture, in that it pleased God to vouchsafe such extraordinary revelations to him,—and to employ him in several messages to his Church, both to correct their manners, and to warn them of the trials that were about to come upon them.

8. This was so singular a grace, even in those times of miracles, that we find some other Christians, not so humble as they ought to be, became enemies to him upon the account of them. However this did not hinder but that God still continued to make use of his ministry in admonishing sinners ; and he as readily and faithfully went on, both in warning them of their danger, and in exhorting them to repent and save their souls.

9. This was the business of this holy man, in which he spent his life ; and if we may believe the Roman Martyrology, his death was not unsuitable to it : where we read, that, “ being illustrious for his miracles, he at last offered himself “ a worthy sacrifice unto God.” But, upon what grounds this is established, Baronius<sup>1</sup> himself could not tell us : insomuch that in his Annals he durst not once mention the manner of his death, but is content to say, “ That having undergone many labours and troubles in the time “ of the persecution under Aurelius, (and that “ too without any authority,) he at last rested in “ the Lord, July 26th, which is therefore observed in commemoration of him<sup>2</sup>.” And here

<sup>1</sup> Annot. ad Mart. Rom. Maii 9.

<sup>2</sup> Baron. Annal. Eccles. ad ann. 164.

is indeed a pleasant mistake, and worthy the Roman Martyrology : for this author, from the book of which we are now discoursing, being sometimes called by the title of Pastor, or Shepherd, the Martyrologist has very gravely divided the good man into two saints ; and they observe the memorial of Hermas<sup>2</sup>, May 9th, and of Pastor, July 26th. Unless we shall rather say that this was indeed the Cardinal's blunder, and the Martyrology in the right, to make two distinct persons—of St. Hermas mentioned by St. Paul, and the brother of Pope Pius to whom the passages<sup>4</sup> mentioned, July 26, do manifestly belong ; and erred only in applying the character of pastor<sup>3</sup> to the latter, which, with the Treatise of which we are now discoursing, ought (as the Cardinal<sup>6</sup> has truly observed) to have been ascribed to the former.

10. But not to insist any longer upon the author of this book : As for the work itself, we find both the Antient Fathers, and the learned of our own times, not a little divided in their judgments concerning it. Some there are, and those the nearest to the time when this book was written, that treat it almost with the same respect that they would do the Canonical Scriptures. Irenæus<sup>7</sup> quotes it under the very name of the *Scripture*. Origen<sup>8</sup>, though he sometimes moderates his opinion of it, upon the account of some who did not, it seems, pay the same respect with himself to it ; yet speaking of Hermas being the author of this book, in his Comments on the

---

<sup>2</sup> Vid. Martyrol. Rom. ad Maii. 9. et Jul. 26.

<sup>3</sup> Comp. Martyrol. Rom. Jul. 26. with Baron. Annal. ann. 162, 164, 166.

<sup>4</sup> Martyrol. Rom. Jul. 26.

<sup>6</sup> Annot. b. ad Martyrol. Rom. Maii. 9.

<sup>7</sup> Lib. IV. advers. Hæres. et apud Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. iv. c. 8.

<sup>8</sup> Origen. Enarat. in Epist. ad Rom. p. 411. D.



present times, concerning this book. It would be too great a presumption for me to pretend to determine any thing as to this matter; and having subjoined the work itself in our own language, every one may be able to satisfy himself what value he ought to put upon it. That there are many useful things to be found in it, but especially in the second, and I think the best, part of it, cannot be denied. And for the other two: it must be considered, that though such visions as we there read of, being no longer continued to these latter ages, may warrantably be despised in the pretenders of the present days; yet we cannot doubt but that, at the time when this book was written, the extraordinary gifts of the Holy Ghost were very frequent; and we need not question but that such revelations too, among the rest, were communicated to holy men for the benefit of the Church.

16. But I shall not pursue this subject any farther: nor will I add very much to what I have before said, with relation to St. Clement and his First Epistle, concerning that part which still remains of a Second under his name, and which concludes the following collection.

17. That this Second Epistle was not of so great a reputation among the Primitive Fathers, as the foregoing, Eusebius<sup>1</sup> not only plainly tells us, but gives us this testimony of it, that he could not find it quoted, as the other was, by any of them. But St. Jerome<sup>2</sup> is more severe; he represents it to us as rejected by them: and Photius<sup>3</sup>, after him, calls it a "spurious piece." And, not to mention any more, our most reverend

---

<sup>1</sup> Hist. Eccles. lib. iii. c. 38.

<sup>2</sup> De Script. in Clemente.

<sup>3</sup> Phot. Cod. 112, 113.

bishop Usher <sup>4</sup> not only concurs in the same censure, but offers several arguments too in proof of it.

18. And yet, when all is done, it does not appear but that St. Clement was indeed the author of this, as well as of the other Epistle before spoken of; though it was not so much esteemed by, nor by consequence so generally known to, the Ancients as that. In the Manuscript<sup>5</sup> of St. Thecla, we find this set forth under the same title with the other. And in all the other catalogues of the Ancients, wherever one is spoken of, the other is, for the most part, set together with it: as may particularly be observed in the Apostolical Canons<sup>6</sup>, not to mention any other collections of this kind.

19. Nor does Eusebius<sup>7</sup> deny this Epistle to be St. Clement's, but only says that it was not so celebrated as the other. And true it is, we do not find it either so often, or so expressly mentioned, as that. But yet if the conjecture of Wendeline<sup>8</sup>, approved by a very learned man<sup>9</sup> of our own country, may be admitted, Eusebius<sup>10</sup> himself will afford us an instance of one who not only spake of it, but spake of it as wont to be publicly read in the Church of Corinth. For, discoursing of the Epistles of Dionysius, bishop of that see, he tells us, that, in one of them which he wrote to the Romans, he took notice of St. Clement's Epistle in these words: "To day have we kept the LORD's Day with all holiness; in which we have read your Epistle, as we shall always

---

<sup>4</sup> Dissert. de Script. Ignat. cap. x.

<sup>5</sup> Vid. Catal. Bevereg. Codex. Canon. Vindicat. 289.

<sup>6</sup> Canon. LXXXV.

<sup>7</sup> Hist. Eccles. lib. 3. c. 38.

<sup>8</sup> Divinat. de Epist. Clem.

<sup>9</sup> Bevereg. Cod. Canon. Vindic. lib. ii. c. 9. sec. 10. p. 286.

<sup>10</sup> Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. iv. c. 23.

“continue to read it, for our instruction, together  
 “with the *former* written to us by Clement.”  
 What that epistle was, of which Dionysius here speaks, as written by the Church of Rome to that of Corinth, and publickly read in the congregation there, does not appear. Bishop Beveridge, after Wendeline, conceives it to have been that which Clement wrote in the name of that Church to them; and, so, the former Epistle, spoken of by Dionysius, will be this Second, written in his own name to the Corinthians; not by the authority of the Roman Church. But this others' will by no means allow; they suppose the Letter, which Dionysius says was read that day among them, to have been some other Epistle, either of Soter, or of the Church of Rome; and make use of this very passage, to prove that they had received but one Epistle from St. Clement, nor knew of any other that had been written by him.

20. And yet Epiphanius<sup>1</sup> expressly tell us, that this Epistle, no less than the foregoing, was in his time wont to be publickly read in the congregation. And though St. Jerome and Photius speak indeed but meanly of it in those places where they seem to deliver the judgment of Eusebius rather than their own opinion; yet upon other occasions<sup>2</sup> they make no exception against the authority of it, but equally ascribe it to St. Clement with the other of which there is no doubt.

21. Having said thus much, concerning these two last pieces with which the present Collection is concluded, I have but this to add, That they are, both of them, now first of all put into our own

---

<sup>1</sup> See Dr. Grabe *Spicileg.* tom. I. p. 265.

<sup>2</sup> *Hæres.* xxvii. num. 6.

<sup>3</sup> See Hieron. *adv. Jovin.* tom. III. fol. 12. Photius. *Cod.* 136. in Clem.

language, and presented to the perusal of the English reader: the former from the old Latin Version, which is by some<sup>4</sup> much complained of, though by others<sup>5</sup> as stiffly defended; the latter from the original Greek, as it was published by Mr. Patrick Young from the Alexandrian Manuscript, the only copy that, for aught appears, does at this day remain of it.

22. If any one should ask how it came to pass that our learned countryman, Mr. Burton, when he set out the former Epistle of St. Clement in English, did not subjoin this to it, the answer which himself<sup>6</sup> warrants us to return is this: That, taking what has been said by the Ancients before-mentioned in the strictest sense, he looked upon this Epistle as a spurious piece; which, though it carried the name of St. Clement, was yet truly no more his than those Constitutions and Recognitions which are also published under the same name, but are generally acknowledged to be none of his, as, in the prosecution of this discourse, I shall take occasion more fully to shew.

23. As for the Epistle itself, I have concluded it somewhat sooner than the Greek, which yet remains of it, does. But that which I have omitted being only an imperfect piece of a sentence, which would have made the conclusion much more abrupt than it is now, I chose rather to add what followed, here, than to continue it there. And, to make the Reader the better amends for this liberty, I have not only subjoined what remains of St. Clement, but have endeavoured to make out the sense of what is wanting in our

---

<sup>4</sup> Barthius apud Coteler. Not. in Herm. p. 44.

<sup>5</sup> Cotelerius, *ibid.*

<sup>6</sup> Burton's Notes upon St. Clement, p. 94.

copy—from the other Clement, who seems to have followed this original.

“ ‘For the LORD himself, being asked by a certain person, When his kingdom should come? answered, When two shall be one, and that which is without as that which is within; and the male with the female, neither male nor female.—Now, *two are one*, when we speak the truth to each other, and there is (without hypocrisy) one soul in two bodies. ‘*And that which is without as that which is within:*’ He means this; he calls the soul that which is within, and the body that which is without. As therefore thy body appears, so let thy soul be seen by its good works. ‘*And the male with the female, neither male nor female;*’—— ‘He means this; He calls our anger the male, our concupiscence the female. When therefore a man is come to such a pass that he is subject neither to the one nor the other of these, (both of which, through the prevalence of custom, and an evil education, cloud and darken the reason,) but rather, having dispelled the mist arising from them, and being full of shame, shall by repentance have united both his soul and spirit in the obedience of reason; then, as Paul says, *there is in us neither male nor female.*”

---

<sup>1</sup> Clem. Rom. ex MS. Regio.

<sup>2</sup> Ex. Clem. Alexandrin.

CHAP. IX.

THAT THE PIECES HERE PUT TOGETHER, ARE ALL THAT REMAIN OF THE MOST PRIMITIVE AND APOSTOLICAL ANTIQUITY.

*That there are several other Treatises pretended to have been written within the compass of this period; but none such as truly come up to it—Of the Epistle of our Saviour CHRIST to ABGARUS, and the occasion of it—That it is not probable that any such Letter was written by him—The Epistles ascribed to the VIRGIN MARY, spurious: so is the Epistle pretended to have been written by ST. PAUL to the Laodiceans—Of the Acts, the Gospel, the Preaching, and Revelations, of ST. PETER.—Of the Liturgy attributed to ST. MATTHEW; and the Discourse said to have been written by him, concerning the Nativity of the BLESSED VIRGIN—Of the Liturgies ascribed to ST. PETER, ST. MARK, and ST. JAMES—Of the Gospels attributed to several of the Apostles—Of the Apostles' Creed, and the Canons called Apostolical—Of the other Pieces under the names of ST. CLEMENT and ST. IGNATIUS; and particularly of the Recognitions and Epitome of CLEMENT—Of the History of the Life, Miracles, and Assumption of ST. JOHN, pretended to have been written by PROCHORUS, one of the seven Deacons—Of the Histories of ST. PETER and ST. PAUL, ascribed to LINUS, bishop of Rome—Of the Lives of the Apostles, attributed to ABDIAS, bishop of Babylon—Of the Epistles of ST. MARTIAL—Of the Passion of ST. ANDREW, written by the Presbyters of Achaia—Of the Works ascribed to DIONYSIUS the Areopagite—That, upon the whole, the Pieces here put together are all that remain of the apostolical times, after the Books of the Holy Scripture.*

1. **H**AVING said thus much concerning the several pieces here put together, and the authors of them, it is time to go on to the other part of this Discourse, and consider what may be fit to be observed concerning them, all together, as they

are now set forth, in our own language, in the following collection.

2. Now the first thing that may be fit to be taken notice of is, that the following collection is truly, what the title pretends it to be, a full and perfect collection of all the genuine writings that remain to us, of the Apostolical Fathers,—and carries on the antiquity of the Church, from the time of the Holy Scriptures of the New Testament, to about an hundred and fifty years after Christ.

3. To make this the more evident, it will be necessary for me to consider, what those other writings are which some have endeavoured to raise up into the rank of Apostolical antiquity; and to shew, that they are indeed writings either of no credit nor authority at all, or, at least, not of such as they are falsely pretended to be. And to the end I may proceed the more clearly in this inquiry, I will divide the several now to be examined into the three following ranks: The First, of those which are antecedent to any I have here collected; as being pretended to have been written, either by our Saviour Christ himself, or by the Virgin Mary, or by the Apostles. The Second, of such other tracts as are ascribed to some of those Fathers whose Genuine Remains I have here put together. And the Third, of such pieces as are said to have been written by some other authors who lived in the apostolical times, and wrote, if we will believe some men, several books much more considerable than any I have here collected.

4. Of the first of these kinds, is that pretended letter of our Blessed Saviour to Abgarus, king of Edessa, a little city of Arabia<sup>1</sup>, a part of which country was subject to him. Now this may seem

---

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Annot. Valesii in Euseb. pp. 18, 19.

to be of so much the better credit, in that Eusebius<sup>a</sup> tells us he had himself faithfully translated it out of the Syriac language, as he found it in the Archives of Edessa. Nor was it very long after, that Ephræm<sup>b</sup>, a deacon of that church, made mention of this communication between our Saviour and Abgarus, as the occasion of the first conversion of that place; and exhorted his people, upon that account, the rather to hold fast to their holy profession, and to live worthy of it. Evagrius<sup>c</sup>, who wrote about two hundred years after this, not only confirmed all that had been said by both these, but added, from Procopius, several other circumstances, unknown, for aught that appears, to either of them; particularly, that of the impression which our Saviour had made of his face upon a napkin, and sent to that Prince; which, he tells us, was of no small advantage to them in the defence of their town against Chosroes, king of Persia, who by this means was hindered from taking of it. How this circumstance came to be added to this relation, or by whom it was first invented I cannot tell. But that both the intercourse reported by Eusebius between our Saviour and this Prince, and the report of this picture being brought to him, have been received, as a matter of unquestionable truth, in those parts, the authority of Gregorius Abulpharjus<sup>d</sup> will not suffer us to doubt; who, in his History published by our learned Dr. Pococke, both recites the letters, and records the story in terms very little different from what the Greek writers before-mentioned have done.

---

<sup>a</sup> Hist. Eccles. lib. i. c. 13.

<sup>b</sup> Testam. S. Ephræm. inter Oper. p. 788.

<sup>c</sup> Evagrii Hist. Eccles. lib. iv. cap. 57.

<sup>d</sup> Hist. Dynast. Lat. p. 71, 72.



5. And now, since the addition of this new circumstance to the old account of this matter, it is not to be wondered if the patrons of images among the Greeks, from henceforth, contended with all earnestness for the truth of both. Inso-much that we find, they instituted a particular festival in memory of it, August the 16th; and transcribed at large the whole history of this adventure into their Menæon, and recited it upon it.

6. It is, I suppose, upon the same account that some of our late authors, though they do not care to assert the truth of this story, are yet unwilling to deny all credit to it. 'Baronius reports both the Relation and the Epistle from Eusebius, but will not answer for the truth of either. Spondanus<sup>1</sup> delivers the same from the Cardinal, that he had done from Eusebius; and passes no censure either one way or other upon it: only in his margin he observes, that Gretser the Jesuit, in his Discourse of Images, &c. had vindicated the authority of our Saviour's Epistle to Abgarus, from the exceptions of Casaubon, in his 'Exercitationes upon Baronius, against it. 'Gerard Vossius, in his Scholia upon the Testament of St. Ephræm, contents himself to refer us to the authority of the Ancients for the truth of this relation; who, he pretends, did without controversy look upon it to be authentic. And Valesius<sup>4</sup> himself, though he plainly enough shews that he was not out of all doubt concerning the truth of this story, yet neither does he utterly reject it; but rather endeavours to rectify those errors that seemed the most considerable in it.

---

<sup>1</sup> Annal. Eccl. ann. xxxi. num. 60.

<sup>2</sup> Epitom. Annal. Baron. annal. xxxi. num. 22.

<sup>3</sup> Annot. ad Oper. Ephræm. Syr. p. 796.

<sup>4</sup> Annot. in Euseb. Hist. Eccles. p. 25. a.

7. But others, even of the Church of Rome, have not observed so much caution in this particular. They roundly stand by the censure of Pope Gelasius<sup>5</sup>, who pronounced this Epistle of our Saviour's to be apocryphal; and not only shew, by many probable arguments, the falseness of it, but, what is yet more, pass the same censure upon the story of the image too, that Casaubon<sup>6</sup> had done, notwithstanding all that Gretser could say in favour of it. Natalis Alexander<sup>7</sup> delivers this conclusion concerning it: "The Epistle of Abgarus to our Saviour, and his answer to it, are supposititious and apocryphal;" and at large answers all that is usually urged in favour of them. And Du Pin<sup>8</sup>, after him, yet more solidly convinces it of such manifest errors, as may serve to satisfy all considering persons, that Eusebius and Ephræm were too easy of belief in this particular; and did not sufficiently examine into it, when they delivered that, as a certain truth, which from several circumstances appears to have been evidently otherwise.

8. I shall not need to say any thing of the opinions of the learned men of the 'reformed religion, as to this matter; who generally agree in the same censure. But yet, seeing both Eusebius and St. Ephræm have spoken with such confidence of this story, whose authority ought not to be lightly esteemed, I shall choose rather, with the <sup>10</sup>middle

---

<sup>5</sup> Apud Gratian. Dist. xv. c. c. Simon Hist. Crit. du N. T. chap. iii. p. 23.

<sup>6</sup> Exercit. in Baron. xlii. sec. 31. p. 289.

<sup>7</sup> Sæcul. I. vol. I. p. 266.

<sup>8</sup> Nouvelle Bibl. vol. I. p. 1.

<sup>9</sup> Vid. apud Basnagium Exercit. Hist. Crit. in Baron. ad ann. xliii. num. 18. p. 430.

<sup>10</sup> Casaubon. Exerc. in Baron. xlii. p. 289. Montacutius, Orig. Eccles. tom. I. part 2. p. 63. Cave Hist. Literaria, sec. i. p. 1. in Jæsu Christo.

sort, to leave it to every one to judge as he pleases, than determine any thing in this case. And, that they may the better do it, I will subjoin at length the two Epistles—as they are rendered by Eusebius from the original Syriac into Greek, and, from him, translated into our own tongue.

*The EPISTLE of ABGARUS to Our BLESSED SAVIOUR.*

9. “ Abgarus, prince of Edessa, to Jesus the  
 “ good Saviour, who has appeared in the country  
 “ about Jerusalem, health. I have received an  
 “ account of thee, and thy cures; how, without  
 “ any medicines, or herbs, they are done by thee.  
 “ For report says, that thou makest the blind to  
 “ see, the lame to walk; that thou cleanseest the  
 “ lepers, and castest out unclean spirits, and  
 “ devils; and healest those who have laboured  
 “ under long diseases; and raisest up the dead.  
 “ And, having heard all this concerning thee, I  
 “ have concluded with myself; one of these two  
 “ things: either that thou art God, and that,  
 “ being come down from heaven, thou doest all  
 “ these mighty works, or that thou art the Son  
 “ of God, seeing thou art able to perform such  
 “ things. Wherefore, by this present letter, I  
 “ entreat thee to come unto me, and to cure me  
 “ of the infirmity that lies upon me. For I have  
 “ also heard that the Jews murmur against thee,  
 “ and seek to do thee mischief. For I have a  
 “ small but fair city, which may be sufficient both  
 “ for thee and me.”

*The Answer of Our SAVIOUR to ABGARUS.*

10. “ Abgarus, thou art blessed, in that  
 “ though thou hast not seen me, thou hast yet  
 “ believed in me. For it is written concerning

“ me, that those who have seen me should not  
“ believe in me ; that so they who have not seen  
“ me, might believe and live. As for what thou  
“ hast written unto me, that I should come to  
“ thee : it is necessary that all those things for  
“ which I was sent, should be fulfilled by me in  
“ this place : and that having fulfilled them, I  
“ should be received up to him that sent me.  
“ When therefore I shall be received into heaven,  
“ I will send unto thee some one of my disciples,  
“ who shall both heal thy distemper, and give life  
“ to thee, and to those that are with thee.”

11. Having said thus much concerning this pretended intercourse between our Saviour Christ and this Prince, I should in the next place mention the Letters ascribed to his Mother, the Blessed Virgin Mary, but that there is not the least shadow of truth to give credit to them, nor any arguments brought in favour of them that may deserve a refutation. I shall therefore say nothing to these, but pass on without any more ado to those pieces which have been attributed either to some particular Apostle or Evangelist ; or else are pretended to have been composed by the whole college of the Apostles together.

12. Of the former kind is the Epistle of St. Paul to the Laodiceans, set out by Hutter in his Polyglott New Testament, and inserted by Sixtus Senensis<sup>1</sup> into his Bibliothecque, together with the other Epistles that are in like manner pretended, though without any just ground, to have passed between the same Apostle and Seneca the philosopher. Now that which gave occasion to the forging of such an Epistle, was, that St. Paul himself seems to speak, (Coloss. iv. 16.) as if he had

---

<sup>1</sup> *Bibl. Sanct. lib. ii. in Paulo. Add. Frassenium Disq. Bldic. p. 731, &c.*

written an Epistle to that Church. For having commanded the Colossians when they should have read the Epistle which he wrote to them, "To cause it to be read in the Church of the Laodiceans;" he adds, that "they likewise should read the Epistle from Laodicea." But not to mention that St. Paul's words may be understood of an Epistle written from<sup>1</sup> Laodicea, (as Theophylact<sup>2</sup> thinks the First Epistle to Timothy; which, nevertheless, I suppose, was written after that to the Colossians;) or of an Epistle written by the Apostle to some other Church, but ordered to be communicated to the Laodiceans; as the Second Epistle to the Corinthians was directed not only to that one place, but to all the Churches of Achaia (2 Cor. i. 4.); and as, in the very passage under debate, the Epistle to the Colossians is ordered to be sent to the Laodiceans, and to be read in the Church there; I say, not to insist upon these explications, there are reasons sufficient to induce one to believe that the Epistle to the Ephesians, as it now is, and was very early entitled, was originally inscribed to the Laodiceans: this at least is sure, that it is so called by Marcion, who, though a rank heretic, and reproved by Tertullian as a falsifier of the title of an Apostolical Epistle<sup>3</sup>, yet in a matter of this nature, may be admitted to give his evidence; especially considering that he lived within three-score years after this Epistle was written.

13. But to suppose that this Epistle was primarily written to the Ephesians; yet this does not hinder but that St. Paul might have ordered it to be communicated, as to other Churches, so in particular to that of Laodicea; and from thence

---

<sup>1</sup> So Chrysostom and Theodoret.

<sup>2</sup> Theophylact. in loc.

<sup>3</sup> Of this see Dr. Mill's Proleg. to his N. T. p. ix.

to be sent on to the Colossians; which, as I have before observed, will sufficiently answer all that can be collected from the passage produced out of his Epistle to them. Now that which favours this conjecture is, that Ephesus was in those days looked upon, even in the civil account of the empire, as the chief city and metropolis of the Lesser Asia. Here it was that the emperors<sup>4</sup> ordered their edicts relating to that province to be published; in like manner, as we find in several laws of the Theodosian Code, that they were wont to be proposed at Rome for Italy, and at Carthage for Africa. Here the Common Councils of Asia assembled; and, to name no more, here<sup>5</sup> the public sports and sacred rites, &c. that concerned the whole community of that province, were usually transacted. Hence St. Chrysostome<sup>7</sup> calls it, in express terms, "the metropolis of Asia;" and, in the order<sup>6</sup> of the metropolitan churches, it is accordingly styled the first, and most honourable, of Asia.

14. And much greater was the respect which it had with relation to ecclesiastical matters; both as it was a church founded by St. Paul<sup>8</sup>, and as it was the seat of the beloved disciple St. John, who continued there to the very time of Trajan, above one hundred years after Christ. Hence Tertullian<sup>10</sup>—directing those who were desirous to know what the true faith of Christ was, to inquire, among the chiefest churches in every part, what had been delivered to them and was the faith

---

<sup>4</sup> Vid. Euseb. Eccles. Hist. lib. iv. c. 13.

<sup>5</sup> Vid. Annot. Vales. in Euseb. p. 60. A.

<sup>6</sup> Vid. Obs. Menag. in Diog. Laert. p. 23. b. Edit. 4to.

<sup>7</sup> Arg. in Epist. ad Ephes.

<sup>8</sup> Ad calcem Codini.

<sup>9</sup> Acts xviii. 19. xix. 1, 10.

<sup>10</sup> Tertull. de Præscript. cap. xxxvi. p. 215.

received and taught amongst them—bids them, if they were in Italy, go to Rome; if in Achaia, to Corinth; if in Macedonia, to Philippi; if in Asia, to Ephesus: insomuch that, as Evagrius<sup>1</sup> tells us, the bishop of Ephesus had a patriarchal power within the diocese of Asia till the time of the Fourth General Council. And, long after that, Theodorus, bishop of this see, subscribing to the Acts of the Sixth General Council, calls himself Bishop of Ephesus, the metropolis of the province of Asia. And, even in the times of which we are now discoursing, St. John, writing to the Seven Churches of Asia, (of which Laodicea was one,) places Ephesus<sup>2</sup> at the head of them, as that which had the precedence of all the rest in those parts.

15. Nor is it any small confirmation of this opinion, that, when St. Paul passed through Asia to Jerusalem, we read, (Acts xx.) that not having time to go himself to Ephesus, he ordered the elders of that Church to meet him at Miletus, and there gave his last charge to them. Now who those elders were we are plainly told (v. 28.); they were the bishops of that Church. But it is certain that in those days there was but one bishop, properly so called, in a church at one time; and therefore these could not be the bishops of that city alone<sup>3</sup>, but must have been rather the bishop of Ephesus together with the bishops of the other neighbouring churches within that district: and it was, probably, Timothy who now came at the head of them. And what kind of bishop he was, St. Paul's Epistles will not suffer us to doubt: he was indeed a bishop over

---

<sup>1</sup> Hist. Eccles. lib. iii. c. 6. p. 339.

<sup>2</sup> Rev. i. 11. ii. 1.

<sup>3</sup> Irenæus, lib. iii. c. 14.

other bishops ; the first, to say no more, of all the bishops in those parts.

16. Seeing then such was the prerogative which the Church of Ephesus had, from the beginning, over all the other churches of the Asian diocese ; and that St. Paul himself had first planted Christianity there: and seeing it appears—from the command which he gave to the Colossians, (chap. iv. 16.) to cause the Epistle which he had written to them to be read in the Church of the Laodiceans—that he was wont to order the Epistles which he wrote to one church, to be sent to, and read in, the others that were near unto it : seeing, lastly, we are told both by Tertullian<sup>4</sup> and Epiphanius, that the Epistle to the Ephesians was anciently called, by some, the Epistle to the Laodiceans ; I think it may not be improbable, but that by the Epistle from Laodicea he may have meant the Epistle which he wrote to the Ephesians<sup>5</sup>, at the same time, and by the same person, that he wrote to the Colossians ; and which, being from them communicated to the Laodiceans, might be ordered by St. Paul to be sent on to the Colossians, who were a neighbour church to Laodicea, and afterwards subject to it as their metropolitan.

17. But whatever becomes of this conjecture—whether by the Epistle from Laodicea we are to understand some epistle written from that place and that either by St. Paul to some other church or person, or by the Laodiceans<sup>6</sup> to him ; or whether we are to understand by it some epistle

---

<sup>4</sup> Tertull. adv. Marcion. lib. v. c. xvii. p. 481. Epiphani. Hæres. xlii. num. xii.

<sup>5</sup> Vid. L'Histoire Critique de Monsieur Simon sur le N. T. c. xv. p. 166. See Dr. Mills's Prolegom. ad N. T. p. ix.

<sup>6</sup> Frassenius, Disq. Biblic. pp. 730, 731.



that was to be communicated from thence to the Colossians, which seems to me the more probable, and particularly that which he wrote by Tychicus to the Ephesians at the same time that he wrote by him to the Colossians—certain it is, that the Epistle now extant under that title is none of St. Paul's writing; but is made up of several parcels of his genuine Epistles, and the expressions contained in them.

18. It would be endless to insist upon all the other spurious pieces of the like kind that have been attributed to this great Apostle. It is sufficient to observe, that neither Eusebius<sup>1</sup> nor St. Jerome<sup>2</sup> knew any thing more of his writing than what we have in those Epistles that are still extant in our Bibles under his name, except it were the Epistle to the Hebrews, which, though doubted of by some in the Primitive Church, is yet ascribed to him by Eusebius, who expressly accounts fourteen of his Epistles, and speaks of that to the Hebrews as his; though he adds, that, "being not received by the Church of Rome, it was by some suspected whether it were indeed the true Epistle of St. Paul."

19. But much greater is the authority of those supposititious pieces which the same<sup>3</sup> Eusebius tells us were, even in those days, attributed to that other great Apostle St. Peter, viz. The Acts, the Gospel, the Preaching, and the Revelation of St. Peter. Nevertheless, seeing he at the same time declares that they were not catholic, nor universally received; and since, from other ecclesiastical writers, it may be proved that some of them were

---

<sup>1</sup> Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. iii. c. 3.

<sup>2</sup> Hieron. de Script. Eccles. in S. Paulo.

<sup>3</sup> Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. iii. c. 3. et 25. Comp. Hieron. in Catal. Script. Eccles. in S. Petro.

wholly composed, and others interpolated by heretics, the better to gain thereby credit to their doctrine; how ancient soever they may otherwise be, yet they will not fall within the compass of the present Collection: nor indeed is there any thing of them remaining to us, except the names, and a few fragments, scattered up and down in the quotations that have been made by the ecclesiastical writers out of them.

20. To these let me add, in the third place, the Discourses ascribed to St. Matthew<sup>4</sup>, the first of the Evangelists. Two books are still remaining under his name—a Liturgy, pretended to have been composed by him; and a Discourse concerning the Nativity of the Blessed Virgin—but both rejected by learned men, as the works of some impostor, many ages after the death of that holy Apostle. As for the Liturgies ascribed, in like manner, to some others of the Apostles; namely, to St. Peter, St. Mark, and St. James, there is not, I suppose, any learned man at this day who believes them to have been written by those holy men, and set forth in the manner that they are now published. They were indeed the ancient Liturgies of the three, if not of the four, Patriarchal Churches; viz. the Roman, (perhaps of that of Antioch too,) the Alexandrian, and Jerusalem Churches, first founded, or at least governed, by St. Peter, St. Mark, and St. James. However, since it can hardly be doubted but that those holy Apostles and Evangelists did give some directions for the administration of the blessed Eucharist in those churches, it may reasonably be presumed, that some of those orders are still remaining in those Liturgies which have been brought down to us under their names; and

---

<sup>4</sup> Vid. Cave Hist. Literar. p. 9. Natal. Alex. sec. I. vol. I. p. 85.  
Du Pin Bibl. vol. I. p. 21.

that those prayers wherein they all agree, (in sense, at least, if not in words,) were first prescribed in the same, or like terms, by those Apostles and Evangelists; nor would it be difficult to make a farther proof of this conjecture from the writings of the Ancient Fathers, if it were needful, in this place, to insist upon it.

21. For what concerns the Gospels set out under the names of several of the Apostles, though some of them are very ancient, yet is it generally agreed among the most judicious of all sides, that they were not only not written by those holy persons, but were for the most part set out by suspected authors, and for ill ends, after their deaths.

22. As for the writings of the whole college of Apostles; two pieces there are, besides the Synodical Letter spoken of by St. Luke, (Acts xv. 23.) which not only go under their names, but have been by some ascribed to them as the authors of them: and those are, first, the Creed; and, secondly, the Canons of the Apostles.

23. For the former of these, the Apostles' Creed, it has been thought by many that it was so called, not only as being a summary of the Apostles' doctrine, but because it was really composed by them; and that either in their first assembly after our LORD's resurrection, (Acts i.) or else immediately before their dispersion, upon the breaking out of Herod's persecution, (Acts xii.) which Baronius and others esteem the more probable. It is not my intention to enter on any particular examination of this matter, which has been so fully handled, not only by the late critics of the Church of Rome, Natalis Alexander<sup>1</sup>, Du Pin<sup>2</sup>, &c.

---

<sup>1</sup> Nat. Alex. sec. I. vol. I. p. 490, &c.

<sup>2</sup> Du Pin Biblioth. Eccles. vol. I. p. 35, &c.

but yet more especially by archbishop Usher<sup>3</sup>, Gerrard Vossius<sup>4</sup>, Suicer<sup>5</sup>, Spanhemius<sup>6</sup>, Tentzelius<sup>7</sup>, and Sam. Basnage<sup>8</sup>, among the protestants. It shall suffice to say, that as it is not likely that had any such thing as this been done by the Apostles, St. Luke would have passed it by without taking the least notice of it: so the diversity of Creeds in the ancient Church, and that not only in expression, but in some whole articles too, sufficiently shews, that the Creed which we call by that name was not composed by the twelve Apostles, much less in the same form in which it now is; although<sup>9</sup> the articles of it may for the most part have been delivered by the Apostles to their first converts, much in the same order that they now stand, and have been by them confessed at their baptism, and on other occasions.

24. But much less is it probable that the Canons yet extant under their name were truly compiled by them, but rather, as our late pious and learned bishop Beveridge<sup>10</sup> has shewn, were a collection of the Canons made by the Councils of the first ages, put together at several times, and finished, as we now see them, within ccc years after Christ, before the assembling of the First General Council of Nice. This is the earliest date that is at present ascribed to them by the most "judicious

---

<sup>3</sup> Diatrib. de Symb.

<sup>4</sup> Voss. Dissert. de tribus Symbolis.

<sup>5</sup> Suicer. Thesaur. Eccles. tom. II. Voce *σύμβολον*, p. 1086, &c.

<sup>6</sup> Spanhem. Introd. ad Hist. Eccles. sec. ii. c. 3.

<sup>7</sup> Ernest. Tentzel. Exercit. select. Exercit. I.

<sup>8</sup> Sam. Basnage. Exercit. Hist. Crit. ad ann. XLIV. num. 17, 18.

<sup>9</sup> See Dr. Grabe's Annot. to Bishop Bull's Judic. Cath. Eccles. cap. 6.

<sup>10</sup> Annot. in Pandect. Canon. Oxon. tom. II. p. 1. Id. Codex. Can. Vindicat. c. 11, &c.

<sup>11</sup> Vid. Albaspin. obs. lib. 1. c. 13. p. 28. De Marca apud Bevereg. Annot. in Pandect. p. 4. num. xii. Coteler. Not. in Patr. Apostol. pp. 327, 328. Du Pin Bibl. Eccles. tom. I. p. 36. Natal. Alex. sec. I. vol. II. p. 138.

writers of the Roman communion, as well as of the reformed religion; and some<sup>1</sup> there are who will by no means allow them to be so ancient as even this opinion supposes them to be.

25. It is evident then, that, except the Holy Scriptures, there is nothing remaining of the truly genuine Christian antiquity, more early than those pieces I have here put together. Nor have the authors, whose Tracts I have now set forth, any other pieces yet remaining, besides those that appear in the following Collection. Indeed, for what concerns two of the Fathers here mentioned, St. Clement and St. Ignatius, several treatises there are, and some that may seem much more considerable than any I have subjoined, that have been sent abroad under the authority of their names, but which are at present universally acknowledged by all learned men not to have been written by them. Such are the Constitutions and Recognitions of St. Clement; the collection called, from the same Father, The Clementines; the Epitome of Clement; and the other Epistles ascribed to Ignatius, besides the seven here set out, which alone were either mentioned by Eusebius, or known to the Church for some ages after<sup>2</sup>.

26. I shall not here enter upon any particular inquiry, when these several pieces were first sent abroad into the world; or how it came to pass that some, even among the Ancients<sup>3</sup> themselves, received several of them for the genuine writings of these holy men, only corrupted, as many others were,

<sup>1</sup> Daillé de Pseudep. Apostol. lib. iii. Larroque Observat. in Beve-reg. Hoornbeck Theolog. Patr. p. 35, &c.

<sup>2</sup> See this discussed at large by bishop Usher, Dissert. ad Ignat. cap. v, vi, xix. p. 2.

<sup>3</sup> Epiphani. Hæres. xxx. Ruffinus de Adulterat. libr. Origen. Tract. xxxv. in Marthæum. Author Oper. Imperfect. in Matth. inter Oper. Chrysost. ad Mat. x. et xxiv.

by the heretics of those first times, the better to give some colour to their errors. I will only observe, that the Recognitions of St. Clement—not only the most learned, but the most ancient too of any of these, as near as we can guess—were not set forth till about the middle of the second century; and are rejected by Eusebius<sup>4</sup> as none of his, but as one of those many impostures which were even then published under his name. And for the rest, though some of them have been reputed ancient too, yet it is evident that none of them come up to the period of which I am now speaking, nor even to the age of the Recognitions beforementioned<sup>5</sup>.

27. As for the Epitome of St. Clement, Cotelierius<sup>6</sup> esteems it to have been yet later than any of the rest. Perhaps it was collected by Metaphrastes, whom I take to have been the author of the Martyrdom of that holy man, set out by Surius<sup>7</sup> and Allatius<sup>8</sup>, and reprinted by Cotelierius at the end of the works ascribed to St. Clement. This is certain, that it was composed in some of the latter ages; as was also the Account of the Miracle pretended to have been wrought at his martyrdom, which goes under the name of Ephræm, archbishop of Cherson; where (if Du Pin<sup>9</sup> be not mistaken) there never was any. And this Cotelierius seems to have been aware of; and

---

<sup>4</sup> Vid. Cotelier. Not. in Script. PP. Apost. p. 343. Natal. Alex. sec. I. A. tom. I. p. 126. Du Pin Bibl. vol. I. pp. 80, 81.

<sup>5</sup> Cotelier. Annot. in Script. PP. Apost. p. 113. A. 115. D. 403. 431. C. D. Sixt. Senens. Biblioth. lib. ii. in Clement. Possevin. Appar. p. 328. Bellarm. de Script. sec. I. in Clement. Natal. Alex. sec. I. tom. I. p. 139. Id. ibid. cap. de St. Ignat. p. 139. Du Pin Biblioth. pp. 81, 83, 102, &c.

<sup>6</sup> Notæ in Script. PP. Apost. p. 431. C. D.

<sup>7</sup> Surius ad Nov. 23.

<sup>8</sup> Allatius in Diatrib. de Symeonum Scriptis.

<sup>9</sup> Du Pin Biblioth. tom. I. p. 89. r.

therefore, in his annotations upon this relation, calls him archbishop, or bishop, of Cherson. Now that there was such a bishop appears both from the ancient *Notitiæ*<sup>1</sup> of the province of Europe under the patriarch of Constantinople; and from the subscription which Peter<sup>2</sup>, bishop of this place, made to the Council of Chalcedon, for Cyriacus, archbishop of Heraclea, in whose province that see lay. And the Disposition of <sup>3</sup> Leo the Sixth, made towards the latter end of the ninth century, mentions it among the archbishopricks subject to the patriarch of Constantinople; to which degree, therefore, about that time, or not long before, it seems to have been raised.

28. There is nothing then in any of those pieces which make up the rest of Cotelierius's Collection (and are indeed all that still remain under the names of those Fathers of which we are now speaking) that can with any good grounds be relied upon as the genuine products of those holy men. Let us see, in the last place, whether any of those discourses, which have been sent abroad under the names of some others of the Apostolical Fathers, may deserve to be received by us, as coming truly from them.

29. And here I shall, in the first place, take it for granted, that what those who are usually the most fond of such spurious pieces (I mean the writers of the Church of Rome) have yet almost unanimously rejected as false and counterfeit, may securely be laid aside by us, without any farther inquiry into the condition of them. Such are, The History of the Life, Miracles, and Assumption of St. John, pretended to have been written by

---

<sup>1</sup> Vid. *Geogr. Sacr. à S. Paulo*, pp. 11, 43.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. p. 233. in *Chersonense*.

<sup>3</sup> Vid. *Jus Græco-Rom. Francofurt. anno. 1596. part I. p. 88.*

Prochorus, his disciple, and one of the seven deacons, chosen by the Church of Jerusalem (Acts vi.);—the Histories of St. Peter and St. Paul, said to have been written by Linus, one of the first bishops of Rome;—the Lives of the Apostles, ascribed to Abdias bishop of Babylon, and supposed to have been written by him in the Hebrew tongue;—the Epistles of St. Martial, who is said to have been one of the LXX Disciples appointed by our Saviour, and one of the first preachers of the Gospel in France. These are all so evidently spurious, that even Natalis Alexander<sup>4</sup> himself was ashamed to undertake the defence of them; and not only he, but all the other writers of the same church, Baronius, Bellarmine, Sixtus Senensis, Possevine, Espencæus, Bisciola, Labbe, &c. have freely acknowledged the little credit that is to be given to them.

30. But two pieces there are which Alexander is still unwilling to part with, though he cannot deny but that the most learned men, even of his own communion, have at last agreed in the rejecting of them: and those are, the Passion of St. Andrew, written (as is pretended) by the presbyters of Achaia; and the works set out under the name of Dionysius the Areopagite.

31. As for the former of these, I confess there have not been wanting many, from the eighth century downwards, who have undertaken the defence of it: Etherius<sup>5</sup> mentioned it about the year DCCLXXXVIII. Remigius after; Peter Damian, Lanfranc, and St. Bernard, still later; and, in this last age, Baronius, Bellarmine, Labbe, and a few others, have yet more endeavoured to establish its

---

<sup>4</sup> Eccles. Hist. sec. I. tom. I. pp. 95, 115.

<sup>5</sup> Vid. Natal. Alex. sec. I. tom. I. p. 109. Labbe de Script. Eccles. tom. I. p. 3, &c.



authority. "But then," as Du Pin<sup>1</sup> well observes, "we do not find the Ancients knew of any Acts of St. Andrew in particular; nor are the Acts, we now have, quoted by any before the time of Etherius beforementioned: and yet how they could have escaped the search of the Primitive Fathers, had they been extant in their days, it is hard to imagine."

32. But much less is the credit that ought to be given to the pretended works of Dionysius the Areopagite: which, as Alexander<sup>2</sup> confesses two very great critics<sup>3</sup> of his own communion to have denied to have been written by that holy man; so has a third<sup>4</sup>, very lately, given such reasons, to shew that the writings, now extant under his name, could not have been composed by him, as ought to satisfy every considering person of their imposture. For not to say any thing of what occurs every where in those Discourses, utterly disagreeable to the state of the Church in the time that Dionysius lived; can it be imagined, that if such considerable books as these had been written by him, none of the Ancients of the first four centuries should have heard any thing of them? Or shall we say that they did know of them, as well as the Fathers that lived after, and yet made no mention of them; though they had so often occasion to have done it, as Eusebius and St. Jerome, not to name any others, had?

33. In short, one of the first times that we hear of them, is in the dispute between the Severians and Catholics about the year DXXXII. when the former produced them in favour of their errors,

<sup>1</sup> Nouvelle Biblioth. tom. I. pp. 47, 48.

<sup>2</sup> Natal. Alex. sec. I. vol. I. p. 136. Labbe de Script. tom. I. in Dionysio.

<sup>3</sup> He might have added several others: see Bellarm. de Script. p. 56.

<sup>4</sup> Du Pin Nouvelle Biblioth. tom. I. p. 90.

and the latter rejected them as books utterly unknown to all antiquity, and therefore not worthy to be received by them.

34. It is therefore much to be wondered, that, after so many arguments as have been brought to prove how little right these Treatises have to such a primitive antiquity, nevertheless, not only Natalis Alexander, but a man of much better judgment, I mean Emanuel Schelstrat<sup>s</sup>, the learned keeper of the Vatican Library, should still undertake the defence of them. When they were written, or by what author, is very uncertain: but as bishop Pearson<sup>e</sup> supposes them to have been first set forth about the latter end of Eusebius's life; so Dr. Cave<sup>7</sup> conjectures, that the elder Apollinarius may very probably have been the author of them. Others<sup>8</sup> there are who place them yet later, and suspect Pope Gregory the Great to have had a hand in the forgery. And, indeed, the arguments which our very learned Mr. Dodwell<sup>9</sup> brings to prove that they were originally written by one of the Roman Church, are not without their just weight. But whatever becomes of this, thus much is certain, that these books were not written before the middle of the fourth century, and therefore are without the compass of the present undertaking.

35. And now—having taken such a view, as was necessary for the present design, of all those other pieces which have been obtruded upon the world for Apostolical Writings, besides what is either here collected, or has been before published in the Sacred Books of the New Testament—I suppose I may with

---

<sup>s</sup> Vid. Cave Hist. Lit. sec. IV. p. 177.

<sup>e</sup> Vindic. Ignat. part I. c. 10.

<sup>7</sup> Loc. sup. cit.

<sup>8</sup> Daillé apud Pearson. loc. sup. cit.

<sup>9</sup> Dodwell de Sacerdot. Laicor. cap. viii. sec. III. p. 389.

*Of the Authority of the following Treatises. 127*

2. If, First, we consider them as the contemporaries of the holy Apostles; some of them bred up under our Saviour Christ himself, and the rest instructed by those great men whom he commissioned *'to go forth and preach to all the world,* and endued<sup>a</sup> with an extraordinary assistance of his blessed Spirit for the doing of it; we cannot doubt but that what they deliver to us must be, without controversy, the pure doctrine of the Gospel—what Christ and his Apostles taught, and what they had themselves received from their own mouths. This is the least deference we can pay to the authors here set forth: to look upon them as faithful deliverers of the doctrine and practice of the Church, in those most early times; when heresies were not, as yet, so openly broke out in it, nor the true faith so dangerously corrupted with the mixture of those erroneous opinions which afterwards more fatally infected the minds of men, and divided the Church into so many opposite parties and factions. So that here, then, we may read with security, and, let me add, with respect too; and not doubt but that what these holy men deliver to us, in all the fundamental articles of it, is as certainly the true doctrine of Christ, as if we had received it, like them, from our Saviour and his Apostles.

3. But, Secondly, the authors of the following pieces had not only the advantage of living in the apostolical times, of hearing the holy Apostles, and conversing with them, but were most of them persons of a very eminent character in the Church too; men raised up to the highest pitch of dignity and authority in some of the most famous churches of the world; chosen by the Apostles to preside in

---

<sup>1</sup> Matt. xxviii. 19. Mark xvi. 15.

<sup>2</sup> Luke xixv. 49. Acts, i. 8. Acts ii.

their own proper sees—at Rome, at Antioch, at Smyrna; one of them set apart, by the express command of the Holy Ghost, to be the companion of St. Paul in his work of the ministry; and the rest for the most part commended, for their rare endowments, in the Inspired Writings of the Holy Scriptures delivered to us: and therefore we may be sure, that such men as these must needs have been very carefully instructed in the mystery of the Gospel, and have had a most perfect knowledge of the faith, as it is in Jesus.

4. Had they been some ordinary and obscure writers, even of the apostolical times, men of no note, no authority in the Church; though still whilst we had a good account of their integrity, the very advantage of the age wherein they lived would have rendered their discourses justly venerable to us; yet should we not perhaps have been obliged to pay such a deference to their writings, as not to make allowance for some lesser defects or mistakes that might have happened to them. But having to do with men not only instructed, in common, by the Apostles, with the other Christians of those days, but particularly bred up, and instituted by them, for the work of the ministry; having here the writings of men who had attained to such a perfect knowledge in the mystery of godliness, and were judged to have been so well grounded and settled in it, as to deserve to be raised up by the Apostles themselves to the government of such eminent churches as those over which these holy men were overseers; it is plain that we cannot, with any reason, doubt of what they deliver to us as the Gospel of Christ, but ought to receive it, if not with equal veneration, yet but with a little less respect than we do the Sacred Writings of those who were their masters and instructors.

*Of the Authority of the following Treatises.* 129

5. Yet farther, Thirdly: The following authors were not only such eminent men, and bred up under such mighty advantages, and so well instructed in the knowledge of the Gospel, as I have now observed; but they were, moreover, persons of a consummated piety, adorned with all those Christian virtues they so affectionately recommend to us; but, especially, they were zealous watchmen over their churches; careful to instruct them in the true faith and doctrine of Christ, and no less careful to preserve them against the contagion of those heresies, which even in their days began to corrupt the purity of it. Hence we read with what a holy zeal that blessed martyr Ignatius first, and then his fellow-disciple St. Polycarp, set themselves against those who would instil some other doctrines, into the minds of their people, than what the Apostles had delivered unto them; what wise directions they gave them for the discovery of such false teachers<sup>1</sup>; and how earnestly they exhorted them by keeping firm to their respective bishops and presbyters, and to the apostolical doctrine delivered by them, to prevent their gaining any advantage against them.

6. With what assurance do they deliver the doctrine which they had received! How confidently do they declare it to be the true doctrine of Christ; and exhort the churches to whom they write, not to give any heed to such as would insinuate any other doctrine into their minds! And how did they themselves shew them, by their own examples, how they should avoid such persons! Insomuch that Irenæus<sup>2</sup> tells us, that if St. Polycarp at any time chanced to hear any one deliver any other doctrine than what he had been taught,

---

<sup>1</sup> Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. iii. c. 35.

<sup>2</sup> Epist. ad Florinum, apud Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. v. c. 20.

he did not only not give any countenance to such an one, but was wont to stop his ears at him, and cried out with astonishment and grief, "Good God! to what times hast thou reserved me, that I shall endure this?" Nay, he would not tarry in the same place with such a person, but would leave the house, if he knew that any heretics were in it.

7. But of the care which these holy men had to keep close in every the least circumstance to the doctrine and practice of the Apostles, we cannot, I think, desire a fairer instance to convince us, than what Eusebius<sup>1</sup> has recorded of the same blessed martyr:—How that hearing of the difference between the Eastern and Western Churches about the time of keeping Easter, he thought it worthy his pains, at an extreme old age, to take a journey as far as Rome for the composing of it. And notwithstanding all that Anicetus, who was then bishop of that Church, could say to move him from his practice; yet having this ground for it, that St. John was wont to keep Easter as he did, the good man held close to it, and would not hear of changing a custom which that blessed Apostle had delivered to him.

8. And when such was the care which these holy writers had of holding fast, even to the least particular, of what they received from the Apostles, that they would not comply with the rest of the Church in such an indifferent matter, only because by so doing they should depart from the practice of one of them, surely we may with confidence depend upon the doctrine which they deliver, as most pure and genuine—what our Saviour taught his Apostles, and his Apostles them. And what Irenæus<sup>2</sup> once said of his master Polycarp, we

---

<sup>1</sup> Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. v. c. 26.

<sup>2</sup> Iren. adv. Hæres. lib. iii. c. 3.

may with equal truth and assurance apply to all the rest of those Fathers whose Treatises I have here put together: "That they taught evermore what they had received from the Apostles, which also they delivered to the Church, and which only is the true doctrine of Christ."

9. To this general piety of their lives, and care for the truth and purity of their religion, let me add, Fourthly, their courage and constancy in the maintaining of it. How great this was, I have already shewn, in the particular accounts which I have given of the several Fathers whose writings are here subjoined. It shall suffice, in this place, to observe, that the most of them, after having spent their lives in a careful administration of the great charges to which they were called, were at last made perfect by martyrdom; and underwent the most exquisite cruelties with a courage and constancy worthy both of the religion they professed, and of the eminent characters which they had obtained in the Church.

10. Now though this does not immediately argue the purity of their doctrine, yet being added to what I have before observed, it will give us a new ground to rely upon the truth of what they deliver. For since we cannot reasonably doubt but that such persons as these, must needs have known what the doctrine of the Apostles was, and have been perfectly instructed in that religion which they were esteemed able and worthy to preach to others, we have in this a clear demonstration of their integrity, both in their teaching, and writing of it; and must conclude, that they who lived such excellent lives, and took so much pains in the ministry of the Gospel—who stuck with such firmness to it, notwithstanding all the endeavours of their enemies to the contrary;

may conclude undoubtedly was so.

11. Such good reason have we, upon all these accounts, to look upon the writings of these holy men as containing the pure and uncorrupted doctrine of our Blessed Saviour and his Apostles! But now, Fifthly, and to advance yet higher: These writers were not only thus qualified, by these ordinary means, to deliver the Gospel of Christ to us, but in all probability were endued with the extraordinary assistance of the Holy Spirit too: so that what they teach us, is not to be looked upon as a mere traditionary relation of what had been delivered to them, but rather, as an authoritative declaration of the Gospel of Christ to us; though indeed as much inferior to that of the Apostles and Evangelists, as both their gifts and their commission were inferior to theirs.

12. For, (First,) That the extraordinary gifts of the Holy Spirit with which the Apostles were endued—and which, the Holy Scriptures<sup>1</sup> themselves tell us, were in those days distributed to other believers as well as unto them—continued still in the Church after their departure, we have the express testimony of Justin Martyr<sup>2</sup>, one of the most ancient writers, after those I have here subjoined. to assure us. They were communi.



but what he could undeniably have made out, we find him boasting of it against Trypho the Jew, and urging it as an unanswerable argument—in behalf of Christianity, and against the Jews from whom these gifts had a long time been departed. And even in the Fathers, whose writings are here put together, there appear sufficient indications of the continuance of these extraordinary powers.

13: This St. Clement<sup>4</sup> manifestly declares in his First Epistle to the Corinthians: he tells us, that some in that Church not only had such gifts, but were even proud and conceited upon the account of them. "Let a man," says he, "have faith<sup>5</sup>;" (i. e. such a faith by which he is able to work miracles;) "let him be powerful to utter mystical knowledge;" (for to that his expression manifestly refers;) "let him be wise in discerning of speeches;" (another gift common in those times:) "but still," says he, "by how much the more he seems to excel others," viz. upon the account of these extraordinary endowments, "by so much the more will it behove him to be humble-minded, and to seek what is profitable to all men, and not to his own advantage." And St. Ignatius not only<sup>6</sup> supposes that such gifts might be in others, but plainly intimates, that he himself<sup>7</sup> was endued with a large portion of them.

14. Which being so, we cannot doubt (Secondly,) but that, as it was most reasonable, both the Apostles were careful to set those, in the chiefest places of honour and authority in their several Churches, who were the most eminent for these gifts; and that God was also pleased to grant to

---

<sup>4</sup> See below, c. xlviii.

<sup>5</sup> Clem. Alex. Strom. l. vi. Hist. Eccles. lib. ii. c. 1. p. 30.

<sup>6</sup> See his Salutation to the Smyræans.

<sup>7</sup> Epist. to the Philadelph. sec. VII. To the Trallians, sec. V.

such persons a more than ordinary portion of the Holy Spirit, for the better discharge of those eminent places to which they were called.

15. Concerning the former of these, we are told by St. Paul, (Acts vi.) that when the Apostles thought it necessary to establish a new order of ministers, in the Church, that might take care of those things which they who were of a higher rank could not find leisure to attend to; though their ministry were of the lowest order, and which required much less capacities, in those who were to discharge it, than theirs whose business it was to govern and instruct the Church of Christ, yet they particularly laid it down to the brethren, as one of the qualifications that was to be required in those whom they chose for that purpose, that they should be *Men well approved of, full of the Holy Spirit, and of wisdom*, v. 3. And of one of them, viz. St. Stephen, it is particularly observed, (v. 8.) *that he was full of faith and power, and did signs and great wonders among the people*. And when the Jews disputed against him, we read, (v. 10.) *that they were not able to stand against the wisdom and spirit by which he spake*.

16. Now if such were the care which they took in the choice of those who were to be admitted into the lowest ministry of the Church, we cannot doubt, but that they were certainly much more careful not to admit any, into the highest rank of honour and authority in it, but what were, in a yet more eminent manner, endued with the same gifts. Hence St. Clement<sup>1</sup> tells us, that “the Apostles did prove by the Spirit the first fruits of their conversions, and out of them set

---

<sup>1</sup> Clem. Epist. num. xlii. xliv.

“bishops and pastors over such as should believe.” By which we must understand one of these two things (and very probably they were both meant by it): either that the Apostles made use of their own extraordinary gift of the Spirit (one use<sup>2</sup> of which was to discern, and try the spirits of others) in choosing persons fitly qualified for the work of the ministry; or else that, by the extraordinary gifts of those whom they pitched upon, they perceived that they were worthy of such an employ, and therefore chose them out for it. And the other Clement<sup>3</sup> yet more plainly speaks the same thing: “That St. John, being returned from his banishment in Patmos, went about the country near unto Ephesus, both to form and settle churches, where he saw occasion, and to admit into the order of the clergy such as were marked out to him by the Spirit.”

17. And then for the other thing observed: it is clear that the very *imposition of hands* did, in those days, confer the Holy Spirit, in an extraordinary manner, upon those who were ordained to the ministry of the Gospel. This St. Paul intimates to Timothy, where he exhorts him to *stir up*, τὸ χάρισμα, *the gift* (i. e. the extraordinary power of the Holy Spirit,) *which*, says he, *is in thee by the imposition of my hands*, 2 Tim. i. 6. And would you know how this ceremony of setting him apart for such a service came to endue him with such an extraordinary power, the same Apostle will tell you (1 Tim. iv. 14.) that it was given unto him by prophecy, with, or through, the imposition of hands upon him; that is to say, God—who, by his prophets, had before designed and marked him out

---

<sup>2</sup> 1 Cor. xii. 10. Heb. iv. 12.


<sup>3</sup> Clem. Alex. de Divit. Salv. num. xlii. Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. iii. c. 23.

for that great office (1 Tim. i. 18.)—upon the actual admission of him into it by the outward rite of laying on of hands, and upon the solemn prayers that were then withal made for him, did bestow the gifts of his blessed Spirit, in an extraordinary manner, upon him.

18. Now as this will give us a good ground to conclude that those holy men, whose writings we have here collected, were endued with a very large portion of the extraordinary gifts of the Holy Ghost; whether we consider the frequency of those endowments in the age in which they lived; or the extraordinary strictness and piety of their lives; or the greatness of those stations to which they were called in the Church; or, lastly, the judgment which the Apostles, who called them to those high offices, were by the Spirit enabled to make of them;—so, (Thirdly) if we look to those accounts which still remain to us of them, they will plainly shew us that they were endued, and that in a very eminent manner, with this power and gift of the Blessed Spirit:

19. Of Barnabas, the Holy Scripture itself bears witness, that *he was a good man, full of the Holy Ghost, and of faith* (Acts xi. 24). Hermas is another of whom St. Paul himself makes mention, (Rom. xvi. 14.) as an early convert to Christianity: And what extraordinary revelations he had, and how he foretold the troubles that were to come upon the Church, his following Visions sufficiently declare.

20. Clement is not only spoken of by the same Apostle, but with this advantageous character too, that he was the fellow-labourer of that great man, and had *his name written in the Book of Life*. (Phil. iv. 3.) And when we shall consider to how much inferior and worse men these gifts were



*Of the Authority of the following Treatises. 137*

usually communicated at that time, we can hardly think that so excellent a man, and the companion of so great an Apostle, employed first in the planting of the Gospel with him, and then set to govern one of the most considerable Churches in the world, should have been destitute of it.

21. As for St. Ignatius, I have before observed, that he had this gift; and, by the help of it, warned the Philadelphians<sup>1</sup> against falling into those divisions which he foresaw were about to rise up amongst them.

22. Polycarp not only prophesied of his own death, but<sup>2</sup> spake oftentimes of things that were to come; and has this witness from the whole Church of Smyrna, that nothing of all that he foretold ever failed of coming to pass according to his prediction.

23. It remains then, that the holy men whose writings are here subjoined, were not only instructed by such as were inspired, but were themselves, in some measure, inspired too; at least were endued with the extraordinary gifts of the Holy Ghost, for the better fulfilling of those great offices to which God had called them in his Church. And therefore we must conclude, that they were not only not mistaken in what they deliver to us as the Gospel of Christ; but, in all the necessary parts of it, were so assisted by the Holy Ghost, as hardly to have been capable of being mistaken in it. By consequence, that we ought to look upon their writings<sup>3</sup>, though not of equal authority with those which we call, in a singular manner, the

---

<sup>1</sup> Epist. to the Philadelphians, c. vii. Add The Martyrdom of Ignatius, num. xii.

<sup>2</sup> Euseb. Hist. Eccles. lib. v. c. 20. p. 153. a.

<sup>3</sup> Vid. Dodwell. Dissert. in Iren. Præfat et Dissert. 2. Et Irenæum apud Euseb. Hist. Eccles. loc. cit. p. 153.

Holy Scriptures, (because neither were the authors of them called in so extraordinary a way to the writing of them, nor endued with so eminent a portion of the gifts of the blessed Spirit for the doing of it; nor have their writings been judged by the common consent of the Church in those first ages of it, when they were so much better qualified than we are now to judge of the Divine Authority of these kind of writings, to be of equal dignity with those of the Apostles and Evangelists;) yet worthy of a much greater respect than any compositions that have been made since; however men may seem to have afterwards written with more art, and to have shewn a much greater stock of human learning, than what is to be found, not only in the following pieces, but even in the Sacred Books of the New Testament itself.

24. I shall add but one consideration more, the better to shew the true deference that ought to be paid to the Treatises here collected; and that is, Sixthly, That they were not only written by such men as I have said—instructed by the Apostles, and judged worthy by them, both for their knowledge and their integrity, to govern some of the most eminent Churches in the world, and, lastly, endued with the extraordinary gift of the Holy Ghost, and upon all these accounts, to be much respected by us—but were moreover received by the Church, in those first ages, as pieces that contained nothing but what was agreeable to sound doctrine; which could scarcely be mistaken in its judgment of them.

25. The Epistle of St. Clement was a long time read publickly with the other Scriptures in the Congregations of the faithful; made a part of their Bible, and was numbered among the Sacred Writings, however finally separated from them.



And not only the Apostolical Canons, but our most ancient Alexandrian Manuscript, gives the same place to the Second that it does to the First of them; and Epiphanius, after both, tells us, that they were both of them wont to be read in the Church in his time<sup>1</sup>.

26. The Epistle of St. Polycarp, with that of the Church of Smyrna, were not only very highly approved of by particular persons, but, like those of St. Clement, were read publicly too in the assemblies of the faithful. And for those of Ignatius: besides that we find a mighty value put upon them by the Christians of those times, they are sealed to us by this character of St. Polycarp: "That they are such Epistles, by which we may be greatly profited: for (says he) they treat of faith and patience, and of all things that pertain to edification in the LORD."

27. The Epistle of Barnabas is not only quoted with great honour by those of the next age to him, but, in the ancient Stichometry<sup>2</sup> of Cotelierius, we find it placed the very next to the Epistle of St. Jude, and no difference put between the authority of the one and the other.

28. And for the Book of Hermas: both Eusebius and St. Jerome tell us, that it was also wont to be read in the Churches. In the same Stichometry, I beforementioned, it is placed in the very next rank to the Acts of the holy Apostles; and, in some of the most ancient Manuscripts of the New Testament, we find it written in the same volume with the books of the Apostles and Evangelists, as if it had been esteemed of the same value and authority with them.

29. So that now, then, we must either say that


---

<sup>1</sup> Epiphan Hæres. xxx. num. 15.

<sup>2</sup> Annot. in Barnab. pp. 9, 10.

the Church in those days were so little careful of what was taught in it, as to allow such books to be publickly read in its congregations, the doctrine whereof it did not approve: or we must confess, that the following pieces are delivered to us, not only by the learned men of the first ages of the Church, but by the whole body of the faithful, as containing the pure doctrine of Christ; and must be looked upon to have nothing in them, but what was then thought worthy of all acceptation.

30. Now how much this adds to the authority of these Discourses, may easily be concluded from what I have before observed. For since it is certain, that, in those times, the extraordinary gifts of the Holy Ghost were bestowed, not only upon the bishops and pastors of the Church, (though upon them in a more eminent degree,) but also upon a great many of the common Christians too—since one particular design of these gifts was for the discerning of Prophecies; to judge of what was proposed by any to the Church, or written for the use and benefit of it—we cannot doubt, but that what was universally approved of, and allowed, not by a few learned men, but by the whole Church in those days; what was permitted to be read to the faithful, for their comfort and instruction, must, by this means, have received the highest human approbation; and ought to be looked upon by us, though not of equal authority with those books, which the same Church has delivered to us as strictly canonical, yet as standing in the first rank of ecclesiastical writings; and containing the true, and pure doctrine of Christ in all things necessary to our salvation; without the mixture of any of those errors which have since been so unhappily brought into the Church, and have been worthily censured as dangerous to, if not destructive of, it.





CHAP. XI.

OF THE SUBJECT OF THE FOLLOWING DISCOURSES; AND  
OF THE USE THAT IS TO BE MADE OF THEM.

*That, in the following Treatises, there is delivered to us a good account both of the Doctrine and Discipline of the CHURCH in the Apostolical Times—This shewn in several Particulars—What they taught concerning GOD the Father, our Saviour CHRIST, and the HOLY GHOST—Of Angels and Spirits—Of the rest of the Articles of the Apostles' Creed—Concerning the two Sacraments of Baptism, and the LORD's Supper—Of the Holy Scriptures, and the Divine Authority of them—What we meet with in these Treatises concerning the Government of the Church—Of the necessity of communicating with the Bishops and Pastors of it—Of Schismatics, Heretics, and Apostates—Of their public assembling for the Service of GOD, and what was done by them in those Meetings—Of several other instances of their Discipline, particularly of their Fasting and Confession of Sins—Of the care which their Bishops had of the whole Church—Of the respect that was paid to them—Of their Martyrs, and the veneration which they thought due to them—Of their practical Instructions, and how severe their Morality was, shewn in several particulars—That, upon the whole, we may here see what the state of Christianity then was, and still ought to be.*

1. **AND** now, having shewn, in the foregoing chapter, what deference we ought to pay to the authority of those holy men whose writings I have here collected, it may not be amiss, in the third place, to inquire, What it is which they deliver to us? What account we find in them, of the doctrine and discipline of the Church, in those times in which they lived?

2. It would be endless for me to go about to make a just catalogue of all the particulars of this kind that occur in the following pieces; and I have

already, in a great measure, performed it in the Index, which I have for that purpose subjoined to them. I shall therefore here consider only a few particulars, in such points as may seem most worthy to be remarked; and by them (as by a short specimen) shew how the judicious Reader may himself improve it, into a more particular history of the faith and practice of the Church in this first, and purest, period of it.

3. And (First) for what concerns the doctrines of those times: there is hardly any point that is necessary to be believed, or known by us, that is not very plainly delivered in some or other of the following pieces.

4. Here we may read what we are to believe concerning the first article of our Creed, God the Father<sup>1</sup>: That he is One, Almighty, Invisible, the Creator and Maker of all things: That he is Omniscient, Immense; neither to be comprehended within any bounds, nor so much as to be perfectly conceived by us: That his Providence is over all things; and that we can none of us flee from him, or escape his knowledge: That we are to believe in him, to fear him, to love him; and fearing him, to abstain from all evil.

5. If from thence we go to the next person of the Blessed Trinity, Our Saviour Jesus Christ<sup>2</sup>; here we shall find all that either our Creed teaches us to profess concerning him, or that any Christian need to believe: That he existed not only before he came into the world, but from all eternity: That he is not only the Son of God, but is himself also God: That in the fullness of time he took upon him our nature, and became man; was born of the Virgin Mary, was crucified under Pontius

---

<sup>1</sup> See the Index, *God*.

<sup>2</sup> See *ib.* *Christ*.

Pilate; that he suffered for our salvation, and was raised again from the dead, not only by the power of the Father, but by his own also: That he is our high-priest, and protector now, and shall come again at the end of the world, to judge the whole race of mankind: That there is no coming unto God but by him; insomuch that even the Anoient Fathers, who died before his appearing, were yet saved by the same means that we are now.

6. As for what concerns the Holy Spirit, the third person in the glorious Godhead: he is here set out to us<sup>3</sup> as the Spirit of God, which is glorified and worshipped together with the Father and the Son, although distinct from both; and communicated by the Son<sup>4</sup> to the Prophets; who also sanctifieth and endueth the faithful with many gifts, for the edification of the Church.

7. And now I am mentioning the Holy Spirit, let me add, that we may here see what is needful to be known concerning all the other spirits<sup>5</sup> of an inferior nature: how the Holy Angels minister unto us; but especially then, when we have the most need of them, at the time of our death. And that though the Devil may attack us, and use all his arts to draw us away from our duty, yet it must be our own fault if we are overcome by him; and that therefore we ought not to be afraid of him.

8. But to return to our Creed, and the articles of it; here we farther see both what a great obligation there lies upon us to keep up a Communion<sup>6</sup> of Saints in the Unity of the Church on earth, and what is that true fellowship that we

---

<sup>3</sup> See the Index, *Trinity*.

<sup>4</sup> See Mart. Ignat. sec. 14. Polyc. sec. 14. 22.

<sup>5</sup> See the Index, *Angel, Devil*.

<sup>6</sup> See ib. *Peace, Unity, Martyrs, Reliques, &c.*

ought to have with those who are gone before us to heaven: That it consists not in the worship of any, though never so gloriously exalted by God; but in love, and remembrance; in thanksgiving to God for their excellencies; and in our prayers to him, joined with hearty endeavours of our own, to imitate their perfections.

9. And whilst we do this, we are assured of the Forgiveness<sup>1</sup> of our Sins, through the merits and satisfaction of Jesus Christ; and that not only of those which we committed before our baptism, but of all such as we shall chance to fall into after, if we truly repent of them; except only the great sin of wilfully and maliciously blaspheming God and his Holy Spirit, which was thought to be hardly, if at all, remissible, either in this world, or in the other.

10. As for the next point, the Resurrection of the Body<sup>2</sup>: it is not barely asserted, but is at large proved too, in the following discourses. There we are told, not only that there shall be a future resurrection, but a resurrection of the flesh; that we shall be raised in the very same bodies in which we go down into the grave; and that, being raised, we shall be judged by Christ, according to our works; and be either unspeakably rewarded, or exceedingly punished to all eternity<sup>3</sup>.

11. If from the articles of our Creed, we go on to the Holy Sacrament<sup>4</sup> of the Church; here we have set out to us the great benefit of our baptism, and of what a mighty concern it is to us in the business of our salvation. And for the other sacrament: here we are taught, that the elements of

---

<sup>1</sup> See the Index, *Repentance*.

<sup>2</sup> See *ib.* *Resurrection*.

<sup>3</sup> See *ib.* *Punishment*.

<sup>4</sup> See *ib.* *Sacrament, Baptism*.

bread and wine<sup>5</sup> are the same (as to their substance), after consecration, that they were before; and are only, in a spiritual sense, the flesh and blood of our Saviour Christ, by the participation of which we shall be immortalized, and live for ever.

12. And, Lastly, For that great, comprehensive point of our religion, the foundation of our faith, the Holy Scriptures<sup>6</sup>: here we may see what opinion these holy men had of the Divine Inspiration of them; what deference they paid to them; and how they looked upon them to contain the true words of the Holy Ghost.

13. Such is the doctrine of faith, that is here delivered to us. If from thence we pass (Secondly) to what concerns the public order and government of the Church, in the first establishment of it; here we may see by what persons<sup>7</sup> it was directed, and how exactly our own Church does in this particular resemble the primitive, perhaps beyond any other at this day in the world, in the apostolical orders of bishops, priests, and deacons.

14. How necessarily they esteemed it their duty, to keep up a strict communion<sup>8</sup> with these governors, and how little they thought the very name of the Church could belong to those who separated from them, we are here likewise taught. And how light soever some may make of the business of schism<sup>9</sup> now, yet it is plain these holy men had a very different apprehension of it, and hardly thought that such could be saved as continued in it.

---

<sup>5</sup> See the Index, *Transubstantiation*.

<sup>6</sup> *Ibid.* *Scripture*.

<sup>7</sup> See *Bishops*, *ibid.*

*Ibid.*

*Ibid.* See *Schism*.

15. And the same, or rather much worse, was their opinion of heretics<sup>1</sup>, and apostates: to the latter of which, as they seem even to have denied repentance, if their apostacy was joined with blasphemy; so it is manifest, that, without it, they thought the others must perish. And in the mean time, they declare, that we ought not to have any communication with them: only we must pray for them, that they may be converted, which yet they supposed would be very hard.

16. As for those who continued in the doctrine and communion of the Church<sup>2</sup>; here we may see how zealous they were in attending all the public offices of it. How constantly they assembled together for the worship of God, notwithstanding all the malice and fury of their enemies against them, upon the account of it. Here we may observe how, from the beginning, they had their set times and places of worship: and how they looked upon such offertories, both as more acceptable unto God, and more prevalent with him, than any private addresses that they could make to him.

17. In these assemblies, they not only put up their prayers to God, but received also the Holy Sacrament<sup>3</sup> of the Lord's Supper. And in ~~that~~ part of their service, none officiated but either the bishop himself, or he who was appointed, or allowed of, by him.

18. For this purpose, they had in every such place of their assembling, one table or altar, upon which their oblations were presented to God by the bishops and priests<sup>4</sup>. And they communi-

---

<sup>1</sup> See the Index, *Heretic, Apostate*.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. *Worship, &c.*

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. *Sacrament, Bishop*.

<sup>4</sup> Ignat. Epist. to the Ephes. sec. 5.

cated after the same manner, that our Saviour Christ had set them the example; that is to say, both of the consecrated bread and wine; and the former taken from one common loaf, which was broken and distributed to them, not in little, separate, and unbroken wafers, as some now do.

19. Nor was this all: in these assemblies, the Holy Scriptures were read to them; and (as I have before shewn) some of the very Treatises I have here subjoined, together with them. And the bishop himself instructed the people, and expounded the doctrine of Christ to them<sup>5</sup>.

20. By the bishop were the Christians blessed, and joined together in the holy state of matrimony<sup>6</sup>: and indeed without him was nothing done of all that pertained unto religion.

21. In those times the clergy<sup>7</sup> were married, as well as laity; nor do we find it esteemed the least scandal for them so to be.

22. Here we may see what the ancient manner of fasting<sup>8</sup> was; and what was thought requisite to render such exercises acceptable to God, and profitable to our own souls.

23. In short, here we may perceive what their opinion was of repentance for sins; and how hardly they thought of those who were still repenting, and yet still continued to sin on, notwithstanding their frequent repentance. But, especially, here we are told, that we must finish our repentance before we die; for that there is no place for repentance after.

24. And though they prescribed confession<sup>10</sup>, as

---

<sup>5</sup> Ignat. Mart. sec. 9.

<sup>6</sup> See the Index, *Marriage, Bishop*.

<sup>7</sup> Ibid. See *Priest*.

<sup>8</sup> Ibid. *Fast*.

<sup>9</sup> Ibid. *Repentance*.

<sup>10</sup> Ibid. *Confession*.

one act of repentance, and necessary to be performed in order to our forgiveness: yet we find no confession mentioned to be made to any but to God only; which therefore seems to intimate to us, that they accounted that alone to have been sufficient.

25. But the care of their bishops<sup>1</sup> in those first times was not confined within the narrow bounds of their own churches, but extended to all the faithful, wheresoever they were. And they were still ready to look to those who were at the greatest distance from them, whenever they thought their advice or authority might be either useful to them, or for the honour and benefit of their religion.

26. From this, and from the general piety and excellence of their lives<sup>2</sup>, joined to the greatness of their character in the Church, came that mighty respect that was paid to the bishops in those days; and how great it was the following Treatises abundantly shew.

27. But much greater was their veneration for those who not only governed well, and adorned their holy profession by an exemplary life, but confirmed the truth of it with their 'blood! They were indeed of opinion, that no man ought causelessly to expose himself unto suffering<sup>3</sup>; but if God called any one to it, they doubted not but that our Saviour Christ would both support him in his conflicts, and most gloriously reward him for the enduring of them. Hence was it their opinion, that martyrdom blotted out all sins: that they who suffered for the faith, should have

---

<sup>1</sup> See Ignatius's Epistles and Martyrdom, &c.

<sup>2</sup> See the Index, *Bishop*.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. *Martyrs*.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. *Suffer*.



a degree of glory peculiar to themselves, above all other saints in God's kingdom. And when God shewed such regard for them, they concluded that they could never do enough ~~to~~ to testify their respect to them.

28. To this we must ascribe the care they took to gather up their remains<sup>5</sup>, the honour which they paid to them, and the solemnities with which they deposited them in the earth: hence came their custom, which we here find, of writing down the particulars of their conflicts, and sending them abroad to the Churches round about: hence their anniversary meetings at their tombs and monuments, where they recited the acts of their martyrdoms, and sometimes made express discourses in praise of their martyrs, and to exhort one another to the like constancy.

29. But not to insist any longer upon these particulars: there is yet a Third sort of matters contained in these Discourses, and those of no less use to us than either of the foregoing; and that is, the practical rules of life that are here delivered to us.

30. Here we may see what care we are to take, not only not to sin<sup>6</sup> ourselves; but, as far as in us lies, not to let any that belong to us continue in sin, lest we also become partakers of their evil-doings.

31. Here we are taught not only to have a care of our words and actions<sup>7</sup>, but of our very thoughts and desires; which must not be indulged in any instances of sin, nor be suffered, if it be possible, to wander on any thing that is in the least measure wanton or irregular.

---

<sup>5</sup> See the Index, *Reliques, Martyrs*.

<sup>6</sup> Ibid. *Sin*.

<sup>7</sup> Herm. Vis. I.

32. If we will hearken to these holy men, we must learn not only to do the will of God, but, if it be his pleasure, must prepare our minds to endure patiently whatever he shall think fit to lay upon us. We must consider, that troubles and afflictions are sent upon us, both to punish us for our sins, and as monitors to draw us off from them.

33. To convince us the more effectually of this: we are here shewn the mighty danger of <sup>1</sup> riches, especially where men's hearts are in any degree set upon them; and how very hardly such persons shall be saved. We are taught what use we should make of our abundance, that so it may not prove a snare to us. But, especially, we are shewn the great advantage of almsgiving to this end, and what mighty engagements there lie upon us to the practice of it.

34. And, then, as for our lives: we are here told that a Christian<sup>2</sup> must not only be good, but exemplary; he must shew the truth of his profession by a suitable conversation, and be known by his actions rather than by his words.

35. He must pray for all men, even for his enemies; nay, for the very enemies of the Church; for heretics and schismatics; for those of whom there is but little hope that they will ever come to repentance, or that God will give them grace so to do.

36. He must be kind and charitable to all men; free from envy and contention: he must neither raise any differences among his brethren, nor follow any in the doing of it. To this end, he must carefully observe those duties which relate to his neighbour, as well as those he is to pay to

---

<sup>1</sup> See Index, *Riches, Almsgiving, &c.*

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. *Christian.*

*Of the Subject of the following Discourses. 151*

God. He must obey magistrates, must respect the aged, must have a due regard to all men. Is he a husband, a parent, or a child? He must be sure to exercise himself in the several duties becoming those several relations. In short, in the following writings, we may see—in all the parts of our duty towards God, our neighbour, and ourselves—what we are to do; and what to avoid; and are assured, that God both sees all our actions now, and will reward or punish us for them hereafter to all eternity.

37. And thus have I given a short prospect, of what is more largely contained in the following Collection. I need not say either how useful a variety of matter it is, or how worthy to be known by all of us: but sure I am, whosoever shall take the pains impartially to compare what is here found with the Sacred Writings of the New Testament, he may be able, both with clearness and certainty, to understand whatever is requisite to his eternal salvation; and that with much more satisfaction, and security too, than from many volumes of our later writers, who, for the most part, spend a great deal of time, and take much pains, to obscure, rather than explain, the most easy and intelligible points of our religion.

## CHAP. XII.

OF THE MANNER AFTER WHICH THESE DISCOURSES ARE WRITTEN; AND THE SIMPLICITY OF STYLE USED IN THEM.

*That the Writers of those Times used no affectation of Human Eloquence, but delivered themselves with the greatest Plainness that they were able—This manner of Writing the best, and most proper, for Instruction—A short Account of the Occasion of the present Collection, and the Translation that is here made of the following Treatises.*

1. THERE is yet one thing to be observed by me with reference to the Discourses here subjoined, and that is, Fourthly, concerning the manner after which they are written, and that true primitive simplicity which appears in all the parts of them.

2. It is one property of truth, that as it does not need any disguises, so neither does it seek, by any vain ornaments of human eloquence, to recommend itself to the approbation of those to whom it is tendered. When the Apostles preached the Gospel to the world, they did it not “with excellency of speech, nor with enticing words of man’s wisdom, but in the demonstration of spirit and of power:” they gave such convincing proofs of their Divine Mission, as forced all indifferent persons to acknowledge their authority; and they thought it, after that, too mean a thing to endeavour to catch men’s ears, when without any such arts they had before captivated their reason, and forced them to confess the truth of what they delivered.

3. And the same was the method of those holy

Fathers who succeeded them: they knew the excellency of their doctrine, and the mighty influence which the revelations it made of the future state, would be sure to have upon the minds of all considering men; and therefore they contented themselves to lay these things before them in a plain and simple manner, and yet with such efficacy and power as surpassed all the rhetorick in the world: *for, indeed, the kingdom of God is not in word, but in power,* 1 Cor. iv. 20.

4. Let not, then, the Reader be surprised, if in the following Discourses he meets with none of those ornaments, that are wont to recommend the writings of others to his perusal; but rather let him consider, that he has here to do with men who were above such a care. Their business was to instruct, not to please; to speak to men's hearts and consciences, not to their fancies; and they knew that this is evermore best done by a plain and natural discourse; by solid rules and substantial motives, not by vain words, which if they satisfy a man at the present, yet seldom leave any lasting impression behind them.

5. But of the Authors of the following Treatises, and of the Discourses themselves, I have said enough, perhaps too much; though yet, I think, no more than what was necessary to prepare the English Reader, for whom I am now chiefly concerned, to a useful perusal of them. As for the present Collection: I shall only say thus much, that it is the first of this kind that has been set forth in our own language; nor were the greatest part of the following pieces ever (that I know of) before translated into it.

6. I confess, when I consider the great usefulness of such a work, and the high esteem

which not only the Ancient Fathers, but the most learned of all ages, have had of the Treatises here collected together, I have sometimes wondered, that among so many things as have of late been set forth in the English tongue, none has hitherto undertaken such a task as this. But when I came to the trial, I soon found out what may, perhaps, have been one reason of it: for, indeed, could I have foreseen the difficulty of the work, I much question whether I should ever have been persuaded to go about it. And this I say, not to magnify any thing that I have done, which I have too much reason to fear will be far from deserving any great commendation, but to suggest an apology for whatever defects those of greater leisure, more health, and better abilities, shall chance to find in it; notwithstanding all the care I have taken to guess aright at the intention of my Authors, and to deliver what, upon the best examination I could make, I took to be their meaning.

7. I need not say any thing to convince those who are at all acquainted with these matters, and who are alone the competent judges of the present performance, how hard oftentimes it is, with the help of the best copies, to hit upon the true meaning of an author that lived so many ages since as those I have here collected; and what great defects, in many places, there are in the copies which I have here been forced to make use of, is not unknown to them. But, however, I am not aware of any great errors that I have committed; and am in some hope that (in this edition of these Treatises) I have nowhere very much, nor at all dangerously, mistaken the meaning of those holy men, whose sense I have undertaken to represent.

8. This I am sure of, that my design, in this whole undertaking, was to minister the best I could to the interests of truth and piety: and I thought myself, at this time, the rather obliged to do it from the press, in that it has pleased God, in some measure, to take me off from the ability of doing it from the pulpit.

9. If it shall be asked, How I came to choose the drudgery of a translator, rather than the more ingenious part of publishing somewhat of my own composing? It was, in short, this; because I hoped that such writings as these would find a more general and unprejudiced acceptance with all sorts of men, than any thing that could be written by any one now living; who, if esteemed by some, is yet in danger of being despised by more, whose prejudice to his person will not suffer them to reap any benefit by any thing, though never so useful, that can come from him: whilst such Tracts as these may possibly receive a general respect from all sorts of persons, and meet not only with an entertainment, but an esteem too, from all.

10. These were the motives that first induced me to set about this work; in the reasonableness of which should I chance to be mistaken, yet I cannot but persuade myself that the honesty of my intentions will excuse me to all indifferent persons. Let others then, to whom God has given better opportunities, and greater abilities, serve the Church in better and higher performances. It shall suffice me in any way to minister to the souls of men: and if, by this present undertaking, I shall but in any measure have contributed to the reviving a true sense of piety and devotion among us; and, especially, to the dis-

posing of any number of men to consider more seriously the fatal consequences of our present divisions, and to labour, what in them lies, towards the composing of them ; I shall heartily bless God, both that he first prompted me to undertake this troublesome task, and has since enabled me, though amidst many infirmities, to go through with it.



GENUINE REMAINS  
OF THE  
APOSTOLICAL FATHERS.

---

Part I.

---

IN WHICH ARE COMPRISED,

- I. *The Epistle of* ST. CLEMENT *to the* CORINTHIANS.
- II. ——— ST. POLYCARP *to the* PHILIPPIANS.
- III. *The Epistles of* ST. IGNATIUS.
- IV. *A Relation of the Martyrdom of* ST. IGNATIUS.
- V. ——— ST. POLYCARP.



CONTENTS  
OF  
ST. CLEMENT'S FIRST EPISTLE  
TO THE CORINTHIANS.

---

Chap.

- I, II. *HE commends them for their excellent Order and Piety in Christ, before their Schism brake out.*
- III. *How their Divisions began.*
- IV, V, VI. *Envy and Emulation the Original of all Strife and Disorder. Examples of all Mischiefs they have occasioned.*
- VII, VIII. *He exhorts them to look up to the Rules of their Religion, and repent of their Divisions, and they shall be forgiven.*
- IX, X. *To encourage them whereunto, he sets before them the Examples of Holy Men, whose Piety is recorded in the Scriptures.*
- XI, XII. *And particularly such as have been eminent for their Kindness and Charity to their Neighbours.*
- XIII. *What Rules our Religion has left us to this purpose.*
- XIV, XV. *Which he applies to the Case of the Corinthians; exhorting them to put an end to their Contentions so contrary to their Duty.*
- XVI, XVII, XVIII. *In order to this, he advises them to be humble; and that from the Examples of our Saviour, and of Holy Men in all Ages.*
- XIX, XX. *He returns to the business of their Divisions, which, by more Arguments, he again persuades them to compose.*
- XXI. *He exhorts them to Obedience, from the consideration of the Goodness of God, and of his Presence in every Place.*
- XXII, XXIII, XXIV. *Of Faith; and particularly what we are to believe as to the future Resurrection.*
- XXIV, &c. to XXVII. *This Article at large proved.*
- XXVIII. *He again exhorts them to Obedience: That it is impossible to escape the Vengeance of God, if we continue in Sin.*
- XXIX. *This farther enforced from the consideration of their Relation to God, as his Elect.*
- XXX. *How we must live that we may please God.*

## CONTENTS.

- XXXI, XXXII. *We are justified by Faith.*
- XXXIII. *Yet this must not lessen our Care to live well, nor our Pleasure in it.*
- XXXIV. *This enforced, from the Examples of the Holy Angels, and from the exceeding Greatness of that Reward which God has prepared for us.*
- XXXV, XXXVI. *We must attain unto this Reward by Faith and Obedience.*
- XXXVII. *Which we must carry on in an orderly pursuing of the Duties of our several Stations, without Envy or Contention.*
- XXXVIII. *The necessity of different Orders among Men. We have none of us any thing but what we received of God; whom, therefore, we ought in every Condition thankfully to obey.*
- XXXIX, &c. *From whence he exhorts them to do every thing orderly in the Church, as the only way to please God.*
- XLII. *The Orders of Ministers in Christ's Church established by the Apostles, according to Christ's Command.*
- XLIII. *And after the Example of Moses.*
- XLIV. *Therefore they who have been duly placed in the Ministry, according to their Order, cannot, without great Sin, be put out of it.*
- XLV, &c. *He exhorts them to Peace from Examples out of the Holy Scriptures.*
- XLVII, XLVIII. *Particularly from St. Paul's Exhortation to them.*
- XLIX. *The Value which God puts upon Love and Unity: The Effects of a true Charity.*
- L. *Which is the Gift of God, and must be obtained by Prayer.*
- LI, LII. *He exhorts such as have been concerned in these Divisions to repent, and return to their Unity, confessing their Sin to God.*
- LIII, LIV. *Which he enforces from the Example of Moses.*
- LV. *Nay, of many among the Heathen; and of Judith and Esther among the Jews.*
- LVI. *The Benefit of mutual Advice and Correction.*
- LVII. *He entreats them to follow that which is here given to them.*
- LVIII. *Recommends them to God.*
- LIX. *Desires speedily to hear that this Epistle has had a good Effect upon them.*
- LX. *And so concludes.*

THE  
FIRST EPISTLE OF ST. CLEMENT  
TO  
THE CORINTHIANS.

---

*The Church of God which is<sup>1</sup> at Rome, to the Church of God which is<sup>1</sup> at Corinth, elect<sup>2</sup>, sanctified, by<sup>3</sup> the will of God, through Jesus Christ our Lord: grace and peace from the Almighty God, by Jesus Christ, be multiplied unto you<sup>4</sup>.*

BRETHREN,

THE sudden<sup>5</sup> and unexpected dangers and calamities that have fallen upon us, have, we fear, made us the more slow in our consideration of those things which you inquired of us; <sup>6</sup>as also of that wicked and detestable sedition, so <sup>6</sup>unbecoming the elect of God, which a few heady and self-willed men have fomented to such a degree of madness, that your venerable and renowned name, so worthy of all men to be beloved, is greatly blasphemed thereby. For who that has ever <sup>7</sup>been among you, has not experimented the firmness of your faith, and its fruitfulness in all good works<sup>8</sup>? And admired the temper and moderation of your religion in Christ? And published abroad the magnificence of your hospitality? And thought

<sup>1</sup> *Sojourneth.*

<sup>2</sup> *Called.*—See Dr. Hammond on Matt. xx. c.

<sup>3</sup> *Gr.*—*In.*

<sup>4</sup> See Bishop Pearson's note on this place. ed. Colomesii, p. 2.

<sup>5</sup> And. <sup>6</sup> *Gr.*—Strange to.

<sup>7</sup> *Gr.*—Lodged as a stranger.

<sup>8</sup> Adorned with all manner of virtues.

you happy in your perfect and certain knowledge of the gospel. For ye did all things without respect of persons; and walked according to<sup>1</sup> the laws of God: being subject to those who had the rule over you, and giving the honour that was fitting to such as were the aged<sup>2</sup> among you. Ye commanded the young men to think those things that were modest and grave. The women, ye exhorted to do all things with an unblameable, and seemly, and pure conscience; loving their own husbands, as was fitting; and that, keeping themselves within the bounds<sup>3</sup> of a due obedience, they should order<sup>4</sup> their houses gravely, with all discretion<sup>5</sup>.

II. Ye were all of you humble minded, not boasting<sup>6</sup> of any thing: desiring rather to be subject than to govern, to give than to receive<sup>7</sup>; being content with the portion God had dispensed to you<sup>8</sup>: and hearkening diligently to his word, ye were enlarged in your bowels<sup>9</sup>, having his sufferings<sup>10</sup> always before your eyes. Thus a firm, and blessed<sup>11</sup>, and profitable<sup>12</sup> peace was given unto you; and an unsatiable desire of doing good, and a plentiful effusion of the Holy Ghost was upon all of you. And being full of good designs<sup>13</sup>, ye did, with great<sup>14</sup> readiness of mind, and with a religious confidence, stretch forth your hands to God Almighty, beseeching him to be merciful unto you, if in any thing ye had unwillingly sinned against him. Ye contended day and night

<sup>1</sup> In.<sup>2</sup> Presbyters.<sup>3</sup> Canon, rule.<sup>4</sup> Themselves do their own business.—*Vid. Not. Junii in loc.*<sup>5</sup> Temperance, sobriety. 1 *Pet.* v. 5.<sup>6</sup> Proud.<sup>7</sup> Acts xx. 35.<sup>8</sup> 1 *Tim.* vi. 8.<sup>9</sup> Embraced it in your very bowels.<sup>10</sup> Πάθημα. See Dr. Grabe's Addit. to Bp. Bull's Def. *fid.* Nic. p. 60, 61.<sup>11</sup> Gr.—ἀγαπή.<sup>12</sup> Holy counsel, or purpose, or will.<sup>13</sup> Gr.—Good.

for the whole brotherhood; that with 'compassion, and a good conscience, the number of his elect might be saved. Ye were sincere, and without offence towards each other; not mindful of injuries. All sedition and schism was an abomination unto you. Ye bewailed every one his neighbour's sins, esteeming their defects your own. 'Ye were kind one to another without grudging, being ready to every good work: and being adorned with a conversation altogether virtuous and religious, ye did all things in the fear of God, whose *commandments were written upon the tables of your hearts*<sup>1</sup>.

III. All honour and enlargement was given unto you; and so was fulfilled that which is written, *My beloved did eat and drink, he was enlarged and waxed fat, and he kicked*<sup>2</sup>. From hence came emulation, and envy, and strife, and sedition; persecution and disorder<sup>3</sup>, war and captivity. So they who were of no renown, lifted up themselves against the honourable; those of no reputation, against those that were in respect; the foolish against the wise, the young men against the aged. Therefore righteousness and peace are departed from you, because every one hath forsaken the fear of God; and is grown blind in his faith; nor walketh by the rule of God's commandments, nor liveth as is fitting in Christ: but every one follows<sup>4</sup> his own wicked lusts; having taken up an unjust and wicked envy, by which death first entered into the world.

IV. For thus it is written: *'And in process of time it came to pass, that Cain brought of the fruit*

<sup>1</sup> With mercy and conscience.

<sup>2</sup> *Ye were without repentance in all well-doing.* Titus iii. 1.

<sup>3</sup> Prov. vii. 3.

<sup>4</sup> Deut. xxxii. 15.

<sup>5</sup> Confusion, tumults, &c.

<sup>6</sup> Walketh after.

<sup>7</sup> Gen. iv. 3, &c.

of the ground an offering unto the LORD. And Abel, he also brought of the firstlings of his flock, and of the fat thereof: and the LORD had respect unto Abel, and to his offering. But unto Cain and unto his offering he had not respect. And Cain was very sorrowful, and his countenance fell. And the LORD said unto Cain, *Why art thou sorrowful? and why is thy countenance fallen?* <sup>1</sup> If thou shalt offer aright, but not divide aright, hast thou not sinned? Hold thy peace: unto thee shall be his desire<sup>2</sup>, and thou shalt rule over him. And Cain said unto Abel his brother, *Let us go down into the field.* And it came to pass as they were in the field, that Cain rose up against Abel his brother, and slew him. Ye see, Brethren, how envy and emulation wrought <sup>3</sup> the death of a brother. For this<sup>4</sup>, our father Jacob fled from the face of his brother Esau. It was this that caused Joseph<sup>5</sup> to be persecuted even unto death, and to come into bondage. Envy forced Moses<sup>6</sup> to flee from the face of Pharaoh, king of Egypt, when he heard his own countryman ask him, *Who made thee a judge, and a ruler over us? Wilt thou kill me as thou didst the Egyptian yesterday?*<sup>7</sup> Through envy Aaron and Miriam were <sup>8</sup> shut out of the camp, *from the rest of the congregation seven days*<sup>9</sup>. Emulation sent<sup>10</sup> Dathan and Abiram quick into the grave<sup>11</sup>, because they raised up a sedition against Moses, the servant of God. For this, David<sup>12</sup> was not only hated of strangers, but was persecuted even by Saul, the king of Israel.

V. But, <sup>13</sup> not to insist upon ancient examples,

<sup>1</sup> This is according to the Lxx.      <sup>2</sup> *Ἀνερέσθη*, conversion.

<sup>3</sup> Fratricide.

<sup>4</sup> Envy. Gen. xxviii.

<sup>5</sup> Gen. xxxvii.

<sup>6</sup> Exod. ii. 15.

<sup>7</sup> Exod. ii. 14.

<sup>8</sup> Made to lodge out.

<sup>9</sup> Num. xii. 14, 15.

<sup>10</sup> Brought.

<sup>11</sup> Hades.

<sup>12</sup> Had, or underwent the hatred, not only, &c.

<sup>13</sup> To cease from.



let us come to those Worthies<sup>1</sup> that have been nearest to us, and take the brave examples of our own age. Through zeal and envy, the most faithful and righteous<sup>2</sup> pillars of the church have been persecuted, even to the most grievous deaths. Let us set before our eyes the holy<sup>3</sup> Apostles: Peter, by unjust envy, underwent, not one or two, but many sufferings<sup>4</sup>; till<sup>5</sup> at last being martyred, he went to the place of glory that was due unto him. <sup>6</sup>For the same cause, did Paul in like manner receive the reward of his patience. <sup>7</sup>Seven times he was in bonds; he was whipped, was stoned; he preached both in the east and in the west, <sup>8</sup>leaving behind him the glorious report of his faith: and so having taught the whole world righteousness, and for that end travelled even to the utmost bounds of the west, he at last suffered martyrdom, by the command of the governors<sup>9</sup>, and departed out of the world, and went unto his holy place; being become a most eminent pattern of patience unto all ages.

VI. To these holy Apostles were joined<sup>10</sup> a very great number of others, who, having through envy undergone, in like manner, many pains and torments, have <sup>11</sup>left a glorious example to us. For this<sup>12</sup>, not only men, but women, have been persecuted: <sup>13</sup>and having suffered very grievous and <sup>14</sup>cruel punishments, have finished the course of their faith with firmness; and, though weak in body, yet received a glorious reward. This<sup>15</sup> has

<sup>1</sup> Combatants, wrestlers.      <sup>2</sup> The faithful and most righteous.

<sup>3</sup> Good.

<sup>4</sup> Labours.

<sup>5</sup> And so.

<sup>6</sup> By envy.

<sup>7</sup> Having borne seven times bonds, &c.

<sup>8</sup> He received the, &c.

<sup>9</sup> Vid. Pearson de Success. c. viii. sect. 9.

<sup>10</sup> Men who have lived godly, is gathered together.

<sup>11</sup> Become an excellent example among us.

<sup>12</sup> Envy.

<sup>13</sup> The names of *Danae* and *Dioce* I omit.—See Junius, *Annot. in loc.*

<sup>14</sup> Cursed afflictions, or torments.

<sup>15</sup> Envy, or emulation.

alienated the minds even of women from their husbands, and changed what was once said by our father Adam: *This is now bone of my bone, and flesh of my flesh*<sup>1</sup>. In a word, envy and strife have overturned whole<sup>2</sup> cities, and rooted out great nations from off the earth.

VII. These things, beloved, we write<sup>3</sup> unto you, not only <sup>4</sup>for your instruction, but also for your own remembrance; for we are all in the same lists<sup>5</sup>, and the same combat is <sup>6</sup>prepared for us all: wherefore let us lay aside all vain and empty cares; and let us come up to the glorious and venerable rule of our holy calling. Let us consider what is good, and acceptable, and well-pleasing in the sight of him that made us<sup>7</sup>. Let us look stedfastly to the blood of Christ, and see how precious his blood is in the sight of God; which, being shed for our salvation, has<sup>8</sup> obtained the grace of repentance for all the world. Let us search<sup>9</sup> into all the ages that have gone before us; and let us learn that our Lord has,<sup>10</sup> in every one of them, still given place for repentance to all such as would turn<sup>11</sup> to him. Noah preached repentance; and as many as hearkened to him were saved<sup>12</sup>. Jonah denounced destruction against the Ninevites<sup>13</sup>: howbeit they, repenting of their sins, appeased God by their prayers, and <sup>14</sup>were saved, though they were strangers to the covenant of God.

VIII. Hence we find how all the ministers of the grace of God have spoken, by the Holy Spirit, of repentance. And even the Lord of all has

<sup>1</sup> Gen. ii. 23.

<sup>2</sup> Great.

<sup>3</sup> Send.

<sup>4</sup> Instructing you, but also remembering, &c.

<sup>5</sup> Place of encounter.

<sup>6</sup> Imposed upon us all.

<sup>7</sup> 1 Tim. v. 4.

<sup>8</sup> Afforded, or given to.

<sup>9</sup> Look diligently to.

<sup>10</sup> From age to age.

<sup>11</sup> Be turned.

<sup>12</sup> 2 Pet. ii. 5. Gen. vii.

<sup>13</sup> Jon. iii.

<sup>14</sup> Received salvation.

himself 'declared with an oath concerning it: <sup>1</sup>*As I live, saith the LORD, I desire not the death of a sinner,* <sup>2</sup>*but that he should repent.* Adding farther this good sentence, saying, *'Turn from your iniquity, O house of Israel. Say unto the children of my people, Though your sins should reach from earth to heaven, and though they should be redder than scarlet, and blacker than sackcloth'; yet, if ye shall turn to me with all your heart, and shall call me Father<sup>6</sup>, I will hearken to you as to a holy people.* And in another place, he saith on this wise: *'Wash ye, make you clean; put away <sup>8</sup>the evil of your doings from before mine eyes; cease to do evil, learn to do well; seek judgment, relieve the oppressed, judge the fatherless, plead for the widow. Come now and let us reason together, saith the LORD: though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow; though they be red as crimson, <sup>9</sup>they shall be as wool. If ye be willing and obedient, ye shall eat the good of the land; but if ye refuse and rebel, ye shall be devoured with the sword, for the mouth of the LORD hath spoken it.* These things has God established by his Almighty will, desiring that all his beloved should come to repentance.

IX. Wherefore let us obey his excellent and glorious will; and, <sup>10</sup>imploring his mercy and goodness, let us fall down upon our faces before him, and <sup>11</sup>cast ourselves upon his mercy; laying aside all <sup>12</sup>vanity, and contention, and envy, which leads unto death. Let us look up to those who have the most perfectly ministered to his excel-

<sup>1</sup> Spoken. <sup>2</sup> Ezek. xxxiii. 11.

<sup>4</sup> Repent from.—Ezek. xviii. 30, 32.

<sup>7</sup> Isai. i. 16.

<sup>9</sup> I will make them white as wool.

<sup>11</sup> Turn ourselves to his mercy.

<sup>3</sup> So much as his repentance.

<sup>5</sup> Isai. i.

<sup>6</sup> Jer. iii. 4, 19.

<sup>8</sup> Evil from your souls.

<sup>10</sup> Becoming supplicants of, &c.

<sup>12</sup> Vain labour.

lent glory. Let us take Enoch for our example; who, being found righteous in obedience<sup>1</sup>, was translated, and his death was not known<sup>2</sup>. Noah being proved<sup>3</sup> to be faithful, did, by his ministry, preach regeneration to the world; and the Lord saved by him all the living creatures, that went with one accord<sup>4</sup> together into the ark.

X. Abraham, who was called God's friend<sup>5</sup>, was in like manner found faithful, inasmuch as he obeyed the commands<sup>6</sup> of God. By obedience he<sup>7</sup> went out of his own country, and from his own kindred, and from his father's house; that so forsaking a small country, and a weak affinity, and a little house, he might inherit the promises of God. For thus God said unto him: *Get thee out of thy country, and from thy kindred, and from thy father's house, unto a land that I will shew thee. And I will make thee a great nation, and I will bless thee, and make thy name great, and thou shalt be blessed. And I will bless them that bless thee, and curse them that curse thee: and in thee shall all the families of the earth be blessed.* And again, when he separated himself from Lot, God said unto him: *Lift up now thine eyes, and look from the place where thou art, northward, and southward, and eastward, and westward<sup>10</sup>; for all the land which thou seest, to thee will I give it, and to thy seed for ever. And I will make thy seed as the dust of the earth, so that if a man can number the dust of the earth, then shall thy seed also be numbered.* And again he saith, *And God brought forth Abraham, and said unto him, Look now towards heaven, and tell the stars, if thou be able to number them: so shall*

<sup>1</sup> Gen. v. 24.

<sup>2</sup> Found.

<sup>3</sup> Being found.—Gen. vi. vii. viii.

<sup>4</sup> In unity.

<sup>5</sup> James ii. 23.

Isaiah xli. 8.

<sup>6</sup> Words.

<sup>7</sup> This man.

<sup>8</sup> Gen. xii. 1.

<sup>9</sup> Gen. xiii. 14.

<sup>10</sup> Towards the sea.

<sup>11</sup> Gen. xv. 5.

thy seed be. And Abraham believed God, and it was counted to him for righteousness. Through faith and hospitality, <sup>1</sup> he had a son given him in his old age; and through obedience he offered him up in sacrifice to God, upon one of the mountains which God shewed unto him.

XI. By hospitality and godliness was Lot saved out of Sodom<sup>2</sup>, when all the country round about was destroyed by <sup>3</sup> fire and brimstone: the Lord thereby making it manifest, that he will not forsake those that trust in him; but<sup>4</sup> will bring the disobedient to punishment and correction. For his wife, who went out with him, being of a different mind, <sup>5</sup> and not continuing in the same obedience, was for that reason <sup>6</sup> set forth for an example, being turned into a pillar of salt unto this day. That so all men may know, that those who are double minded, and distrustful of the power of God, are <sup>7</sup> prepared for condemnation, and to be a sign to all succeeding ages.

XII. By faith and hospitality was Rahab<sup>8</sup> the harlot saved. For when the spies were sent by Joshua the son of Nun to search out Jericho; and the king of Jericho knew that they were come to spy out his country; <sup>9</sup> he sent men to take them, that so they might be put to death. <sup>10</sup> Rahab, therefore, being hospitable, received them, and hid them under the stalks of flax, on the top of her house. And when the messengers<sup>11</sup> that were sent by the king came unto her, and asked her, saying, <sup>12</sup> *There came men unto thee to spy out the*

<sup>1</sup> A son was given unto him. <sup>2</sup> Gen. xix. <sup>3</sup> 2 Pet. ii. 6. Jude 7.

<sup>4</sup> See *Not. Junii in loc.* or, punished with.

<sup>5</sup> But those that turn another way, he puts, &c.

<sup>6</sup> Not in concord. <sup>7</sup> Put for a sign. <sup>8</sup> Jos. ii. 1, &c.

<sup>9</sup> He sent men that should take them, that being taken, &c.

<sup>10</sup> Therefore hospitable Rahab.

<sup>11</sup> Men being sent by the king, and saying. <sup>12</sup> Jos. ii. 3.

land, bring them forth, for so hath the king commanded. She answered, 'The two men whom ye seek came unto me, but presently they departed, and are gone: not discovering them unto them'. Then she said to the 'spies, 'I know that the LORD your God has 'given this city into your hands; for the fear of you is fallen upon all that dwell therein. 'When, therefore, ye shall have taken it, ye shall save me, and my father's house. And they answered her, saying: 'It shall be as thou hast spoken unto us. Therefore when thou shalt know that we are near, thou shalt gather all thy family together upon the house-top, and they shall be saved: but all that shall be found without thy house, shall be destroyed. And they gave her moreover a sign; that she should hang out of her house a scarlet rope<sup>2</sup>: shewing thereby, that by the blood of our Lord there should be redemption to all that believe and hope in God. Ye see, Beloved, how there was not only faith, but prophecy too in this woman.

XIII. Let us, therefore, humble ourselves, Brethren, laying aside all pride, and boasting, and foolishness, and anger: and let us do as it is written. For thus saith the Holy Spirit: <sup>3</sup>*Let not the wise man glory in his wisdom, nor the strong man in his strength, nor the rich man in his riches; but let him that glorieth, glory in the LORD, to seek him, and to do judgment and justice.* Above all, remembering the words of the Lord Jesus, which he spake<sup>4</sup> concerning equity and long-suffering, "saying, *Be ye merciful, and ye shall obtain mercy: forgive,*

<sup>1</sup> Jos. ii. 4, 5.<sup>2</sup> Vid. *Conjectur*, *Coteler. in loc.*<sup>3</sup> Men.<sup>4</sup> Jos. ii. 9.<sup>5</sup> *Given you this city.*<sup>6</sup> Ver. 13.<sup>7</sup> Ver. 18, 19.<sup>8</sup> Ver. 18. Many of the Fathers have applied this to the same purpose. See *Not. Coteler. in loc.*<sup>9</sup> Jer. ix. 23. Comp. ~~1 Cor. ix. 24~~ <sup>7</sup>.<sup>10</sup> Teaching us.<sup>11</sup> For thus he saith. Luke vi. 26.

*and ye shall be forgiven: as ye do, so shall it be done unto you: as ye give, so shall it be given unto you: as ye judge, so shall ye be judged: as ye are kind to others, so shall God be kind to you: with what measure ye mete, with the same shall it be measured to you again.* By this command, and by these rules, let us establish ourselves, that so we may always walk obediently to his holy words; being humble-minded: for so says the <sup>1</sup>Holy Scripture: *'Upon whom shall I look? even upon him that is poor, and of a contrite spirit, and that trembles at my word.*

XIV. It is, therefore, just and righteous<sup>2</sup>, Men and Brethren, that we should become obedient unto God, rather than follow such as, <sup>3</sup>through pride and sedition, have made themselves the ringleaders of a detestable emulation. For it is not an ordinary harm that we shall do ourselves, but rather a very great danger that we shall run, if we shall rashly give up ourselves to the wills of men who<sup>4</sup> promote strife and seditions, to turn us aside from that which is fitting. But let us be kind to one another, according to the compassion, and sweetness of him that made us. For it is written: *'The merciful shall inherit the earth, and they that are without evil shall be left upon it: 'but the transgressors shall perish from off the face of it.* And again he saith: *'I have seen the wicked in great power, and spreading himself like the cedars of Libanus. I passed by, and, lo, he was not; I sought his place, but it could not be found. Keep innocency, and do the thing that is right; for there shall be a remnant to the peaceable man.*

XV. Let us therefore hold fast to those

<sup>1</sup> Holy word.

<sup>2</sup> Isaiah lxvi. 2.

<sup>3</sup> Holy.

<sup>4</sup> In.

<sup>5</sup> Prick on to. See *Junii Ann.*

<sup>6</sup> Psal. xxxvii. 9.

<sup>7</sup> Prov. ii. 20.

<sup>8</sup> Psal. xxxvii. 36.

who<sup>1</sup> religiously follow peace; and not to such as only<sup>2</sup> pretend to desire it. For he saith, in a certain place: *'This people honoureth me with their lips, but their heart is far from me. And again: 'They bless' with their mouth, but curse<sup>3</sup> in their heart. And again he saith, 'They loved him with their mouth, and with their tongue they lied to him. For their heart was not right with him, neither were they faithful in his covenant. <sup>4</sup>Let all deceitful lips become dumb, and the tongue that speaketh proud things. Who have said<sup>5</sup>, with our tongue will we prevail': our lips are our own, who is lord over us? For the oppression of the poor, for the sighing of the needy, now will I arise, saith the LORD; I will set him in safety, I will deal confidently with him.*

XVI. For Christ is theirs who are humble, and not who exalt themselves over his flock. The scepter of the Majesty of God, our Lord Jesus Christ, came not in the shew of<sup>10</sup> pride, and arrogance, though he could have done so<sup>11</sup>, but with humility, as the Holy Ghost had before spoken concerning him. For thus he saith, *'LORD, who hath believed our report, and to whom is the arm of the LORD revealed? For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and as a root out of a dry ground. He hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see him, there is no beauty that we should desire him. He is despised and rejected of men: a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief. And we hid, as it were, our faces from him: he was despised, and we esteemed him not. Surely he hath borne our griefs,*

<sup>1</sup> With religion or godliness.

<sup>2</sup> With hypocrisy will it.

<sup>3</sup> Isaiah xxix. 13.

<sup>4</sup> Psal. lxii. 4.

<sup>5</sup> Blessed.

<sup>6</sup> Cursed.

<sup>7</sup> Psal. lxxviii. 36, 37.

<sup>8</sup> Psal. xii. 3.

<sup>9</sup> We will magnify our tongue.

<sup>10</sup> Boasting.

<sup>11</sup> *Kai autē dυνάμενος*, though he were powerful.

<sup>12</sup> Isai. liii. according to the Hebrew.



*and carried our sorrows : yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted. But he was wounded for our transgressions ; he was bruised for our iniquities ; the chastisement of our peace was upon him, and with his stripes we are healed. All we like sheep have gone astray ; we have turned every one to his own way, and the LORD hath laid on him the iniquity of us all. He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth : he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter ; and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb, so he openeth not his mouth. He was taken from prison, and from judgment ; and who shall declare his generation ? For he was cut off out of the land of the living ; for the transgression of my people was he stricken. And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death ; because he had done no violence, neither was any deceit in his mouth. Yet it pleased the LORD to bruise him, he hath put him to grief. When thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days ; and the pleasure of the LORD shall prosper in his hand. He shall see of the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied ; by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many : for he shall bear their iniquities. Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong ; because he hath poured out his soul unto death : and he was numbered with the transgressors, and he bare the sin of many, and made intercession for the transgressors. And again he himself saith, 'I am a worm and no man, a reproach of men, and despised of the people. All they that see me laugh me to scorn ; they shoot out their lips ; they shake their head, saying, he trusted in the LORD, that he would deliver him, let him deliver him, seeing he delighted in him. Ye see,*

Beloved, what the pattern is that has been given to us. For if the Lord thus humbled himself, what should we do who are brought<sup>1</sup> by him under the yoke of his grace?

XVII. Let us be followers of those who went about in goat-skins and sheep-skins; preaching the coming of Christ. <sup>1</sup>Such were Elias, and Elisæus, and Ezekiel, the prophets. <sup>2</sup>And let us add to these such others as have received the like testimony. Abraham has been greatly witnessed of; having been called the friend of God. And yet he, stedfastly beholding the glory of God, says with all humility, <sup>3</sup>*I am dust and ashes.* Again of Job it is thus written: <sup>4</sup>*That he was just and without blame; true; one that served God, and abstained from all evil.* Yet he accusing himself, says, <sup>5</sup>*No man is free from pollution, no not though he should live but one day.* Moses was called faithful in all God's house; and by his conduct<sup>7</sup> the Lord punished Israel by stripes and plagues. And even this man, though thus greatly honoured, spake not greatly of himself; but when the oracle of God was delivered to him out of the bush, he said, <sup>6</sup>*Who am I, that thou dost send me? I am of a slender voice, and a slow tongue.* And again he saith, <sup>8</sup>*I am as the smoke of the pot.*

XVIII. And what shall we say of David, so highly testified of in the Holy Scriptures? To whom God said, <sup>9</sup>*I have found a man after my own heart, David the son of Jesse; with my holy oil I have anointed him.* But yet he himself saith unto

<sup>1</sup> MS. δ' αὐτοῦ.

<sup>2</sup> We say.

<sup>3</sup> To these, those also that have been witnessed of.

<sup>4</sup> Gen. xviii. 27.

<sup>5</sup> Job i. 1.

<sup>6</sup> Job xiv. 4.

<sup>7</sup> MS. ἡγεῖται ὁ Θεὸς τὸν Ἰσραὴλ διὰ τῶν μαρτύρων.

<sup>8</sup> Exod. iii. 11.

<sup>9</sup> Ibid. iv. 10.

<sup>10</sup> Psal. lxxxix. 29.

God: *'Have mercy upon me, O God, according to thy loving kindness; according unto the multitude of thy tender mercies, blot out my transgressions. Wash me thoroughly from mine iniquity, and cleanse me from my sin. For I acknowledge my transgressions, and my sin is ever before me. Against thee only have I sinned, and done this evil in thy sight, that thou mightest be justified when thou speakest, and be clear when thou judgest. Behold I was shapen in iniquity, and in sin did my mother conceive me. Behold, thou desirest truth in the inward parts; and in the hidden part thou shalt make me to know wisdom. Purge me with hyssop, and I shall be clean; wash me, and I shall be whiter than snow. Make me to hear joy and gladness, that the bones which thou hast broken may rejoice. Hide thy face from my sins, and blot out all mine iniquities. Create in me a clean heart, O God; and renew a right spirit within me. Cast me not away from thy presence, and take not thy Holy Spirit from me. Restore unto me the joy of thy salvation, and uphold me with thy free spirit. Then will I teach transgressors thy ways, and sinners shall be converted unto thee. Deliver me from blood-guiltiness, O God, thou God of my salvation, and my tongue shall sing aloud of thy righteousness. O LORD, open thou my lips, and my mouth shall shew forth thy praise. For thou desirest not sacrifice, else would I give it; thou delightest not in burnt-offerings. The sacrifices of God are a broken spirit; a broken and a contrite heart, O God, thou wilt not despise.'*

XIX. Thus has the humility and godly <sup>a</sup>fear of these great and excellent men<sup>3</sup>, recorded<sup>4</sup> in the

<sup>1</sup> Paal. li. to ver. 17. according to the Hebrew.

<sup>2</sup> Fearfulness.

<sup>3</sup> So great and such kind of men.

<sup>4</sup> Witnessed of, or celebrated.

Scriptures, through obedience, made not only us, but also the generations before us, better; even as many as have received his holy oracles<sup>1</sup> with fear and truth. Having therefore so many, and such great and glorious examples<sup>2</sup>, let us return to that peace, which was the mark that from the beginning was set before us<sup>3</sup>: let us look up to the Father and Creator of the whole world; and let us hold fast to his glorious and exceeding gifts and benefits of peace. Let us<sup>4</sup> consider and behold with the eyes of our understanding<sup>5</sup> his long-suffering will; and think how gentle and patient he is towards his whole creation.

XX. The heavens, moving by his appointment, are subject to him in peace. Day and night accomplish the courses that he has allotted unto them, not disturbing one another. The sun and moon, and all the several companies<sup>6</sup> and constellations of the stars, run the courses<sup>7</sup> that he has appointed to them in concord, without departing in the least from them. The fruitful earth yields its food plentifully in due season, both to man and beast, and to all animals that are upon it, according to his will; not disputing<sup>8</sup>, nor altering any thing of what was ordered by him. So also the unfathomable and unsearchable floods of the deep are kept in by his command: <sup>9</sup>and the conflux<sup>10</sup> of the vast sea, being brought together by his order into its several collections, passes not the bounds that he has set to it; but as he appointed<sup>11</sup> it, so it remains. For he said, *Hitherto*

---

<sup>1</sup> In.

<sup>2</sup> Deeds, or works.

<sup>3</sup> Let us return to the mark of peace given to us from the beginning.

<sup>4</sup> See him with our understanding.

<sup>5</sup> Soul.

<sup>6</sup> Chorus.

<sup>7</sup> Bounds.

<sup>8</sup> Doubting.

<sup>9</sup> Vid. edit. Colomes. p. 53.

<sup>10</sup> Hollow, or depth.

<sup>11</sup> Commanded, so it does.

*shalt thou come, and thy floods shall be broken within thee.* The ocean, unpassable to mankind, and the worlds that are beyond it, are governed by the same commands of their great Master. Spring and summer, autumn and winter, give place peaceably to each other. The several quarters<sup>1</sup> of the winds fulfil their work<sup>2</sup>, in their seasons, without offending one another. The everflowing fountains, made both for pleasure and health, never fail to reach out their breasts, to support the life of men. Even the smallest creatures live<sup>3</sup> together in peace and concord with each other. All these has the great Creator and Lord of all commanded to observe peace and concord; being good to all, but especially to us who flee to his mercy through our Lord Jesus Christ; to whom be glory and majesty for ever and ever. Amen.

XXI. Take heed, Beloved, that his many blessings be not to us<sup>4</sup> to condemnation—except we shall walk worthy of him, doing with<sup>5</sup> one consent what is good and pleasing in his sight. *The Spirit of the Lord is a candle, searching out the inward parts of the belly*<sup>6</sup>. Let us, therefore, consider how near he is to us; and how that none of our thoughts, or reasonings which we frame within ourselves, are hid<sup>7</sup> from him. It is therefore just that we should not forsake our rank, by doing contrary to his will. Let us choose to offend a few foolish and inconsiderate men, lifted up, and glorying in<sup>8</sup> their own pride, rather than God. Let us reverence our Lord Jesus Christ, whose blood was given for us; let us honour those

<sup>1</sup> Stations.<sup>2</sup> Service.<sup>3</sup> Mix together.<sup>4</sup> All of us.<sup>5</sup> With concord.<sup>6</sup> Prov. xx. 27.<sup>7</sup> That nothing is hid to him of our thoughts, or reasonings.<sup>8</sup> In the pride of their own speech, or reason.

who are set over us; let us respect the aged that are amongst us; and let us instruct the younger men in the discipline and fear of the LORD. Our wives let us direct<sup>1</sup> to do that which is good. Let them shew forth a lovely habit of purity in all their conversation, with a sincere <sup>2</sup>affection of meekness; let the government<sup>3</sup> of their tongues be<sup>4</sup> made manifest by their silence; let their charity be without respect of persons, alike towards all such as religiously fear God. Let their children be<sup>5</sup> bred up in the instruction of Christ; and, especially, let them learn how great a power humility has with God; how much a pure and holy charity avails with him; how excellent and great his fear is; and how it will save<sup>6</sup> all such as turn to him with holiness in a pure mind. For he is the searcher of the thoughts and counsels of the heart; whose breath is in us, and when he pleases, he can take it from us.

XXII. But all these things<sup>7</sup> must be confirmed by the faith which is in Christ: for so he himself bespeaks us by the Holy Ghost. *Come<sup>8</sup>, ye children, and hearken unto me, and I will teach you the fear of the LORD. What man is there that desireth life, and loveth to see good days? Keep thy tongue from evil, and thy lips that they speak no guile. Depart from evil and do good; seek peace and ensue it. The eyes of the LORD are upon the righteous, and his ears are open unto their prayers. But the face of the LORD is against them that do evil, to cut off the remembrance of them from the earth. The righteous cried, and the LORD heard him, and delivered him out of all his*

<sup>1</sup> Correct, or amend.

<sup>4</sup> Let them manifest.

<sup>7</sup> The faith confirms.

<sup>2</sup> Will, or counsel.

<sup>5</sup> Partaking of.

<sup>6</sup> Psal. xxxiv. 11.

<sup>3</sup> Moderation.

<sup>6</sup> Saving.

*troubles. Many are the troubles<sup>9</sup> of the wicked; but they that trust in the LORD, mercy shall encompass them about.*

XXIII. Our all-merciful and beneficent Father hath bowels of compassion towards them that fear him; and kindly and lovingly bestows his graces upon all such as come to him with a simple mind. Wherefore let us not waver<sup>10</sup>, neither let us have any doubt in our hearts of his excellent and glorious gifts. Let<sup>11</sup> that be far from us which is written, *Miserable<sup>12</sup> are the double-minded, and those who are doubtful in their hearts, who say, These things have we heard, and our fathers have told us these things. But behold, we are grown old, and none of them has happened unto us. O ye fools! consider<sup>13</sup> the trees; take the vine for an example: first it sheds its leaves, then it buds; after that it spreads its leaves, then it flowers; then come the sour grapes, and after them follows the ripe fruit.* Ye see how in a little time the fruit of the trees comes to maturity. Of a truth, yet a little while, and his will shall suddenly be accomplished. The Holy Scripture itself bearing witness, *That he<sup>14</sup> shall quickly come and not tarry, and that the LORD shall suddenly come to his temple, even the Holy One<sup>15</sup> whom ye look for.*

XXIV. Let us consider, Beloved, how the LORD does continually shew us, that there shall be a future resurrection; of which he has made our Lord Jesus Christ the first-fruits, raising him from the dead. Let us contemplate<sup>16</sup>, Beloved,

<sup>9</sup> *Scourges.*

<sup>11</sup> Let the writing be far from us.

<sup>13</sup> *Compare yourselves unto a tree.*

<sup>14</sup> Ex MS. omitted by Junius. Hab. ii. 3. Mal. iii. 1.

<sup>15</sup> ἄγγελος, *Angel.*

<sup>10</sup> Be double-minded.

<sup>12</sup> James i. 8.

<sup>16</sup> See.

the resurrection that is continually<sup>1</sup> made before our eyes. Day and night manifest a resurrection to us. The night lies down, and the day arises; again the day departs, and the night comes on. Let us behold the fruits of the earth: every one sees how the seed is sown: the sower<sup>2</sup> goes forth, and casts it upon the earth; and the seed, which when it was sown, fell upon the earth dry and naked, in time dissolves: and from the dissolution the great power of the providence of the LORD raises it again; and of one seed many arise, and bring forth fruit.

XXV. Let us consider that wonderful type<sup>3</sup> of the resurrection, which is seen in the eastern countries; that is to say, in Arabia. There is a certain bird called a phoenix: of this there is never but one at a time; and that lives five hundred years: and when the time of its dissolution draws near that it must die, it makes itself a nest of frankincense, and myrrh, and other spices; into which, when its time is fulfilled, it enters and dies. But its flesh, putrefying, breeds a certain worm, which, being nourished with the juice<sup>4</sup> of the dead bird<sup>5</sup>, brings forth feathers; and when it is grown to a perfect<sup>5</sup> state, it takes up the nest in which the bones of its parent<sup>6</sup> lie, and carries it from Arabia into Egypt, to a city called Heliopolis: and, flying in open day, in the sight of all men, lays it upon the altar of the sun, and so returns from whence it came. The priests then search into the records of the time; and find that it returned precisely at the end of five hundred years.

XXVI. And shall<sup>7</sup> we then think it to be any very great and strange thing, for the LORD of all

<sup>1</sup> Made every season.

<sup>4</sup> Animal.

<sup>2</sup> Went forth; and so in the rest.

<sup>5</sup> Strong.

<sup>6</sup> Progenitor.

<sup>3</sup> Sign.

<sup>7</sup> Do.



to raise up those that religiously serve him in the assurance of a good faith, when even by a bird he shews us the greatness of his power to fulfil his promise? For he says, in a certain place, *Thou shalt raise me up, and I shall confess unto thee.* And again, *I laid me down and slept, and awaked, because thou art with me*<sup>8</sup>. And again, Job says, *Thou shalt raise up this flesh of mine that has suffered all these things*<sup>9</sup>.

XXVII. Having therefore this hope, let us hold fast<sup>10</sup> to him who is faithful in all his promises, and righteous in all his judgments; who has commanded us not to lie, how much more will he not himself lie? For nothing is impossible with God, but to lie. Let his faith then be stirred up again in us; and let us consider that all things are nigh unto him. By the word of his power<sup>11</sup> he made all things, and by the same word<sup>12</sup> he is able, [whenever he will,] to destroy them. *Who shall say unto him, What doest thou? Or who shall resist the power of his strength*<sup>13</sup>? When, and as he please, he<sup>14</sup> will do all things; and nothing shall pass away of all that has been determined by him. All things are open before him; nor can any thing be hid from his counsel. <sup>15</sup>*The heavens declare the glory of God; and the firmament sheweth his handy-work. Day unto day uttereth speech, and night unto night sheweth knowledge. There is no speech nor language where their voice is not heard*<sup>16</sup>.

XXVIII. Seeing then all things are seen and heard by God, let us fear him, and let us lay aside our wicked works, which proceed from ill

<sup>8</sup> Psal. iii. 5.

<sup>11</sup> Majesty.

<sup>14</sup> MS. Πουθεν.

<sup>9</sup> Job. ix. 27.

<sup>12</sup> His word.

<sup>15</sup> *If the, &c.*

<sup>10</sup> Let our minds be fastened.

<sup>13</sup> Wisd. xii. 12.

<sup>16</sup> Psal. xix. 1.

desires; that through his mercy we may be delivered<sup>1</sup> from the condemnation<sup>2</sup> to come. For whither can any of us flee from his mighty hand? Or what world shall receive any of those who run away from him? For thus saith the Scripture in a certain place, *Whither shall I flee [from thy Spirit] or where shall I hide myself from thy presence? If I ascend up into heaven, thou art there: if I shall go to the utmost parts of the earth, there is thy right hand: if I shall make my bed in the deep, thy Spirit is there*<sup>3</sup>. Whither then shall any one go, or whither shall he run, from him that comprehends all things?

XXIX. Let us therefore come to him with holiness of heart<sup>4</sup>, lifting up chaste and undefiled hands unto him; loving our gracious and merciful Father, who has made us<sup>5</sup> to partake of his election. For so it is written, *When the Most High divided the nations, when he separated the sons of Adam, he set the bounds of the nations, according to the number of his angels: his people Jacob became the portion of the LORD, and Israel the lot of his inheritance*<sup>6</sup>. And in another place he saith, *Behold*<sup>7</sup>, *the LORD taketh unto himself a nation out of the midst of the nations, as a man taketh the first fruits of his flour; and the Most Holy shall come out of that nation*<sup>8</sup>.

XXX. Wherefore we being the portion of the Holy One, let us do all those things that pertain unto holiness: fleeing all evil-speaking against one another; all filthy and impure embraces, together with all drunkenness, youthful lusts, abominable concupiscences, detestable adultery,

<sup>1</sup> Covered.<sup>4</sup> Mind.<sup>7</sup> So the LXX.<sup>2</sup> Judgment.<sup>5</sup> A part.<sup>8</sup> Deut. iv. 34.<sup>3</sup> Psal. cxxxix. 7.<sup>6</sup> Deut. xxxiii. 8, 9.<sup>9</sup> Num. xxvii.

and execrable pride. *For God, saith he, resisteth the proud, but giveth grace to the humble*<sup>10</sup>. Let us therefore hold fast to those to whom God<sup>11</sup> has given his grace. And let us put on concord; being humble, temperate, free from all whispering and detraction, and justified by our actions<sup>12</sup>, not our words. For he saith, *Doth*<sup>13</sup> *he that speaketh and heareth many things, and that is of a ready tongue, suppose that he is righteous? Blessed is he that is born of a woman that liveth but a few days: use not therefore much speech*<sup>14</sup>. Let our praise be of God, not of ourselves; for God hateth those that commend<sup>15</sup> themselves. Let the witness of our good actions be given to us of others, as it was given to the holy men that went before us. Rashness, and arrogance, and confidence, belong to them who are accursed of God: but equity and humility, and mildness, to such as are blessed by him.

XXXI. Let us then lay hold of his blessing; and let us consider<sup>16</sup> what are the ways by which we may attain unto it. Let us look<sup>17</sup> back upon those things that have happened from the beginning. For what was our father Abraham blessed? Was it not because that, through faith, he wrought righteousness and truth? Isaac, being fully<sup>18</sup> persuaded of what he knew was to come, cheerfully yielded himself up for a sacrifice. Jacob with humility departed out of his own country, fleeing from his brother, and went unto Laban, and served him: and so the sceptre of the twelve tribes of Israel was given unto him.

<sup>10</sup> Ja. iv. 6, 1 Pet. v. 3. <sup>11</sup> The grace of God has been given. <sup>12</sup> Work.

<sup>13</sup> *He that speaketh many things shall also hear, &c.* Job xxi. 2, 3. LXX.

<sup>14</sup> *Be not much in words.*

<sup>15</sup> Are praised of.

<sup>16</sup> See what are the ways of his blessing.

<sup>17</sup> Unroll.

<sup>18</sup> With full persuasion, foreknowing what was to be, pleasingly became a sacrifice.

XXXII. Now what the greatness of this gift<sup>1</sup> was will plainly appear, if we shall take the pains distinctly to consider all the parts of it: for from him came the Priests and Levites, who all ministered at the altar of God: from him came our Lord Jesus Christ, according to the flesh: from him came the kings, and princes, and rulers, in Judah: nor were the rest of his tribes<sup>2</sup> in any small glory; God having promised that *thy seed*, [says he,] *shall be as the stars of heaven*<sup>3</sup>. They were all therefore greatly glorified<sup>4</sup>, not for their own sake, or for their own works, or for the righteousness that they themselves wrought, but through his will. And we also, being called by the same will in Christ Jesus, are not justified by ourselves, neither by our own wisdom, or knowledge, or piety, or the works which we have done in<sup>5</sup> the holiness of our hearts: but by that faith by which God Almighty has justified all men from the beginning; to whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen.

XXXIII. What shall we do therefore, Brethren? Shall we be slothful in well-doing, and lay aside our charity? God forbid that any such thing should be done by us. But rather let us hasten with all earnestness and readiness of mind, to perfect every good work: for even the Creator and Lord of all things himself rejoices in his own works. By his almighty<sup>6</sup> power he fixed the heavens, and by his incomprehensible wisdom he adorned them: he also divided the earth from the water, with which it is encompassed; and fixed it, as a secure tower, upon the foundation of his own will: he

---

<sup>1</sup> The gifts that were given by him were, he shall know whosever will, one by one, carefully and distinctly consider them.

<sup>2</sup> Sceptres: see Jun. Annot.

<sup>3</sup> Gen. xxii. 17.

<sup>4</sup> Glorified and magnified.

<sup>5</sup> In holiness of heart. <sup>6</sup> All-greatest.

also, by his appointment, commanded all the living creatures that are upon it to exist. So likewise the sea, and all the creatures that are in it, having first created them, he inclosed them therein by his power. And, above all, he with his holy and pure hands formed man—the most excellent, and, as to his understanding, truly the greatest of all earthly creatures—the character of his own image. For so God says, *Let us make man in our image, after our own likeness: so God created man, male and female created he them*<sup>7</sup>. And, having thus finished all these things, he commended all that he had made, and blessed them; and said, *Increase and multiply*<sup>8</sup>. We see how all righteous men have been adorned with good works: wherefore even the Lord himself, having adorned himself with his works, rejoiced. Having therefore such<sup>9</sup> an example, let us without delay fulfil<sup>10</sup> his will; and with all our strength work the work of righteousness.

XXXIV. The good workman with confidence receives the bread of his labour<sup>11</sup>; but the sluggish and lazy cannot look him in the face that sets him on work. We must therefore be ready and forward in well-doing; for from him are all things. And thus he foretells us, *Behold*<sup>12</sup>, *the Lord cometh and his reward is with him, even before his face, to render to every one according to his work*. He warns us therefore, beforehand, with all his heart, to this end, that we should not be slothful and negligent in well-doing<sup>13</sup>. Let our boasting, therefore, and our confidence be in God<sup>14</sup>: let us submit ourselves to his will. Let us consider the whole multitude of his angels, how ready they stand to minister unto his will. As saith the

<sup>7</sup> Gen. i. 26, 27.    <sup>8</sup> Gen. i. 28.    <sup>9</sup> This.    <sup>10</sup> Come to.    <sup>11</sup> Work.  
<sup>12</sup> Isaiah xl. 10.—lxii. 11.    <sup>13</sup> Every good work.    <sup>14</sup> Him.

Scripture, *Thousands' of thousands stood before him, and ten thousand times ten thousand ministered unto him.* <sup>2</sup>*And they cried, saying, Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of Sabaoth!* <sup>3</sup>*The whole earth is full of his glory!* Wherefore let us also, being conscientiously gathered together in concord with one another, as it were with one mouth, cry earnestly unto him, that he would make us partakers of his great and glorious promises. For he saith, <sup>4</sup>*Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man the things which God has prepared for them that wait for him.*

XXXV. How blessed and wonderful, Beloved, are the gifts of God! Life in immortality! brightness in righteousness! truth in full assurance! faith in confidence! temperance in holiness! And all this has God<sup>5</sup> subjected to our understandings: what, therefore, shall those things be which he has prepared for them that wait for him? The Creator and Father of spirits<sup>6</sup>, the Most Holy, he only knows both the greatness<sup>7</sup> and beauty of them. Let us therefore strive with all earnestness, that we may be found in the number of those that wait for him; that so we may receive the reward<sup>8</sup> which he has promised. But how, Beloved, shall we do this? <sup>9</sup>We must fix our minds by faith towards God, and seek those things that are pleasing and acceptable unto him. We must act<sup>10</sup> conformably to his holy will, and follow the way of truth; casting off from us all unrighteousness and iniquity, together with all covetousness, strife, evil manners, deceit, whispering, detractions, all hatred of God, pride

<sup>1</sup> Dan. vii. 10.

<sup>2</sup> Isa. vi. 3.

<sup>3</sup> *Every creature.*

<sup>4</sup> Isa. lxiv. 4. 1 Cor. ii. 9.

<sup>5</sup> He.

<sup>6</sup> Ages.

<sup>7</sup> Quantity.

<sup>8</sup> Gifts.

<sup>9</sup> If we shall.

<sup>10</sup> Perform those things that are agreeable.

and boasting, vain-glory and ambition : for they that do these things are odious to God ; and not only they that do them, but also *all such as approve of those that do them*<sup>11</sup>. For thus saith the Scripture, <sup>12</sup>*But unto the wicked God said, What hast thou to do, to declare my statutes, or that thou shouldst take my covenant in thy mouth ; seeing thou hatest instruction, and castest my words behind thee ? When thou sawest a thief, then thou consentedst with him ; and hast been partaker with adulterers. Thou givest thy mouth to evil, and thy tongue frameth deceit. Thou sittest and speakest against thy brother ; thou slanderest thine own mother's son. These things hast thou done, and I kept silence ; thou thoughtest that I was altogether such a one as thyself : but I will reprove thee, and set them in order before thine eyes. Now consider this, ye that forget God, lest I tear you in pieces, and there be none to deliver. Whoso offereth praise, glorifieth me : and to him that disposeth his way aright will I shew the salvation of God.*

XXXVI. This is the way, Beloved, in which we may find <sup>13</sup>our Saviour, even Jesus Christ, the high priest of all our offerings, the defender and helper of our weakness. By him we look up to the highest<sup>14</sup> heavens ; and behold, as in a glass, his spotless and most excellent visage. By him are the eyes of our hearts opened ; by him our foolish and darkened understanding rejoiceth to behold his wonderful light. By him would God have us to taste the knowledge of immortality ; *who*<sup>15</sup>, *being the brightness of his glory, is by so much greater than the angels, as he has by inheritance*

<sup>11</sup> Rom i. 32.

<sup>12</sup> Psal. i. 16, &c. according to the Hebr. '.

<sup>13</sup> That which has the power to save us.

<sup>14</sup> Heights of heaven.

<sup>15</sup> Heb. i. 3, 4.

obtained a more excellent name than they. For so it is written, <sup>1</sup>*Who maketh his angels spirits, and his ministers a flame of fire.* But to his son, thus, saith the LORD : <sup>2</sup>*Thou art my son, to day have I begotten thee.* <sup>3</sup>*Ask of me; and I will give thee the heathen for thine inheritance, and the utmost parts of the earth for thy possession.* And again he saith unto him : <sup>4</sup>*Sit thou on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool.* But who are his enemies? Even the wicked, and such who oppose their own wills to the will of God.

XXXVII. Let us therefore march<sup>5</sup> on, Men and Brethren, with all earnestness in his holy laws. Let us consider those who fight under our earthly governors; how orderly, how readily, and with what exact obedience, they perform those things that are commanded them: all are not <sup>6</sup>generals, nor <sup>7</sup>colonels, nor <sup>8</sup>captains, nor <sup>9</sup>inferior officers; but every one, in his respective rank, does what is commanded him by the king and those who have the authority over him. They who are great cannot subsist without those that are little; nor the little without the great. But there must be a mixture in all things; and then there will be use and profit too. Let us, for example<sup>10</sup>, take our body: the head without the feet is nothing, neither the feet without the head. And even the smallest members of our body are, yet, both necessary and useful to the whole body. But all conspire together and <sup>11</sup>are subject to one common use, namely, the preservation of the whole body<sup>12</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Psal. civ. 4. Heb. i. 7.

<sup>2</sup> Heb. i. 5.

<sup>3</sup> Comp. Psal. ii. 7, 8.

<sup>4</sup> Heb. i. 13. Psal. cx. 1.

<sup>5</sup> War.

<sup>6</sup> Prefects.

<sup>7</sup> Commanders of a thousand.

<sup>8</sup> Centurions.

<sup>9</sup> Commanders of 50, and so on.

<sup>10</sup> Cor. xii. 13.

<sup>11</sup> Use one common subjection.

<sup>12</sup> MS. τὸ σῶμα.



XXXVIII. Let therefore our whole body be saved in Jesus Christ : and let every one be subject to his neighbour, according<sup>13</sup> to the order in which he is placed by the gift<sup>14</sup> of God. Let not the strong man despise the weak ; and let the weak see that he reverence the strong. Let the rich man distribute to the necessity of the poor ; and let the poor bless God, that he has given unto him by whom his want may be supplied. Let the wise man shew forth his wisdom, not in words but in good works. Let him that is humble not bear witness to himself, but let him leave it to another to bear witness of him. Let him that is pure in the flesh not grow proud of it, knowing that it was from another<sup>15</sup> that he received the gift of continence. Let us consider therefore, Brethren, whereof<sup>16</sup> we are made ; who, and what kind of men we came into the world, as it were out of a sepulchre, and from utter darkness. He that made us, and formed us, brought us into his own world ; having prevented<sup>17</sup> us with his benefits, even before we were born. Wherefore, having received all these things from him, we ought, in every thing, to give thanks unto him ; to whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen.

XXXIX. Foolish and unwise men, who<sup>18</sup> have neither prudence nor learning, may mock and deride us ; being willing to set up themselves in their own conceits : *19 But what can a mortal man do ? Or what strength is there in him that is made out of the dust ?* For it is written, *There was no shape before mine eyes ; only I heard a sound<sup>20</sup> and*

<sup>13</sup> As also he has been placed.

<sup>14</sup> His gift.

<sup>15</sup> Another that gave him.

<sup>16</sup> Of what matter.

<sup>17</sup> Prepared for us.

<sup>18</sup> And imprudent, and without instruction.

<sup>19</sup> For.

<sup>20</sup> An air. Job. iv. 16, &c.—xv. 15.—iv. 19.

unto him<sup>6</sup>. They therefore who make their offerings at the appointed seasons are happy and accepted; because that, obeying the commandments of the Lord, they are free from sin. "And "the same care must be had of the persons that "minister unto him<sup>7</sup>:" for the chief priest has his proper services; and to the priests their proper place is appointed; and to the Levites appertain their proper ministries; and the layman is confined within the bounds of what is commanded to laymen.

**XLI.** Let every one of you therefore, Brethren, bless God in his proper station, with a good conscience<sup>8</sup>, and with all gravity, not exceeding the rule of his service that is appointed to him. The daily sacrifices are not offered every where; nor the peace-offerings, nor the sacrifices appointed for sins and transgressions, but only at Jerusalem: nor in any place there, but only at the altar before the temple; that which is offered being first diligently examined by the high-priest and the other ministers we before mentioned. They therefore who do any thing which is not agreeable to his will are punished with death. <sup>9</sup>Consider, Brethren, that by how much the better knowledge God has vouchsafed unto us, by so much the greater danger are we exposed to.

**XLII.** The Apostles have preached to us from our Lord Jesus Christ; Jesus Christ from God. Christ therefore was sent by God, the Apostles by Christ; so both were orderly sent<sup>10</sup>, according to the will of God<sup>11</sup>. For, having received their command, and being thoroughly assured by the resur-

<sup>6</sup> To his will.

<sup>8</sup> Being in a good conscience.

<sup>10</sup> Done.

<sup>7</sup> See Coteler. in loc.

<sup>9</sup> Ye see.

<sup>11</sup> 1 Thess. i. 5.

rection of our Lord Jesus Christ, and convinced by the Word of God, with the fullness<sup>1</sup> of the Holy Spirit, they went abroad, publishing, *That the kingdom of God was at hand*. And, thus preaching through countries and cities, they appointed the first fruits of their conversions<sup>2</sup> to be bishops and ministers over such as should afterwards believe, having first proved them by the spirit. Nor was this any new thing: seeing that long before it was written concerning bishops and deacons. For thus saith the Scripture, in a certain place, *'I will appoint their overseers<sup>4</sup> in righteousness, and their ministers in faith.*

XLIII. And what wonder if they, to whom such a work was committed by God in Christ, established such officers as we before mentioned; when even that blessed and faithful servant in all his house, Moses, set<sup>3</sup> down in the Holy Scriptures all things that were commanded him. Whom also all the rest of the Prophets followed, bearing witness with one consent to those things that were appointed by him: for he, perceiving an emulation<sup>6</sup> to arise among the tribes concerning the priesthood, and that there was a strife about it, which of them should be adorned with that glorious name, commanded their twelve captains to bring to him twelve rods<sup>7</sup>; every tribe being written upon its rod, according to its name. And he took them and bound them together, and sealed them with the seals of the twelve princes of the tribes; and laid them up in the tabernacle of witness, upon the table of God. And when he had shut the door of the tabernacle, he sealed up the keys of

<sup>1</sup> With the full assurance.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. Coteler. in loc.

<sup>3</sup> Isaiah lx. 17.

<sup>4</sup> Bishops, deacons.

<sup>5</sup> Signified.

<sup>6</sup> An emulation happening.

<sup>7</sup> Numb. xvii.

it in like manner<sup>8</sup> as he had done the rods; and said unto them, Men and brethren, Whichsoever tribe shall have its rod blossom, that tribe has God chosen *'to perform the office of a priest,* and to minister unto him *in holy things.* And when the morning was come, he called together all Israel, six hundred thousand men, and shewed to their princes the seals, and opened the tabernacle of witness, and brought forth the rods. And the rod of Aaron was found not only to have blossomed, but also to have fruit upon it. What think you, Beloved? Did not Moses before know <sup>10</sup> what should happen? Yes, verily; but to the end there might be no division, nor tumult in Israel, he did in this manner, that the name of the true and only God might be glorified: to him be honour for ever and ever. Amen.

XLIV. So likewise our Apostles knew by our Lord Jesus Christ, that there should contentions arise<sup>11</sup> upon account of the ministry. And therefore, having a perfect fore-knowledge of this, they appointed persons, as we have before said, and then gave<sup>12</sup> direction, how, when they should die, other chosen and approved men should succeed in their ministry. Wherefore we cannot think that those may justly be thrown out of their ministry, who were either appointed by them, or afterwards chosen by other eminent men, with the consent of the whole Church; and who with all lowliness and innocency ministered to the flock of Christ, in peace and without self-interest, and were for a long time commended by all. For it

<sup>8</sup> And the rods.

<sup>9</sup> *To exercise the office of the priesthood, and to minister, &c.*

<sup>10</sup> That this should be so.

<sup>11</sup> About the name of the bishopric.

<sup>12</sup> Left a list of other chosen and approved persons, who should succeed them in their ministry.—See *Dr. Arden's Disc. upon this passage.* and *Dr. Hammond's Power of the Keys*, c. iii. p. 413.

would be no small sin in us, should we cast off those from their ministry<sup>1</sup> who holily, and without blame, *fulfil<sup>2</sup> the duties of it*. Blessed are those priests who, having finished their course before these times, have obtained a fruitful and perfect dissolution; for they have no fear, lest any one should turn them out of the place which is now appointed for them. But we see how you have put out some, who lived reputably among you, from the ministry, which by their innocence they had adorned.

XLV. Ye are contentious, Brethren, and zealous for things that pertain not unto salvation. Look into the Holy Scriptures, which are the true words of the Holy Ghost. Ye know that there is nothing unjust or counterfeit written in them. There you shall not find that righteous men were ever cast off by such as were good themselves. They<sup>3</sup> were persecuted, it is true, but it was by the wicked and unjust: they were cast into prison, but they were cast in by those that were unholy: they were stoned, but it was by transgressors: they were killed, but by accursed men, and such as had taken up an unjust envy against them. And<sup>4</sup> all these things they underwent gloriously. For what shall we say, Brethren? Was Daniel cast into the den<sup>5</sup> of lions by men fearing God? Ananias, Azarias, and Misael, were they cast<sup>6</sup> into the fiery furnace<sup>7</sup> by men professing<sup>8</sup> the excellent and glorious worship of the Most High? God forbid. What kind of persons then were they that did these things? They were men abominable, full of all wickedness; who

---

<sup>1</sup> Bishopric.

<sup>2</sup> *Offer the gifts.*

<sup>3</sup> Just men.

<sup>4</sup> Suffering these things, they underwent them gloriously.

<sup>5</sup> Dan. vi. 16.

<sup>6</sup> Shut into.

<sup>7</sup> Dan. iii. 20.

<sup>8</sup> Worshipping the worship.

were incensed to so great a degree, as to bring those into sufferings who with a holy and unblamable purpose of mind worshipped God; not knowing that the Most High is the protector and defender of all such as with a pure conscience serve his holy Name: to whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen. But they who with a full persuasion have endured these things are<sup>10</sup> made partakers of glory and honour; and are<sup>11</sup> exalted and lifted up by God, in their memorial throughout all ages. Amen.

XLVI. Wherefore it will behove us also, Brethren, to<sup>12</sup> follow such examples as these; for it is written, *Hold fast to such as are holy; for they that do so shall be sanctified.* And again, in another place, he saith, <sup>13</sup>*With the pure thou shalt be pure, [and with the elect thou shalt be elect,] but with the perverse man thou shalt be perverse*<sup>14</sup>. Let us, therefore, join ourselves to the innocent and righteous; for such are the elect of God. Wherefore are there strifes, and anger, and divisions, and schisms, and wars, among us? Have we not all one God and one Christ<sup>15</sup>? Is not one spirit of grace poured out upon us all<sup>16</sup>? Have we not one calling in Christ? Why then do we rend and tear in pieces the members of Christ; and raise seditions against our own body? And are come to such a height of madness, as to forget that we were *members one of another*<sup>17</sup>? Remember the words of our Lord Jesus, how<sup>18</sup> he said, <sup>19</sup>*Woe to that man [by whom offences come]! It were better for him that he had never been born, than that he should have*

<sup>9</sup> Full of virtue.

<sup>10</sup> Have inherited.

<sup>11</sup> Have been exalted.

<sup>12</sup> To cleave to.

<sup>13</sup> Psal. xvii. 2.

<sup>14</sup> Omitted by Junius, and now restored from the MS.

<sup>15</sup> Turn aside,

<sup>16</sup> Eph. iv. 4.

<sup>17</sup> 1 Cor. xii.

<sup>18</sup> Rom. xii. 5.

<sup>19</sup> For he said.

<sup>20</sup> Luke xvii.

*offended one of my elect. It were better for him, that a millstone should be tied about his neck, and he should be cast into the sea, than that he should offend one of my little ones.* Your schism has perverted many, has discouraged many: it has caused diffidence in many, and grief in us all. And yet your sedition continues still.

**XLVII.** Take the Epistle of the blessed Paul the Apostle into your hands: What<sup>1</sup> was it that he wrote to you at his first preaching the Gospel among you? Verily he did by the spirit<sup>2</sup> admonish you concerning himself and Cephas and Apollos, because that even then ye had begun to fall into parties<sup>3</sup> and factions among yourselves. Nevertheless your partiality then led you into a much less sin: forasmuch as ye placed<sup>4</sup> your affections upon Apostles, men of eminent<sup>5</sup> reputation in the Church; and upon another who was greatly tried and approved of by them. But consider, we pray you, who were they that have now led you astray, and lessened the reputation<sup>6</sup> of that brotherly love that was so eminent<sup>7</sup> among you? It is a shame, my Beloved, yea a very great shame, and unworthy of your Christian profession<sup>8</sup>, to hear, that the most firm and ancient Church<sup>9</sup> of the Corinthians should, by one or two persons, be led into a sedition against its priests. And this report is come not only to us; but to those also that differ from us. Insomuch that the name of the Lord is blasphemed through your folly; and even ye yourselves are brought into danger by it.

**XLVIII.** Let us, therefore, with all haste<sup>10</sup>, put an end to this sedition; and let us fall down before

<sup>1</sup> See Mr. Dodwell's Add. ad Pearson. Chronol. p. 223. Dr. Grabe's Spicileg. tom. I. p. 256. <sup>2</sup> Spiritually send to you. 1 Cor. i. 12.

<sup>3</sup> Inclinations [for one above another].

<sup>4</sup> Inclined.

<sup>5</sup> Witnessed of.

<sup>6</sup> Gravity.

<sup>7</sup> So much spoken of.

<sup>8</sup> Institution.

<sup>9</sup> See Mr. Dodwell, l. c. p. 222.

<sup>10</sup> Take away.

the LORD, and beseech him with tears that he would be favourably<sup>11</sup> reconciled to us, and restore us again to a seemly<sup>12</sup> and holy course of brotherly love. For this is the gate of righteousness opening unto life: as it is written, *Open unto me the gates of righteousness; I will go in unto them, and will praise the LORD. This is the gate of the LORD; the righteous shall enter into it.* Although therefore many gates are opened, yet this gate of righteousness is that gate in Christ at which blessed are all they that enter in, and direct their way in holiness and righteousness, doing all things without disorder. Let a man be faithful; let him be powerful in the utterance of knowledge; let him be wise in making an exact judgment of words; let him be pure in all his actions: but still by how much the more he seems to be above<sup>14</sup> others by reason of these things, by so much the more will it behove him to be humble-minded; and to seek what is profitable to all men, and not his own advantage.

XLIX. He that has the love that is in Christ, let him keep the commandments of Christ. For who is able to express the obligation<sup>13</sup> of the love of God? What man is sufficient to declare, as is fitting, the excellency of its beauty? The height to which charity leads is inexpressible. Charity unites<sup>16</sup> us to God: Charity *covers the multitude of sins*<sup>17</sup>: Charity *endures all things*<sup>18</sup>, is long-suffering in all things. There is nothing base and sordid in charity: Charity lifts not itself up above others; admits of no divisions; is not seditious, but does all things in peace and concord. By charity were all the elect of God made perfect:

<sup>11</sup> Becoming favourable.<sup>12</sup> Grave; venerable.<sup>13</sup> Psal. cxviii. 19, 20.<sup>14</sup> Greater.<sup>15</sup> Bond.<sup>16</sup> Glues.<sup>17</sup> 1 Pet. iv. 8.<sup>18</sup> 1 Cor. xiii. 7, &c.



without it nothing is pleasing and acceptable in the sight of God. Through charity did the LORD join us unto himself; whilst, for the love that he bore towards us, our Lord Jesus Christ gave his own blood for us, by the will of God; his flesh for our flesh; his soul for our souls.

L. Ye see, Beloved, how great and wonderful a thing charity is; and how that no expressions are sufficient to declare its perfection. But who is fit to be found in it? Even such only as God shall vouchsafe to make so. Let us, therefore, pray to him, and beseech him, that we may be worthy of it; that so we may live in charity, being unblamable, without human propensities, without respect of persons. All the ages of the world, from Adam even unto this day, are passed away; but they who have been made perfect in love have, by the grace of God, obtained a place among the righteous, and shall be made manifest in the judgment\* of the kingdom of Christ. For it is written, *Enter into thy chambers for a little space, till my anger and indignation shall pass away: and I will remember the good day, and will raise you up out of your graves.* Happy then<sup>4</sup> shall we be, Beloved, if we shall have fulfilled the commandments of God, in the unity of love; that so, through love, our sins may be forgiven us. For so it is written, *Blessed are they whose iniquities are forgiven, and whose sins are covered. Blessed is the man to whom the LORD imputeth no sin, and in whose mouth there is no guile.* Now this blessing is fulfilled in those who are chosen by God, through Jesus Christ our Lord; to whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen.

---

<sup>1</sup> Take us up. <sup>2</sup> Animadversion, or visitation. <sup>3</sup> Isaiah xvi. 20.

<sup>4</sup> Are we. <sup>5</sup> Psal. xxxii.

L.I. Let us, therefore, as many as have transgressed by any of the suggestions<sup>6</sup> of the adversary beg God's forgiveness. And as for those<sup>7</sup> who have been the heads of the sedition and faction among you, let<sup>8</sup> them look to the common end of our hope. For as many as are endued with fear and charity would rather they themselves should fall into trials than their neighbours; and choose to be themselves condemned, rather than that the good and just charity delivered to us should suffer. For it is seemly for a man to confess wherein he has transgressed; and<sup>10</sup> not to harden his heart, as the hearts of those were hardened who raised up sedition against Moses the servant of God: whose punishment was manifest unto all men; for they went down alive<sup>11</sup> into the grave, death swallowed them up. Pharaoh<sup>12</sup> and his host, and all the rulers of Egypt, their chariots also, and their horsemen, were for no other cause drowned in the bottom of the Red Sea, and perished; but because they hardened their foolish hearts, after so many signs done in the land of Egypt by Moses the servant of God.

L.II. Beloved, God is not indigent of any thing; nor does he demand any thing of us, but that we should confess our sins unto him. For so says the <sup>13</sup>holy David, *"I will confess unto the LORD, and it shall please him better than a young bullock that hath horns and hoofs. Let the poor see it and be glad."* And again he saith, <sup>15</sup>*Offer unto God the sacrifice of praise, and pay thy vows unto the Most Highst. And call upon me in the day of trouble,*

<sup>6</sup> See Junius in loc.

<sup>9</sup> Walk according to; live in.  
<sup>12</sup> Exod. iv. <sup>13</sup> Chosen.

<sup>7</sup> Chief leaders.

<sup>10</sup> Rather than.  
<sup>14</sup> Psal. lxi. 31.

<sup>8</sup> They ought.

<sup>11</sup> Numb. xvi.  
<sup>15</sup> Psal. l. 14.

*and I will deliver thee, and thou shalt glorify me.  
'The sacrifice of God is a broken spirit.*

LIII. Ye know, Beloved, ye know full well, the Holy Scriptures; and have thoroughly searched into the oracles of God: call them, therefore, to your remembrance: for when Moses went up into the Mount, and tarried there forty days and forty nights in fasting and humiliation, God said unto him, *Arise, Moses<sup>1</sup>, get thee down quickly from hence; for thy people whom thou broughtest out of the land of Egypt have committed wickedness: they have soon transgressed the way that I commanded them, and have made to themselves graven images. And the LORD said unto him, I have spoken unto thee several times<sup>2</sup>, saying, I have seen this people, and behold it is a stiff-necked people: let me therefore destroy them, and put out their names from under heaven: and I will make unto thee a great and a wonderful nation, that shall be much larger<sup>3</sup> than this. But Moses said, Not so LORD: forgive now this people their sin; or if thou wilt not, blot me also out of the book of the living.* O admirable charity! O insuperable perfection! the servant speaks freely to his LORD: he beseeches him either to forgive the people, or to destroy<sup>4</sup> him together with them.

LIV. Who is there among you that is generous? Who that is compassionate? Who that has any charity? Let him say, If this sedition, this contention, and these schisms, be upon my account, I am ready to depart; to go away whithersoever ye please; and do whatsoever ye<sup>5</sup> shall

<sup>1</sup> Psal. li. 17.

<sup>2</sup> *Once and twice.*

<sup>3</sup> Blot out.

<sup>4</sup> Exod. xxxii. Deuter. ix.

<sup>5</sup> *More, greater.*

<sup>6</sup> The multitude.

command me: only let the flock of Christ be in peace with the elders that are set over it. He that shall do this shall get to himself a very great honour in the LORD; and there' is no place but what will be ready to receive him: *for the earth is the LORD's, and the fullness thereof*<sup>7</sup>. These things they who have their conversation towards God, not to be repented of, both have done and will always be ready to do.

LV. Nay, and even the Gentiles themselves have given us examples of this kind: for we read how many kings and princes, in times of pestilence, being warned by their oracles, have given up themselves unto death, that by their own blood they might deliver their country<sup>10</sup> from destruction. Others<sup>11</sup> have forsaken their cities, that so they might put an end to the seditions of them. We know how many, among ourselves, have given up themselves unto bonds, that thereby they might free others from them: others have sold themselves into bondage, that they might feed<sup>12</sup> their brethren with the price of themselves: and even many women, being strengthened by the grace of God, have done many glorious and manly things on such occasions. The blessed Judith<sup>13</sup>, when her city was besieged, desired the elders that they would suffer her to go into the camp of their enemies<sup>14</sup>, and she went out exposing herself to danger, for the love she bare to her country and her people that were besieged; and the LORD delivered Holofernes into the hands of a woman. Nor did Esther<sup>15</sup>, being perfect in faith, expose herself to any less hazard, for the delivery

---

<sup>7</sup> Every place.

<sup>8</sup> Psal. xxiv.

<sup>9</sup> But that we may bring the example of heathens.

<sup>10</sup> Citizens.

<sup>11</sup> Many.

<sup>12</sup> Others.

<sup>13</sup> Judith, viii. ix. x. xiii.

<sup>14</sup> The strangers.

<sup>15</sup> Esther, vii. viii.

of the twelve tribes of Israel in danger of being destroyed; for, by fasting and humbling herself, she entreated the great Maker of all things, the God of Spirits<sup>1</sup>, so that, beholding the humility of her soul, he delivered the people for whose sake she was in peril.

LVI. Wherefore let us also pray for such as are fallen into sin<sup>2</sup>: that, being endued with humility and moderation, they may submit not unto us, but to the will of God. For by this means, <sup>3</sup>they shall obtain a fruitful and perfect remembrance, with mercy, both in our prayers to God, and in our mention of them before his saints<sup>4</sup>. Let us receive correction, at which no man ought to repine. Beloved, the reproof, and the correction, which we exercise towards one another is good, and exceedingly profitable; for it unites us the more closely to the will of God. For so says the Holy Scripture, <sup>5</sup>*The LORD corrected me; but he did not deliver me over unto death.* <sup>6</sup>*For whom the LORD loveth he chasteneth, and scourgeth every son whom he receiveth.* <sup>7</sup>*The righteous, saith he, shall instruct me, in mercy, and reprove me; but let not oil of sinners make fat my head.* And again he saith, <sup>8</sup>*Happy is the man whom God correcteth; therefore despise not thou the chastening of the Almighty.* For he maketh sore and bindeth up; he woundeth and his hands make whole. He shall deliver thee in six troubles; yea, in seven there shall no evil touch thee. In famine, he shall redeem thee from death; and in war, from the power of the sword. Thou shalt be hid from the scourge of the tongue; neither shalt thou be afraid of destruction when it cometh. Thou

<sup>1</sup> Ages; who.

<sup>2</sup> There shall be to them.

<sup>3</sup> Psal. cxviii. 18.

<sup>7</sup> Psal. cxli. 5.

<sup>2</sup> Via, That of schism.

<sup>4</sup> i. e. Our fellow-christians.

<sup>6</sup> Prov. iii. 11.

<sup>8</sup> Job v. 17, &c.

*shalt laugh at the wicked and sinners; neither shalt thou be afraid of the beasts of the earth. The wild beasts shall be at peace with thee: then shalt thou know that thy house shall be in peace; and the habitation of thy tabernacle shall not err. Thou shalt know also that thy seed shall be great, and thy offspring as the grass of the earth. Thou shalt come to thy grave as the ripe corn that is taken in due time, like as a shock of corn cometh in in its season.* Ye see, Beloved; how there shall be a defence to those that are corrected of the LORD: for, being a good instructor, he is willing to admonish us by his holy discipline.

LVII. Do ye, therefore, who laid the first foundation of this sedition, submit yourselves unto your priests<sup>9</sup>; and be instructed unto repentance, bending the knees of your hearts. Learn to be subject, laying aside all proud and arrogant boasting of your tongues; for it is better for you to be found little, and approved, in the sheepfold of Christ<sup>10</sup>, than to seem to yourselves better than others, and be cast out of his fold<sup>11</sup>. For thus speaks the excellent and all virtuous Wisdom, *"Behold, I will pour out the word of my spirit upon you; I will make known my speech unto you—Because I called, and ye would not hear; I stretched out my words, and ye regarded not: but ye have set at nought all my counsel, and would none of my reproof. I will also laugh at your calamity, and mock when your fear cometh. When your fear cometh as desolation, and your destruction as a whirlwind; when distress and anguish cometh upon you; then shall ye call upon me, but I will not hear you. The wicked shall seek me, but they shall not find me; for that they hated knowledge, and did not*

<sup>9</sup> Elders.

<sup>11</sup> See Coteler in loc.

<sup>10</sup> See Junius in loc.

<sup>12</sup> Prov. i. 23. &c.

*seek the fear of the LORD. They would not hearken unto my counsel; they despised all my reproof: therefore shall they eat of the fruit of their own ways, and be filled with their own wickedness.*

• • • • •  
• • • • •  
• • • • •

LVIII. Now God, the inspector of all things, the Father<sup>1</sup> of Spirits, and the Lord of all flesh—who hath chosen our Lord Jesus Christ, and us by him to be his peculiar people—grant to every soul of man that calleth upon his glorious and holy name faith, fear, peace, long-suffering, patience, temperance, holiness, and sobriety, unto all well-pleasing<sup>2</sup> in his sight; through our high priest and protector Jesus Christ; by whom be glory, and majesty, and power, and honour, unto Him, now and for evermore. Amen.

LIX. The messengers whom we have sent unto you—Claudius Ephebus, and Valerius Bito, with Fortunatus—send back to us again, with all speed, in peace and with joy, that they may the sooner acquaint us with your peace and concord, so much prayed for and desired by us; and that we may rejoice in your good order.

LX. The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you, and with all that are any where called by God through him: to whom be honour, and glory, and might, and majesty, and eternal dominion, by Christ Jesus<sup>3</sup>, from everlasting to everlasting. Amen.

---

<sup>1</sup> Master.

<sup>2</sup> To his name.

<sup>3</sup> Him.

CONTENTS

OF

ST. POLYCARP'S EPISTLE

TO THE PHILIPPIANS.

---

After the SALUTATION,

1. *HE commends the PHILIPPIANS, for their respect to those who suffered for the Gospel, and for their own Faith and Piety. I.*
2. *He exhorts them to continue in both ; and that, particularly, from the consideration of the Resurrection and Judgment to come. II.*  
*For their better accomplishing whereof, he*
3. *Advises them to call to mind the Doctrine which ST. PAUL had taught them, whilst he was in person among them, and after wrote to them in his Epistle. III.*

*The Sum of all which he now goes on particularly to set before them :*

I. AS TO PRACTICAL DUTIES.

1. *Faith, Hope, Charity. III.*
2. *Against Covetousness. IV.*
3. *The Duties of Husbands, Wives, Widows. Ib.*
4. *Of Deacons, Young Men, Virgins. V.*
5. *Of Presbyters. VI.*

*All which he again enforces with the consideration of that Account we must one day give to GOD of all our Actions.*

II. AS TO MATTERS OF FAITH.

1. *What we are to believe concerning our Saviour CHRIST, his Nature, and Sufferings. VII.*
2. *Of the Future Resurrection and Judgment. Ib.*



## CONTENTS.

*Which being thus set forth, he finally exhorts them,*

1. *To Prayer.* VII.

2. *To Steadfastness in their Faith.* VIII.

*Enforced from the Examples of the Patience and Constancy,  
Of our Saviour CHRIST.* Ib.

*Of his Apostles and Saints.* IX.

3. *To Carefulness in all Well-doing.* X.

*And, more particularly yet, from the Miscarriage of VALENS,  
who had been a Presbyter among them, he exhorts them,*

4. *To beware of Covetousness.* XI.

5. *Not to be too severe towards such Persons, either in their  
Censures of them, or Behaviour towards them.* XII.

*He prays for them; and then exhorts them,*

6. *To pray for all others.* Ib.

*And having thus done with what was instructive of his Epistle,  
he advertises them of his sending IGNATIUS's Epistles to  
them.* XIII.

*And desires an Account of him from them.* XIV.

*And, Lastly, He recommends CRESCENS, by whom he wrote this  
Epistle, together with his Sister, to their favour and assist-  
ance.* Ib.

THE  
EPISTLE OF ST. POLYCARP  
TO  
THE PHILIPPIANS.

---

POLYCARP, and the PRESBYTERS that are with him, to the Church of God which is<sup>1</sup> at PHILIPPI: Mercy unto you, and Peace, from God Almighty, and the Lord Jesus Christ our Saviour, be multiplied.

I. **I** REJOICE greatly with you in our Lord Jesus Christ, that ye received the images of a true love, and accompanied, as it behoved you, those who are in bonds, becoming saints; which are the crowns of such as are truly chosen by God and our Lord: as also that the root<sup>2</sup> of the faith, which was preached from ancient times, remains firm in you to this day; and brings forth fruit to our Lord Jesus Christ, who suffered himself to be brought even to the death for our sins. <sup>3</sup>Whom God hath raised up, having loosed the pains of death: <sup>4</sup>whom, having not seen, ye love; in whom, though now ye see him not, yet believing, ye rejoice with joy unspeakable and full of glory, into which many desire to enter; knowing that by grace ye are saved<sup>5</sup>, not by works, but by the will of God, through Jesus Christ.

II. <sup>6</sup>Wherefore, girding up the loins of your mind; <sup>7</sup>serve the Lord with fear, and in truth;

---

<sup>1</sup> *Sejourneeth.*

<sup>4</sup> 1 Pet. i. 8.

<sup>2</sup> Firm root remains in you.

<sup>5</sup> Eph. ii. 8.

<sup>6</sup> 1 Pet. i. 13.

<sup>3</sup> Acts ii. 24.

<sup>7</sup> Psal. ii. 11.

laying aside all empty and vain speech, and the error of many; <sup>1</sup>*believing in him that raised up our Lord Jesus Christ from the dead, and hath given him glory and a throne at his right hand.* To whom all things are made subject, <sup>2</sup>*both that are in heaven, and that are in earth;* whom every living<sup>3</sup> creature shall worship; who shall come to be the judge of the quick and dead; whose blood God shall require of them that believe not in him. But he that raised Christ<sup>4</sup> up from the dead, shall also raise up us in like manner, if we do his will, and walk according<sup>5</sup> to his commandments; and love those things which he loved; abstaining from all unrighteousness<sup>6</sup>, *inordinate*<sup>7</sup> affection, and love of money, from evil speaking, false witness; not rendering evil for evil or railing for railing, or striking for striking, or cursing for cursing; but remembering what the LORD has taught<sup>8</sup> us, saying, <sup>9</sup>*Judge not, and ye shall not be judged*<sup>10</sup>; *forgive and ye shall be forgiven.* Be ye merciful, and ye shall obtain mercy: *for with the same measure that ye mete withal, it shall be measured to you again.* And again, <sup>11</sup>*Blessed are the poor, and they that are persecuted for righteousness' sake; for theirs is the kingdom of God.*

III. These things, my Brethren, I took not the liberty of myself to write unto you concerning righteousness, but you yourselves before encouraged me to it; for neither can I, nor any other such as I am, come up to the wisdom of the blessed and renowned Paul, who, being himself in person with those who then lived, did with all

<sup>1</sup> 1 Pet. i. 21.<sup>2</sup> Phil. ii. 10.<sup>3</sup> Breath.<sup>4</sup> Him.<sup>5</sup> In.<sup>6</sup> Injustice.<sup>7</sup> Eph. iv. 19.

Coloss. iii. 5. 1 Pet. iii. 9.

<sup>8</sup> Said to us teaching.<sup>9</sup> Luke vi. 37.<sup>10</sup> Matt. vii. 1.<sup>11</sup> Matt. v.-3. 10. Luke vi. 10.

exactness and soundness teach the word<sup>13</sup> of truth; and, being gone from you, wrote an Epistle<sup>14</sup> to you; into which if you look, you will be able to edify yourselves in the faith that has been delivered unto you, which is the mother of us all; being followed with hope, and led on by a general love, both towards God and towards Christ, and towards our neighbour. For if any man has<sup>15</sup> these things, he has fulfilled the law of righteousness; for he that has charity is far from all sin.

IV. But the *love of money is the root<sup>16</sup> of all evil*. Knowing therefore that as we brought *nothing into this world, so neither may we carry any thing out<sup>17</sup>*; let us arm<sup>18</sup> ourselves with the armour of righteousness, and teach ourselves first to walk according to the commandments of the Lord; and then your wives to walk likewise<sup>19</sup> according to the faith that is given to them, in<sup>20</sup> charity and in purity; loving their own husbands with all sincerity<sup>21</sup>, and all others alike with all temperance; and to bring up their children in the instruction and<sup>22</sup> fear of the Lord. The widows likewise teach that they be sober as to what concerns the faith of the Lord; praying always for all men; being far from all detraction, evil-speaking, false witness; from covetousness, and from all evil; knowing that they are the altars of God, who<sup>23</sup> sees all blemishes, and from whom nothing is hid; who searches out the very reasonings and thoughts, and secrets of our hearts.

V. Knowing therefore that God is not mocked, we ought to walk worthy both of his command,

<sup>13</sup> *περί ἀληθείας, concerning truth.*

<sup>14</sup> *Epistles. Vid. Annot. Coteler. in loc.*

<sup>16</sup> *Beginning of all troubles or difficulties. χαλεπών.*

<sup>18</sup> *Be armed.*

<sup>19</sup> *In.*

<sup>21</sup> *Truth.*

<sup>22</sup> *Of the.*

<sup>15</sup> *Be within.*

<sup>17</sup> *1 Tim. vi. 7.*

<sup>20</sup> *Love.*

<sup>23</sup> *And that he.*

and of his glory. Also the deacons must be blameless before him<sup>1</sup>, as the ministers of God in Christ, and not of men: not false accusers, nor double-tongued; not lovers of money, but moderate<sup>2</sup> in all things; compassionate, careful; walking according to the truth of the Lord, who was the servant of all; whom if we please in this present world, we shall also be made partakers of that which is to come, according as he has promised to us, that he will raise us from the dead; and that if we shall walk worthy of him, we shall also reign together with him, if we believe. In like manner the younger men must be unblamable in all things: above all, taking care of their purity, and to restrain themselves from all evil. For it is good to be cut off from the lusts that are in the world; because every such *'lust warreth against the spirit: and<sup>4</sup> neither fornicators, nor effeminate, nor abusers of themselves with mankind, shall inherit the kingdom of God; nor they who do such things as are foolish and unreasonable. Wherefore ye must needs abstain from all these things; being subject to the priests<sup>5</sup> and deacons, as unto God and Christ. The virgins admonish to walk in a spotless and pure conscience.*

VI. And let the elders<sup>6</sup> be compassionate and merciful towards all; turning<sup>7</sup> them from their errors; seeking out those that are weak; not forgetting the widows, the fatherless, and the poor; but always *providing what is good both in the sight of God and man<sup>8</sup>*: abstaining from all wrath, respect of persons, and unrighteous judgment; and especially being free from all covetousness:

---

<sup>1</sup> His righteousness.

<sup>4</sup> 1 Cor. vi. 9, 10.

<sup>7</sup> Ezek. xxxiv. 4.

<sup>2</sup> Continent.

<sup>5</sup> Elders.

<sup>8</sup> Rom. xii. 17.

<sup>3</sup> 1 Pet. ii. 11.

<sup>6</sup> Presbyters.

not easy<sup>1</sup> to believe any thing against any; not severe in judgment; knowing that we are all debtors in point of sin. If therefore we pray to the Lord that he would forgive us, we ought also to forgive others: for we are all in the *sight of our Lord and God*; and *must all stand before the judgment-seat of Christ*<sup>2</sup>; and shall every one give an account<sup>3</sup> of himself. Let us, therefore, serve him in fear, and with all reverence, as both himself hath commanded, and as the Apostles who have preached the Gospel unto us, and the Prophets who have foretold the coming of our Lord, have taught us; being zealous of what is good; abstaining from all offence and from false brethren, and from those who bear the name of Christ in hypocrisy, who deceive vain men.

VII. *For whosoever does not confess that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh, he is antichrist*<sup>4</sup>; and whoever does not confess<sup>5</sup> his suffering upon the cross, is from the devil: and whosoever perverts the oracles of the Lord to his own lusts; and says, that there shall neither be any resurrection nor judgment, he is the first-born of Satan. Wherefore, leaving the vanity of many, and their false doctrines, let us return to the word that was delivered to us from the beginning; *watching unto prayer*<sup>6</sup>, and persevering in fasting: with supplication beseeching the all-seeing God *not to lead us into temptation*<sup>7</sup>; as the Lord hath said, *The spirit truly is willing, but the flesh is weak*<sup>8</sup>.

VIII. Let us, therefore, without ceasing, hold steadfastly to Him who is our hope, and the earnest of our righteousness, even Jesus Christ;

---

<sup>1</sup> Swiftly believing.    <sup>2</sup> Matt. xii. 36.    Rom. iv. 10.    2 Cor. v. 10.

<sup>3</sup> For.    <sup>4</sup> 1 John, iv. 3.    <sup>5</sup> The martyrdom of the cross.

<sup>6</sup> 1 Pet. iv. 7.    <sup>7</sup> Matt. vi. 13.    <sup>8</sup> Matt. xxvi. 41.

*who' his own self bare our sins in his own body on the tree; who did no sin, neither was guile found in his mouth; but suffered all for us that we might live through<sup>1</sup> him. Let us, therefore, imitate his patience: and if we suffer for his name, let us glorify him; for this example he has given us by himself, and so have we believed.*

IX. Wherefore I exhort all of you that ye obey the word of righteousness, and exercise all patience; which ye have seen set forth before your eyes, not only in the blessed Ignatius, and Zozimus, and Rufus, but in others among yourselves, and in Paul himself, and the rest of the Apostles. Being confident<sup>2</sup> of this, that all these have not run in vain, but in faith and righteousness, and are gone to the place that was due to them from the Lord; with whom also they suffered: for they loved not this present world, but him who died, and was raised again by God for us.

X. Stand therefore in these things, and follow the example of the LORD; being firm and immutable in the faith, lovers of the brotherhood, lovers of one another; 'companions together in the truth, 'being kind and gentle towards each other, despising none. When it is in your power to do good, defer it not; for <sup>3</sup>*Charity delivereth from death. Be all of you subject one to another, having<sup>7</sup> your conversation honest<sup>8</sup> among the Gentiles; that by your good works, both ye yourselves may receive praise, and the Lord may not be blasphemed through you<sup>9</sup>. But woe be to him*

<sup>1</sup> 1 Pet. ii. 22, 24.

<sup>2</sup> Persuaded.

<sup>3</sup> Yielding to each other the mildness of the Lord.

<sup>6</sup> Tobit, xii. 9.

<sup>8</sup> Unreprovable.

<sup>9</sup> In.—1 Pet. iii. 14, &c.

<sup>4</sup> Associated in truth.

<sup>7</sup> 1 Pet. ii. 12.

<sup>9</sup> Rom. ii. 24. Titus, ii. 5.

by whom the name of the Lord is blasphemed. Therefore teach all men sobriety, in which do ye also exercise yourselves.

XI. I am greatly afflicted for Valens, who was once a presbyter among you, that he should so little understand the place that was given to him in the Church. Wherefore I admonish you that ye abstain from covetousness<sup>1</sup>; and that ye be chaste, and true of speech. *Keep yourselves from all evil*<sup>2</sup>. For he that in these things cannot govern himself, how shall he be able to prescribe them to another? If a man does not keep himself from covetousness<sup>3</sup>, he shall be polluted with idolatry, and be judged as if he were a Gentile. But who of you are ignorant of the judgment of God? *Do we not know that the saints shall judge the world*, as Paul teaches. But I have neither perceived nor heard any thing of this kind in you among whom the blessed Paul laboured<sup>4</sup>, and who are named in the beginning of this Epistle: for he glories of you, in all the churches, who then only knew God; for we did not then know him. Wherefore, my Brethren, I am exceedingly sorry both for him, and for his wife; to whom God grant a true repentance. And be ye also moderate upon this occasion; and look not upon such as enemies, but call them back as suffering and erring members, that ye may save your whole body; for by so doing, ye shall edify your own selves.

XII. For I trust that ye are well exercised in the Holy Scriptures, and that nothing is hid from you: but at present it is not granted unto me to

<sup>1</sup> Concupiscence, or immoderate and filthy lusts. So Dr. Hammond on Rom. i. 29. i.      <sup>2</sup> 1 Thess. v. 22. Eph. v. 5. Coloss. ii. 5.

<sup>3</sup> As before, Dr. Hammond on 1 Cor. v. 10. i.

<sup>4</sup> 1 Cor. vi. 2.

<sup>5</sup> Phil. i.



practise that which is written<sup>1</sup>, *Be angry and sin not*; and again, *Let not the sun go down upon your wrath*. Blessed is he that believeth and remembereth these things, which also I trust you do. Now the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ; and he himself who is our everlasting high priest, the Son of God, even Jesus Christ, build you up in faith and in truth, and in all meekness and lenity; in patience and long-suffering, in forbearance and chastity: and grant unto you a lot and portion among his saints, and us with you, and to all that are under the heavens, who shall believe in our Lord Jesus Christ, and in his Father, *who<sup>2</sup> raised him from the dead*. Pray for all the saints; pray also for *kings<sup>3</sup> and<sup>4</sup> all that are in authority*; and for those who persecute you and hate you; and for the enemies of the cross; that your fruit may be manifest in all, and that ye may be perfect in Christ<sup>5</sup>.

XIII. Ye wrote to me<sup>6</sup>, both ye, and also Ignatius, that if any one went from hence into Syria, he should bring your letters with him; which also I will take care of, as soon as I shall have a convenient opportunity; either by myself, or him whom I shall send upon your account. The Epistles of Ignatius which he wrote<sup>7</sup> unto us, together with what others of his have come to our hands, we have sent to you, according to your order, which are subjoined to this Epistle; by which ye may be greatly profited; for they treat of faith and patience, and of all things that pertain to edification in<sup>8</sup> the Lord Jesus.

<sup>1</sup> Said in these Scriptures. Psalm, iv. 5. Eph. iv. 26.

<sup>2</sup> Gal. i. 1.

<sup>3</sup> 1 Tim. ii. 1, 2.

<sup>4</sup> Powers and princes.

<sup>5</sup> Him.

<sup>6</sup> See Annot. Usser. in loc.

<sup>7</sup> i. e. To himself and to the Church of Smyrna.

<sup>8</sup> Our Lord.

XIV. What you know certainly of Ignatius, and those that are with him, signify unto us.

These things have I written unto you by Crescens, whom by this present Epistle I have recommended to you, and do now again commend : for he has had his conversation without blame among us ; and I supposé also with you. Ye will also have regard unto his sister when she shall come unto you. Be ye safe in the Lord Jesus Christ<sup>1</sup>; and in favour with all yours. Amen.

---

<sup>1</sup> His grace be with you all. ' Amen.



CONTENTS  
OF  
ST. IGNATIUS'S EPISTLE  
TO THE EPHESIANS.

---

Chap.

*After the SALUTATION,*

- I. *HE thanks them for sending Onesimus, their Bishop, to him: whom he greatly commends; and expresses his joy to receive from him so good a character of them.*
- II. *He mentions the rest of their Members who were sent with Onesimus to him: and exhorts them to Unity, by a due subjection to their Bishop and Presbyters.*
- III. *He excuses the liberty he takes of Admonishing them, and so returns to his Advice to them;*
- IV. *Which is still the same; namely, By a due Subjection to their Bishop, to preserve Unity among themselves:*
- V. *The Benefit of which he particularly sets out to them.*
- VI. *That they ought not to respect their Bishop the less, because he is not forward in exacting it from them; but should rather honour him the more; which he also commends them for doing.*
- VII. *He warns them against Heretics; bidding them stick to their Master, Jesus Christ, whose Divine and Human Nature he declares to them.*
- VIII; IX. *He commends them for their Care to keep themselves from False Teachers; and shews them the Way to God.*
- X. *He exhorts them to Prayer; and to behave themselves unblamably towards those that are without:*
- XI, XII. *To be careful of their Salvation; to pray for himself, whose own worth he much lessens in comparison of theirs; especially,*

- XIII, XIV. *To be frequent in Public Devotion: to live in Unity, in Faith, and in Charity: and,*
- XV. *To shew forth the Truth of their Profession, by their Works:*
- XVI, XVII. *To have a Care that the Gospel of Christ be not corrupted:*
- XVIII. *Upon which occasion, he treats particularly of the Three great Mysteries of Christianity; viz. the Virginity of Mary; and the Incarnation, and Death of Christ; which he says were hid from the Devil.*
- XIX. *How the Birth of Christ was, in a most extraordinary manner, revealed to the World.*
- XX, XXI. *Of all which he promises to write more largely in a Second Epistle; and then finally undertakes for their Salvation, if they continued, as he had exhorted them, to pursue it, by Unity among themselves, and Piety towards God.*

THE  
EPISTLE OF ST. IGNATIUS

TO  
THE EPHESIANS.

---

IGNATIUS, *who is also called THEOPHORUS, to the Church which is at Ephesus in Asia, most deservedly happy; being blessed 'through the greatness and fullness' of God the Father, and predestinated before the world began, that it should be always unto an enduring and unchangeable glory; being united and chosen 'through his true passion, according to the will of the Father and Jesus Christ our God; all happiness', by Jesus Christ, and his undefiled grace.*

I. I HAVE heard<sup>1</sup> of your name, much-beloved in God, which ye have very<sup>2</sup> justly attained by a habit<sup>3</sup> of righteousness, according to the faith and love which is in Jesus Christ our Saviour; how that being followers<sup>4</sup> of God, and stirring up yourselves by the blood of Christ, ye have perfectly accomplished the work that was connatural unto you. For hearing that I came bound from Syria, for the common name and hope<sup>5</sup>, trusting through your prayers to fight with beasts at Rome; that so, by suffering<sup>6</sup>, I may become indeed the disciple of him *who gave himself to God, an offering*

---

<sup>1</sup> *In.*

<sup>2</sup> See Eph. iii. 19.

<sup>3</sup> *In.*

<sup>4</sup> *Health, Joy.*

<sup>5</sup> Received.—Vid. Epist. Interpol.

<sup>6</sup> Vol. Coteler. in loc. Comp. Gal. iv. 8.

<sup>7</sup> Pearson. Vind. Ignat. par. 2. cap. 14.

<sup>8</sup> Imitators.

<sup>9</sup> Viz. of Christ.

<sup>10</sup> Martyrdom.

*and sacrifice for us*<sup>1</sup>, [ye hastened to see me<sup>2</sup>.] I received, therefore, in the name of God, your whole multitude in Onesimus, who by inexpressible love is ours, but according to the flesh is your bishop; whom I beseech you, by Jesus Christ, to love; and that you would all strive to be like unto him. And, blessed be God, who has granted unto you, who are so worthy of him, to enjoy<sup>3</sup> such an excellent bishop.

II. For what concerns my fellow-servant Burrhus, and your most<sup>4</sup> blessed deacon in things pertaining to God, I entreat you that he may tarry longer, both for yours and your bishop's honour. And Crocus also, worthy both our God and you, whom I have received as the pattern of your love, has in all things refreshed me, as the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ shall also refresh him; together with Onesimus, and Burrhus, and Euplus, and Fronto, in<sup>5</sup> whom I have, as to your charity, seen all of you. And may I always have joy<sup>6</sup> of you, if I shall be worthy of it. It is, therefore, fitting that you should by<sup>7</sup> all means glorify Jesus Christ, who hath glorified you—that<sup>8</sup> *by a uniform obedience ye may be perfectly joined together in the same mind, and in the same judgment; and may all speak the same things concerning every thing:* and that, being subject to<sup>10</sup> your bishop, and the presbytery, ye may be wholly and thoroughly sanctified.

III. These things I prescribe to you<sup>11</sup>, not as if I were somebody extraordinary; for though I am bound for<sup>12</sup> his name, I am not yet perfect in Christ

<sup>1</sup> Eph. v. 2.

<sup>3</sup> Possess.

<sup>5</sup> By.

<sup>7</sup> In all manner of ways.

<sup>10</sup> The.

<sup>2</sup> See the old Lat. ed. of Bishop Usher.

<sup>4</sup> Blessed in all things.

<sup>6</sup> See Philem. 20. Wisd. xxx. 2.

<sup>8</sup> In one.

<sup>11</sup> Command you.

<sup>9</sup> 1 Cor. i. 10.

<sup>12</sup> In.

Jesus. But<sup>1</sup> now I begin to learn, and I speak to you as fellow-disciples together with me. For I ought to have been stirred up by you, in faith, in admonition, in patience, in long-suffering. But forasmuch as charity suffers me not to be silent towards<sup>2</sup> you, I have first taken upon me to exhort you, that ye would all run together, according to the will of God. For even Jesus Christ, our inseparable life, is sent by the will<sup>3</sup> of the Father; as the bishops, appointed unto the utmost bounds of the earth, are by the will of Jesus Christ.

IV. Wherefore<sup>4</sup> it will become you to run together according to the will of your bishop, as also ye do. For your famous<sup>5</sup> presbytery, (worthy of God!) is fitted as exactly to the bishop, as the strings are to the harp. Therefore, in your concord, and agreeing charity, Jesus Christ is sung; and every single person among you makes up the chorus: that so being all consonant in love<sup>6</sup>, and taking up the song of God, ye may in a perfect unity, with one voice, sing to the Father by Jesus Christ; to the end that he may both hear you, and perceive by your works, that ye are indeed the members of his Son: wherefore it is profitable for you to live in an unblamable unity, that so ye may always<sup>7</sup> have a fellowship with God.

V. For if I in this little time have had such a familiarity with your bishop, (I mean not a carnal, but spiritual acquaintance with him,) how much more must I think you happy who are so joined to him, as the Church is to Jesus Christ, and Jesus Christ to the Father; that so all things may agree in the same unity! Let no man deceive himself; if a man be not within the *altar*, he is deprived of

<sup>1</sup> For.<sup>2</sup> Concerning.<sup>3</sup> Mind, counsel, opinion, &c.<sup>4</sup> Whence.<sup>5</sup> Worthy to be named.<sup>6</sup> Concord. <sup>7</sup> Partake of.



the *bread* of God. For if the prayer of one or 'two be of such force, as we are told, how much more powerful shall that of the bishop and the whole church be? He therefore that does not come together into the same place with it, is<sup>1</sup> proud, and has already condemned<sup>2</sup> himself. For it is written, *God resisteth the proud*<sup>3</sup>. Let us take heed, therefore, that we do not set ourselves against the bishop, that we may be subject to God.

VI. 'The more any one sees his bishop silent, the more let him revere him. For whomsoever the master of the house sends to be over his own household, we ought in like manner to receive him as we would do him that sent him. It is, therefore, evident that we ought to look upon the bishop even as we would do upon the LORD himself. And indeed Onesimus himself does greatly commend your good order in God : that you all live according to the truth, and that no heresy dwells among you. For neither do ye hearken to any one more than to Jesus Christ, speaking to you in truth.

VII. For some there are who carry<sup>4</sup> about the name of Christ <sup>7</sup>in deceitfulness, but do things unworthy of God ; whom ye must flee<sup>5</sup>, as ye would do so many wild beasts : for they are ravening dogs, who bite secretly ; against whom ye must guard yourselves, as men hardly to be cured. There is one physician, both fleshly and spiritual ; made and not made ; God incarnate ; true life in death ; both of Mary and of God ; first passible, then impassible ; even Jesus Christ our Lord.

VIII. Wherefore let no man deceive you ; as

---

<sup>1</sup> Matt. xviii. 19.

<sup>2</sup> Judged or separated.

<sup>3</sup> And the.

<sup>7</sup> In wicked deceit.

<sup>2</sup> Is already proud and has, &c.

<sup>4</sup> James, iv. 6.

<sup>6</sup> Accustom themselves to carry.

<sup>8</sup> Avoid.

indeed neither are ye deceived, being wholly the servants of God. For inasmuch as there is no contention nor strife among you, <sup>1</sup> to trouble you, ye <sup>2</sup> must needs live according to God's will. <sup>3</sup> My soul be for yours; and I myself the expiatory offering for your Church of Ephesus, so famous throughout<sup>4</sup> the world. They that are of the flesh cannot do the works of the spirit: neither they that are of the spirit, the works of the flesh. <sup>5</sup> As he that has faith cannot be an infidel; nor he that is an infidel, have faith. But even those things which ye do according to the flesh are spiritual; forasmuch as ye do all things in Jesus Christ.

IX. Nevertheless I have heard<sup>6</sup> of some who have passed<sup>7</sup> by you, having perverse doctrine; whom ye did not suffer to sow among<sup>8</sup> you, but stopped your ears, that ye might not receive those things that were sown by them; as being<sup>9</sup> the stones of the temple of the Father, prepared for his<sup>10</sup> building, and drawn up on high by the cross of Christ, as<sup>11</sup> by an engine; using the Holy Ghost as the rope: your faith being your support; and your charity the way that leads unto God. Ye are, therefore, with all your companions in the same journey, full of God; his spiritual temples, <sup>12</sup> full of Christ, full of holiness; adorned in all things with the commands of Christ, in whom also I rejoice that I have been thought worthy by <sup>13</sup> this present Epistle to converse, and joy together with

<sup>1</sup> Which can.

<sup>2</sup> Without doubt ye live.

<sup>3</sup> Vid. Voss. Annot. in loc. Pearson. Vind. Ignat. par. ii. p. 207, 208.

<sup>4</sup> To ages.

<sup>5</sup> As neither is faith the things of infidelity, nor infidelity the things of faith.

<sup>6</sup> Known.

<sup>7</sup> Passed thither.

<sup>8</sup> Upon.

<sup>9</sup> Comp. Eph. ii. 20, 21, 22. 1 Pet. ii. 5.

<sup>10</sup> The building of God the Father.

<sup>11</sup> By the engine of the cross, &c.—Pearson. *Ib.* part ii. cap. 12.

<sup>12</sup> Carriers.

<sup>13</sup> These things I write.

you ; that with respect to the other life, ye love nothing but God only.

X. Pray also without ceasing for other men : for there is hope of repentance in them, that they may attain unto God. Let them, therefore, at least be instructed by your works, if they will be no other way. Be ye mild at their anger, humble at their boasting ; to their blasphemies, return your prayers ; to their error, your<sup>1</sup> firmness in the faith : when they are cruel, be ye gentle ; not endeavouring to imitate their ways : (let us be their brethren in all kindness and moderation, but let us be followers of the LORD : <sup>2</sup>for who was ever more unjustly used ? more destitute ? more despised ?) that so no herb of the devil may be found in you ; but ye may remain in all holiness and sobriety <sup>3</sup>both of body and spirit, in Christ Jesus.

XI. The last times <sup>4</sup>are come upon us : let us, therefore, be very reverent, and fear the long-suffering of God, that it be not to us unto condemnation. For let us either fear the wrath that is to come, or let us love the grace that we<sup>5</sup> at present enjoy ; that by<sup>6</sup> the one or other of these we may be found in Christ Jesus, unto true life. Besides<sup>7</sup> him, let nothing be worthy<sup>8</sup> of you ; <sup>9</sup>for whom also I bear about these bonds, those spiritual jewels, in which I would to God that I might arise through your prayers ; of which I entreat you to make me always partaker, that I may be found in the lot of the Christians of Ephesus, who have always agreed<sup>10</sup> with the Apostles, through<sup>11</sup> the power of Jesus Christ.

<sup>1</sup> Be ye firm.

<sup>2</sup> Who has been more, &c.

<sup>3</sup> In Jesus Christ both bodily and spiritually. 1 Cor. vii. 34.

<sup>4</sup> Remain, or For it remains.

<sup>5</sup> Is present.

<sup>6</sup> One of the two, only that we may be found, &c.

<sup>7</sup> Without him.

<sup>8</sup> Become you.

<sup>9</sup> In.

<sup>10</sup> Assented to.

<sup>11</sup> In.

XII. I know both who I am, and to whom I write : I, a person condemned ; ye, such as have obtained mercy : I, exposed to danger ; ye, confirmed against danger. Ye are the passage of those that are killed for God : the companions of Paul in the mysteries of the Gospel—the holy, the martyr<sup>1</sup>, the deservedly most happy Paul : at whose feet may I be found, when I shall have attained unto God ; who<sup>2</sup> throughout all his Epistle makes mention of you in Christ Jesus.

XIII. Let it be your care therefore to come more fully together, to the praise and glory of God. For when ye meet fully together in the same place, the powers of the devil are destroyed, and his mischief<sup>3</sup> is dissolved by the unity<sup>4</sup> of your faith. And indeed nothing is better than peace ; by which all war, both spiritual<sup>5</sup> and earthly, is abolished.

XIV. Of all which nothing is hid<sup>6</sup> from you, if ye have perfect faith and charity in Christ Jesus, which are the beginning and end of life : for the beginning is faith ; the end charity. And these two, joined<sup>6</sup> together, are of God : but all other things which concern a holy life are the consequences of these. No man professing a true faith sinneth ; neither does he who has charity hate any. The tree is made manifest by its fruit<sup>7</sup> : so they who profess themselves to be Christians are known<sup>8</sup> by what they do : for Christianity is not the work of an outward profession ; but shews itself in the power of faith, if a man be found faithful unto the end.

---

<sup>1</sup> Witnessed of.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. Coteler. in loc. Pears. Vind. Ign. Par. 2. cap. 10.

<sup>3</sup> Destruction.

<sup>4</sup> Concord.

<sup>5</sup> Of things in heaven, and of things on earth.

<sup>6</sup> Being in unity.

<sup>7</sup> Matt. xii. 33.

<sup>8</sup> Shall be seen, or made manifest.

XV. It is better for a man to hold his peace, and be—than<sup>1</sup> to say, he is a Christian, and not to be. It is good to teach; if what he says<sup>2</sup>, he does likewise. There is, therefore, one Master who spake, and it was done; and even those things which he did without speaking are worthy of the Father. He that possesses the Word of Jesus is truly able to hear his very silence, that he may be perfect; and<sup>3</sup> both do according to what he speaks, and be known by those things of which he is silent. There is nothing hid from God, but even our secrets are nigh unto Him. Let us, therefore, do all things, as becomes those who have God<sup>4</sup> dwelling in them, that we may be his temples, and He may be our God: as also He is; and will manifest himself, before our faces, by those things for<sup>5</sup> which we justly love Him.

XVI. Be not deceived, my Brethren: those that corrupt families<sup>6</sup> by adultery shall not inherit the kingdom of God. If therefore they who do this according to the flesh have suffered death<sup>7</sup>, how much more shall he die, who by his wicked doctrine corrupts the faith of God, for which Christ was crucified? He that is thus defiled<sup>8</sup> shall depart into unquenchable fire, and so shall he that hearkens<sup>9</sup> to him.

XVII. For this cause did the Lord suffer the ointment to be poured<sup>10</sup> on his head, that he might breathe the breath of immortality into his church. Be not ye, therefore, anointed with the evil savour of the doctrine of the prince of this world: Let him not take you captive from the life that is set

<sup>1</sup> Speaking, not to be.

<sup>2</sup> If he who says, does.

<sup>3</sup> That he may.

<sup>4</sup> Him.

<sup>5</sup> Out of.

<sup>6</sup> The corrupters of houses. 1 Cor. vi. 9, 10.

<sup>7</sup> 1 Cor. x. 8.

<sup>8</sup> Such a one becoming defiled.

<sup>9</sup> Hears him.

<sup>10</sup> Receive ointment. Psal. xlv. 8. cxxxii. 2.

before you. . And why are not we all wise; seeing we have received the knowledge of God, which is Jesus Christ? Why do we suffer ourselves foolishly to perish<sup>1</sup>, not considering<sup>2</sup> the gift which the LORD has truly sent to us?

XVIII. Let my life be sacrificed<sup>3</sup> for the doctrine of the cross, which is indeed a scandal to the unbelievers, but to us is salvation and life eternal. *Where is the wise man? Where is the disputer?<sup>4</sup>* Where is the boasting of those who are called wise? For our God Jesus Christ was, according to the dispensation of God, conceived<sup>5</sup> in the womb of Mary, of the seed of David, by<sup>6</sup> the Holy Ghost: he was<sup>7</sup> born, and baptized, that through his passion, he might purify water, *to the washing away of sin.*

XIX. Now the virginity of Mary, and He who was born of her, were kept in secret from the prince of this world; as was also the death of our Lord: three of the mysteries the most spoken of<sup>8</sup> throughout the world, yet done in secret<sup>9</sup> by God. How then was our Saviour manifested to the world? A star shone in heaven beyond all the other stars, and its light was inexpressible, and its novelty struck terror into men's minds. All the rest of the stars, together with the sun and moon, were the chorus to this star; but that sent out its light exceedingly above them all. And men began to be troubled<sup>10</sup> to think whence this new star<sup>11</sup> came so unlike to all the others<sup>12</sup>. Hence all the power of magic became dissolved; and every bond of wickedness was destroyed<sup>13</sup>; men's ignorancé was taken away, and the old

<sup>1</sup> Are we foolishly destroyed.

<sup>2</sup> Not knowing.

<sup>3</sup> See Dr. Smith's note in loc. 1 Cor. i. 18, 23, 24.

<sup>4</sup> 1 Cor. i. 20.

<sup>5</sup> Carried.

<sup>6</sup> But by.

<sup>7</sup> Who was.

<sup>8</sup> Mysteries of noise.

<sup>9</sup> Silence or quietness. See Rom. xvi. 25.

<sup>10</sup> There was a disorder.

<sup>11</sup> Novelty.

<sup>12</sup> Them.

<sup>13</sup> Disappeared.

kingdom abolished; God himself appearing<sup>1</sup> in the form of a man, for the renewal of eternal life. From thence began what God had prepared: from thenceforth things were disturbed; forasmuch as he designed to abolish death.

XX. But if Jesus Christ shall give me grace through your prayers, and it be his will, I purpose, in a second Epistle, which I will suddenly write unto you, to manifest to you more fully the dispensation, of which I have now begun to speak, unto the new man, which is Jesus Christ; both in his faith and charity, in his suffering and in his resurrection; especially if the Lord shall make known<sup>2</sup> unto me, that ye all by name come together in common, in one faith, and in one Jesus Christ, (who was of the race of David according to the flesh,) the Son of man, and Son of God; obeying<sup>3</sup> your Bishop and the Presbytery with an entire affection<sup>4</sup>; breaking one and the same *Bread*, which is the medicine of immortality, our antidote that we should not die, but live for ever in Christ Jesus.

XXI. My soul be for yours, and theirs whom ye have sent, to the glory of God, even unto Smyrna, from whence also I write to you; giving thanks unto the Lord; and loving Polycarp even as I do you. Remember me, as Jesus Christ does remember you. Pray for the Church which is in Syria, from whence I am carried bound to Rome; being the least of all the faithful which are there, as I have been thought worthy to be found to the glory of God. Fare ye well in God the Father, and in Jesus Christ our common hope. Amen.

*To the EPHESIANS.*

<sup>1</sup> Being made manifest.

<sup>3</sup> That ye may obey.

<sup>2</sup> Reveal.

<sup>4</sup> Mind.

CONTENTS  
OF  
ST. IGNATIUS'S EPISTLE  
TO THE MAGNESIANS.

---

Chap. *After the SALUTATION; he declares,*

- I. *THE Occasion of his Writing to them, and to the other Churches that were about them; and then mentions,*
- II. *The Arrival of Damas, their Bishop, and of the rest whom they had sent unto him.*
- III. *He exhorts them to all due Reverence and Subjection to their Bishop; notwithstanding he<sup>1</sup> was but a Young Man, and had not long been in that great Office among them;*
- IV. *Which also they must shew, if they will be Christians indeed.*
- V. *That we must all die, in a little time; and then be for ever either happy, or miserable.*
- VI. *He exhorts them, therefore, to live Orderly, and to maintain a Unity among each other:*
- VII. *And that, especially, by a due Subjection to their Bishop and Presbyters.*
- VIII, IX, X. *He cautions them against false Opinions; especially those of Ebion<sup>2</sup> and the Judaizing Christians:*
- XI. *He apologizes for this Advice, which he gave, not to Reprove, but to Forewarn them;*
- XII. *Whose Faith and Piety he here greatly commends; and,*
- XIII. *Exhorts them to go on, and increase in both.*
- XIV. *He desires their Prayers both for himself, and his Church at Antioch;*
- XV. *And then concludes all with the Salutations of those who were present with him at the Writing of this Epistle.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Coteler. in loc.

<sup>2</sup> Pearson. Vind. Ign. par. ii. cap. 4.



THE  
EPISTLE OF ST. IGNATIUS  
TO  
THE MAGNESIANS.

---

*IGNATIUS, who is also called THEOPHORUS, to the blessed [Church<sup>1</sup>] by<sup>2</sup> the grace of God the Father in Jesus Christ our Saviour; in whom I salute the Church which is at MAGNESIA near the Mæander, and wish it all joy, in God the Father, and in Jesus Christ.*

I. **W**HEN I heard of your well-ordered love and charity in<sup>3</sup> God, being full of joy, I desired much to speak unto you in the faith of Jesus Christ. For having been thought worthy to obtain a most excellent name<sup>4</sup>, in the bonds which I carryabout<sup>5</sup>, I salute<sup>6</sup> the Churches; wishing in them a union both of the body and spirit of Jesus Christ, our eternal life: as also of faith and charity, to which nothing is preferred; but especially of Jesus and the Father; in whom, if we undergo<sup>7</sup> all the injuries of the prince of this present world and escape, we shall enjoy God.

II. Seeing then I have been judged worthy to see you, by Damas, your most excellent<sup>8</sup> bishop; and by your very worthy presbyters, Bassus and Apollonius; and by my fellow-servant Sotio, the

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Interpr. Lat. Epist. Interpol.

<sup>2</sup> In.

<sup>3</sup> According to.

<sup>4</sup> Been vouchsafed a name carrying a great deal of divinity in it.

<sup>5</sup> See Bishop Pearson. Vind. Ign. par. ii. cap. 12. p. 146.

<sup>6</sup> Sing, commend.

<sup>7</sup> Undergoing, escaping.

<sup>8</sup> Worthy of God.

deacon, in whom I rejoice<sup>1</sup>, forasmuch as he is subject unto his Bishop as to the grace of God, and to the Presbytery as to the law of Jesus Christ; I determined to write unto you<sup>2</sup>.

III. Wherefore it will become you also not<sup>3</sup> to use your Bishop too familiarly upon the account of his youth, but to yield all reverence to him according to the power of God the Father—as also I perceive that your holy Presbyters do—not considering his age, which indeed to appearance is young<sup>4</sup>, but, as becomes those who are prudent in God, submitting to him, or rather not to him, but to the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Bishop of us all. It will, therefore, behove<sup>5</sup> you, with all sincerity<sup>6</sup>, to obey your Bishop, in honour of Him whose pleasure it is<sup>7</sup> that ye should do so; because he that does not do so deceives not the Bishop whom he sees, but affronts<sup>8</sup> Him that is invisible: for whatsoever of this kind is done, it reflects not upon man<sup>10</sup>, but upon God, who knows the secrets of our hearts.

IV. It is, therefore, fitting that we should not only be called Christians, but be so. As some call, indeed, their governor Bishop; but yet do all things without him: but I can never think that such as these have a good conscience, seeing they are not gathered together thoroughly<sup>11</sup> according to God's commandment.

V. Seeing then all things have an end, there are these two indifferently<sup>12</sup> set before us, death and life: And every one shall depart unto his

<sup>1</sup> Whom may I enjoy.

<sup>2</sup> Apud Vet. Lat. Interpr. *Glorificato Deum Patrem D. nostri Jesu Christi.*

<sup>3</sup> Vid. Voss. Annot. in loc. Pearson. Præf. ad Vind. Ignat.

<sup>4</sup> Seeming youthful state.

<sup>5</sup> It is becoming.

<sup>6</sup> Without any hypocrisy.

<sup>7</sup> Who willeth it.

<sup>8</sup> Deludes.

<sup>9</sup> Vid. Epist. Interp. ad loc.

<sup>10</sup> Flesh.

<sup>11</sup> Firmly.

<sup>12</sup> Together.

proper place. For there are two sorts of coins, the one of God, the other of the world; and each of these has its proper inscription engraven<sup>1</sup> upon it—So also is it here: The unbelievers are of this world; but the faithful, through charity, have the character of God the Father by Jesus Christ: by whom if we are not readily disposed to die, after the likeness of his passion, his life is not in us.

VI. Forasmuch, therefore, as I have in the persons before-mentioned seen all of you<sup>2</sup> in faith and charity, I exhort you, that ye study to do all things in a divine concord<sup>3</sup>: your Bishop presiding in the place of God; your Presbyters in the place of the Council of the Apostles; and your Deacons, most dear<sup>4</sup> to me, being intrusted with the ministry of Jesus Christ, who was with the Father before all ages, and appeared<sup>5</sup> in the end to us. Wherefore, taking the same holy course<sup>6</sup>, see that ye all reverence one another; and let no one look upon his neighbour after the flesh; but do you all mutually love each other in Jesus Christ. Let there be nothing that may be able to make a division among you; but be ye united to your Bishop, and those who preside over you, to be your pattern and direction in the way to immortality.

VII. As therefore the Lord did nothing without the Father being united to him<sup>7</sup>—neither by himself, nor yet by his Apostles—so neither do ye any thing without your Bishop and Presbyters: neither endeavour to let any thing appear rational to yourselves apart; but, being come together

---

<sup>1</sup> Character set.

<sup>2</sup> Your whole multitude.

<sup>3</sup> The concord of God.

<sup>4</sup> Sweet.

<sup>5</sup> Was made manifest. Heb. ix. 26.

<sup>6</sup> Habit of God.

<sup>7</sup> John x. 30.—xiv. 11, 12.—xvii. 21, 22.

into the same place, have one common <sup>1</sup>prayer, one supplication, one mind, one hope, in charity, and in joy undefiled. There is one Lord Jesus Christ, than whom nothing is better.—Wherefore come <sup>2</sup>ye all together as unto one temple of God; as to one altar, as to one Jesus Christ who proceeded from one Father<sup>3</sup>, and exists in one, and is returned to one.

VIII. Be not deceived with strange <sup>4</sup>doctrines, nor with old fables, which are unprofitable: for if we still continue to live according to the Jewish law, we do confess ourselves not to have received grace. For even the most holy <sup>5</sup>Prophets lived according to Christ Jesus: and for this cause were they persecuted, being inspired by his grace, to convince <sup>6</sup>the unbelievers and disobedient that there is one God, who has manifested himself by Jesus Christ his Son; who is his Eternal Word<sup>7</sup>, (not coming forth from silence,) who in all things pleased Him that sent him.

IX. Wherefore, if they who were brought up in these ancient laws<sup>8</sup> came nevertheless to the newness of hope; no longer observing sabbaths, but keeping<sup>9</sup> the Lord's day—in which also our life is sprung up by him, and through his death, whom<sup>10</sup> yet some deny; by which mystery we have been brought <sup>11</sup>to believe, and therefore wait that we may be found the disciples of Jesus Christ, our only master—how shall we be able to live different from <sup>12</sup>him, whose disciples the very Prophets themselves being, did by the Spirit expect him as their master. And therefore he whom

<sup>1</sup> Eph. iv. 3, 4, 5, 6.

<sup>4</sup> Heterodox.

<sup>7</sup> John i. 1.

<sup>10</sup> Or, which.

<sup>2</sup> Run.

<sup>5</sup> Most divine.

<sup>8</sup> Things.

<sup>11</sup> Received.

<sup>3</sup> John xvi. 28.

<sup>6</sup> Fully to satisfy.

<sup>9</sup> Or, living according to.

<sup>12</sup> Without.

they justly waited for, being come, raised them up from the dead<sup>1</sup>.

X. Let us not then be insensible of his goodness; for should he have dealt with us according to our works<sup>2</sup>, we had not now had a being. Wherefore, being become his disciples, let us learn to live according to the rules of Christianity: for whosoever is called by any other name besides<sup>3</sup> this, he is not of God. Lay aside, therefore, the old, and sour, and evil, leaven; and be ye changed into the new leaven, which is Jesus Christ. Be ye salted in him, lest any one among you should be corrupted; for by your Saviour ye shall be judged<sup>4</sup>. It is absurd to name Jesus Christ, and to Judaize. For the Christian religion did not embrace<sup>5</sup> the Jewish, but the Jewish the Christian; that so every tongue that believed might be gathered together unto God.

XI. These things, my Beloved, I write unto you, not that I know of any among you that lie<sup>6</sup> under this error: but, as one of the least among<sup>7</sup> you, I am desirous to forewarn you that ye fall not into the snares<sup>8</sup> of vain doctrine; but that ye be fully instructed in the birth, and suffering, and resurrection, of Jesus Christ our hope; which was accomplished in the time of the government of Pontius Pilate, and that most truly and certainly<sup>9</sup>; and from which God forbid that any among you should be turned aside.

XII. May I, therefore, have joy of you in all things, if I shall be worthy of it. For though I am bound, yet I am not worthy to be compared

<sup>1</sup> Mat. xxvii. 52.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. Annot. Voss. in loc. *Should he have imitated our works. Gr.*

<sup>3</sup> More than.

<sup>4</sup> Convicted, overthrown.

<sup>5</sup> Believe.

<sup>6</sup> Have yourselves so.

<sup>7</sup> Lesser than you.

<sup>8</sup> Hooks.

<sup>9</sup> Firmly.

to one of you that are at liberty. I know that ye are not puffed up; for ye have Jesus Christ in your hearts<sup>1</sup>. And especially when I commend you, I know that ye are ashamed; as it is written, *The just man condemneth himself*<sup>2</sup>.

XIII. Study therefore to be confirmed in the doctrine of our Lord, and of his apostles, that so, whatsoever ye do, ye may prosper both in body and spirit—in faith and charity—in the Son, and in the Father, and in the Holy Spirit—in the beginning, and in the end; together with your most worthy Bishop, and the well-wrought<sup>3</sup> spiritual crown of your Presbytery, and your Deacons which are according to God. Be subject to your Bishop, and to one another, as Jesus Christ to the Father according to the flesh; and the Apostles both to Christ, and to the Father, and to the Holy Ghost; that so ye may be united both in body and spirit<sup>4</sup>.

XIV. Knowing you to be full of God, I have the more briefly exhorted you. Be mindful of me in your prayers, that I may attain<sup>5</sup> unto God; and of the Church that is in Syria, from which<sup>6</sup> I am not worthy to be called: for I stand in need of your joint prayers in God, and of your charity, that the Church which is in Syria may be thought worthy to be nourished<sup>7</sup> by your Church.

XV. The Ephesians from Smyrna<sup>8</sup> salute you, (from which place I write unto you, being present here to the glory of God, in like manner as you are,) who have in all things refreshed me, together

<sup>1</sup> In yourselves.

<sup>2</sup> Worthily complicated.

<sup>3</sup> There may be a union both fleshly and spiritual. Eph. iii. 4.

<sup>4</sup> Find, enjoy.

<sup>5</sup> Prov. xviii. 17. *Sept.*

<sup>6</sup> Whence.

<sup>7</sup> Bedewed. Vid. Epist. Interpol. in loc.

<sup>8</sup> Which came to Smyrna upon my account.

CONTENTS  
OF  
ST. IGNATIUS'S EPISTLE  
TO THE TRALLIANS.

---

Chap.

The SALUTATION:

- I. *HE acknowledges the coming of their Bishop, and his receipt of their Charity by him.*
- II. *He commends them for their Orderly Subjection to their Bishops, Priests, and Deacons; and exhorts them to continue in it.*
- III. *He inforces the same Exhortation, commends their Bishop, and excuses his not writing more fully to them of this matter;*
- IV. *Which he does not, lest he should seem to take too much upon him, and be too much exalted in his own Conceit, which would be very dangerous to him, who is afraid even of his over-great Desire to Suffer, lest it should be prejudicial to him.*
- V. *Another reason why he did not write more largely to them was, that at present they were not able to bear it.*
- VI. *He warns them against Heretics, who poison the sound Word of Christ; and*
- VII. *Exhorts them, by Humility of Mind, and Unity with the Church, to guard themselves against them:*
- VIII. *And this he does, not that he knows of any present need they had of his Advice, but to prevent any Mischief from falling upon them:*
- IX. *To which end, he briefly sets before them the true Doctrine concerning Christ;*

- X. *And particularly exposes the Error of some, who taught that he seemed only to Die, but did not really Suffer.*
- XI. *From these he would have them flee.*
- XII. *He returns again to his Exhortation of them to Unity: and desires their Prayers, of which he was much in need;*
- XIII. *Which also he begs for his Church at Antioch. And having given them the Salutations of those who were with him, and once more exhorted them to due Submission to their Bishop, &c. he concludes.*



THE  
EPISTLE OF ST. IGNATIUS  
TO  
THE TRALLIANS.

---

IGNATIUS, *who is also called THEOPHORUS, to the Holy Church which is at TRALLES in Asia; beloved of God the Father of Jesus Christ; elect, and worthy of God, having peace through<sup>1</sup> the flesh and blood, and passion of Jesus Christ, our hope in the resurrection which is by<sup>2</sup> him: Which also I salute in its fullness, continuing in the apostolical character; wishing all joy and happiness unto it.*

1. I HAVE heard<sup>3</sup> of your blameless and constant disposition<sup>4</sup> through patience, which not only appears in your outward conversation, but is naturally rooted, and grounded in you<sup>5</sup>; in like manner as Polybius, your bishop, has declared unto me, who came to me to Smyrna, by the will of God and Jesus Christ; and so rejoiced together with me in my bonds<sup>6</sup> for Jesus Christ, that in effect I saw your whole church<sup>7</sup> in him. Having therefore received the testimony of your good will<sup>8</sup> towards me for God's sake<sup>9</sup>, by him, I seemed to find you<sup>10</sup>, as also I knew that ye were, the followers<sup>11</sup> of God.

---

<sup>1</sup> *In.*

<sup>2</sup> *Unto.*

<sup>3</sup> *Known.*

<sup>4</sup> *Inseparable mind.*

<sup>5</sup> *Which you have not according to use, but according to possession.*

<sup>6</sup> *Who am bound.*

<sup>7</sup> *Multitude.*

<sup>8</sup> *Your benevolence.*

<sup>9</sup> *According to God.*

<sup>10</sup> *Vid. Vossium in loc.*

<sup>11</sup> *Imitators.*

II. For whereas<sup>1</sup> ye are subject to your Bishop as to Jesus Christ; ye appear to me to live not after the manner of men, but according to Jesus Christ; who died for us, that so, believing in his death, ye might escape<sup>2</sup> death. It is therefore necessary, that as ye do, so without your Bishop, you should do, nothing: also be ye subject to your Presbyters, as to the Apostles of Jesus Christ, our hope; in whom if we walk, we shall be found in him. The Deacons also<sup>3</sup>, as being the ministers of the mysteries of Jesus Christ, must by all means please all: for they are not the ministers<sup>4</sup> of meat and drink, but of the Church of God: Wherefore they must avoid all offences, as they would do fire.

III. In like manner, let all reverence the Deacons<sup>5</sup> as Jesus Christ; and the Bishop as the Father; and the Presbyters as the Sanhedrim of God, and college of the Apostles. Without these, there is no church<sup>6</sup>. Concerning all which I am persuaded that ye think<sup>7</sup> after the very same manner: for I have received, and even now have with me, the pattern of your love, in your Bishop; whose very look is instructive<sup>8</sup>; and whose mildness powerful<sup>9</sup>; whom, I am persuaded, the very atheists themselves cannot but reverence. But because I have a love towards you, I will not write any more sharply unto you about this matter, though I very well might; but now I have done so, lest, being a condemned man, I should seem to prescribe to you as an Apostle.

---

<sup>1</sup> When.

<sup>2</sup> Flee from.

<sup>3</sup> Vid. Vossium in loc.

<sup>4</sup> Deacons.

<sup>5</sup> As also the bishop, like Jesus Christ the Son of the Father.—*Vossius in loc. Vid. aliter Cotelerium.*

<sup>6</sup> A church is not called.

<sup>7</sup> So do.

<sup>8</sup> Habit of body is great instruction.

<sup>9</sup> Power. *Vid. Vossium et Usserium in loc.*

IV. I have great knowledge<sup>1</sup> in God; but I refrain<sup>2</sup> myself, lest I should perish in my boasting. For now I ought the more to fear, and not hearken to those that would puff me up; for they that speak to me in my praise chasten me: for I indeed desire<sup>3</sup> to suffer, but I cannot tell whether I am worthy so to do. And<sup>4</sup> this desire, though to others it does not appear, yet to myself it is for that very reason the more violent. I have, therefore, need of moderation<sup>5</sup>; by which the prince of this world is destroyed.

V. Am I not able to write to you of heavenly things? But I fear lest I should harm you, who are yet but babes in Christ; (excuse me this care;) and lest, perchance, being not able to receive them ye should be choked with them. For even I myself, although I am in bonds, yet am not therefore able to understand heavenly things—as the places<sup>6</sup> of the angels, and the several companies of them, under their respective princes—things visible and invisible;—but in these I am yet a learner. For many things are wanting to us, that we come not short of God.

VI. I exhort you, therefore, or rather not I, but the love of Jesus Christ, that ye use none but Christian nourishment; abstaining from pasture which is of another kind; I mean heresy. For they that are heretics<sup>7</sup> confound together the doctrine of Jesus Christ with their own poison, whilst they seem worthy of belief<sup>8</sup>: as men give a deadly potion mixed with sweet wine, which he who is ignorant of does with the treacherous pleasure sweetly drink in his own death.

<sup>1</sup> I understand many things.

<sup>2</sup> Measure.

<sup>3</sup> Love.

<sup>4</sup> Vid. Annot. Vossii in loc.

<sup>5</sup> Mildness.

<sup>6</sup> Orders.

<sup>7</sup> Vid. de hoc locu conjecturas Vossii, Cotelerii, et Junii apud Usarium. Comp. Epist. Interpol. in loc. Et Voss. Annot. in Epist. ad Phil. p. 281.

<sup>8</sup> Being believed for their dignity.

say, infidels—pretend, that he only seemed to suffer, (they themselves only seeming to exist,) why then am I bound? why do I desire to fight with beasts? Therefore do I die in vain; therefore I will not speak falsely against the Lord.

XI. Flee therefore these evil sprouts<sup>1</sup> which bring forth deadly fruit; of which if any one taste, he shall presently die. For these are not the plants of the Father; seeing, if they were, they would appear to be the branches of the cross, and their fruit would be incorruptible: by which he invites you through his passion, who are members of him. For the head cannot be without its members, God having promised a union, that is, Himself.

XII. I salute you from Smyrna, together with the Churches of God<sup>2</sup> that are present with me, who have refreshed me in all things, both in the flesh and in the spirit. My bonds, which I carry about me, for the sake of Christ, (beseeching him that I may attain unto God), exhort you, that you continue in concord<sup>3</sup> among yourselves, and in prayer with one another: for it becomes every one of you, especially the Presbyters, to refresh the Bishop, to the honour of the Father, of Jesus Christ, and of the Apostles. I beseech you, that you hearken to me in love; that I may not, by those things which I write<sup>4</sup>, rise up in witness against you. Pray also for me, who, through the mercy of God, stand in need of your prayers, that I may be worthy of the portion which I am about to obtain, that I be not found a reprobate.

XIII. The love of those who are at Smyrna and Ephesus, salute you. Remember in your

<sup>1</sup> Plants.

<sup>3</sup> The concord of you.

<sup>2</sup> i. e. The delegates of the churches.

<sup>4</sup> Be a testimony among you, writing.

prayers the Church of Syria, from which I am not worthy to be called, being one of the least of it<sup>1</sup>. Fare ye well in Jesus Christ; being subject to your Bishop as to the command of God, and so likewise to the Presbytery. Love every one his brother, with an unfeigned<sup>2</sup> heart. My<sup>3</sup> soul be your expiation, not only now, but when I shall have attained unto God: for I am yet under danger. But the Father is faithful in Jesus Christ, to fulfil both mine and your petition; in whom may ye be found unblamable.

*To the TRALLIANS.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Them.    <sup>2</sup> Undivided.    <sup>3</sup> Vid. Annot. Vossii et Cotelier. in loc.

CONTENTS  
OF  
ST. IGNATIUS'S EPISTLE  
TO THE ROMANS.

---

Chap.

The SALUTATION.

- I. *HE testifies his Desire to come unto them; and his Hopes of suffering for Christ, unless they prevent it,—*
- II. *Which he earnestly entreats them not to do;*
- III. *But rather to pray for him, that God would strengthen him to the Combat unto which he had called him.*
- IV. *He expresses the great Desire he had to suffer Martyrdom,*
- V, VI. *And the mighty Advantage it would be to him so to do;*
- VII, VIII. *And therefore again entreats them, that they would not do any thing to prevent it.*
- IX. *He desires their Prayers for his Church at Antioch; and expresses the Kindness of the Christians to him on his way to them :*
- X. *And then concludes, with his Recommendations of those who came from Syria with him, and were gone before to Rome, to their favourable Acceptance.*

---

In the Second Edition, this Epistle was compared with the Greek set out by Dr. GRAEVE, in his *Spicileg.* tom. ii. p. 13, &c.

THE  
EPISTLE OF ST. IGNATIUS  
TO  
THE ROMANS.

---

IGNATIUS, *who is also called THEOPHORUS, to the Church which has obtained mercy<sup>1</sup> from the Majesty of the Most High Father, and his only-begotten<sup>2</sup> Son Jesus Christ; beloved, and illuminated through<sup>3</sup> the will of Him who willeth all things which are according to the love of Jesus Christ our God<sup>4</sup>, which also presides in the place<sup>5</sup> of the region of the Romans, and which<sup>6</sup> I salute in the name of Jesus Christ, [as being<sup>7</sup>] united both in flesh and spirit to all his commands, and filled<sup>8</sup> with the grace of God, [all<sup>9</sup> joy] in Jesus Christ our God.*

I. FORASMUCH<sup>10</sup> as I have at last<sup>11</sup> obtained, through my prayers to God, to see your faces<sup>12</sup>, which<sup>13</sup> I much desired to do; being bound in Christ Jesus, I hope ere long to salute you, if it shall be the will<sup>14</sup> of God to grant me to attain unto the end I long for. For the beginning is

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Pearson. Vind. Ignat. Par. 2. ch. 16. p. 214.

<sup>2</sup> Omitted.—Gr.

<sup>3</sup> In.

<sup>4</sup> God; which also presides in the place of the region of the Romans: worthy of God: most decent, most blessed, most praised, most worthy to obtain what it desires; most pure, most charitable, called by the name of Christ and the Father. Gr.

<sup>5</sup> Type of the chorus, i. e. The church of the Romans.—See Voss. Annot. in loc.

<sup>6</sup> Also.

<sup>7</sup> The Son of the Father; to those who are— Gr.

<sup>8</sup> Wholly filled.—Gr.

<sup>9</sup> Being absolutely separated from any other colour; much pure or immaculate joy.

<sup>10</sup> Gr.

<sup>11</sup> Vid. Voss. Annot. in loc.

<sup>12</sup> Worthy of God.

<sup>13</sup> And have received even more than I asked, being bound. <sup>14</sup> Gr.

well-disposed, if I shall but have grace, without hindrance, to receive what is appointed for me<sup>1</sup>. But I fear your love, lest it do me an injury: for it is easy for you to do what you please; but it will<sup>2</sup> be hard for me to attain unto God, if you spare me.

II. But I 'would not that ye should please men, but God; whom<sup>3</sup> also ye do please. For neither shall I ever hereafter have such an opportunity of going unto<sup>4</sup> God; nor will you, if ye shall now be silent, ever be entitled to a better work. For if you shall be silent in my behalf<sup>5</sup>, I shall be made partaker of God; but if you shall love my body<sup>6</sup>, I shall have my course again to run. Wherefore ye cannot do me a greater kindness, than to suffer me to be sacrificed unto God, now that the altar is already prepared; that when ye shall be gathered together<sup>7</sup> in love, ye may give<sup>8</sup> thanks to the Father, through Christ Jesus, that he has vouchsafed<sup>9</sup> to bring a Bishop of Syria unto you, being called from the East unto the West. For it is good for me to set, from the world, unto God, that I may rise again unto him.

III. Ye have never envied any one; ye have taught others. I would therefore that ye<sup>10</sup> should now do those things yourselves, which in your instructions you have prescribed<sup>11</sup> to others. Only pray for me, that God would give me both inward and outward strength, that I may not only say, but will; nor be only called a Christian, but be found one. For if I shall be found a Christian, I

---

<sup>1</sup> My lot.

<sup>2</sup> Is.

<sup>3</sup> I will not please you as men.—Gr.

<sup>4</sup> As.

<sup>5</sup> Attaining unto.

<sup>6</sup> From me.

<sup>7</sup> Flesh.

<sup>8</sup> Being become a chorus.

<sup>9</sup> Sing.

<sup>10</sup> That a bishop of Syria should be found.

<sup>11</sup> That those things also should be firm.

<sup>12</sup> Commanded. Vid. Annot. Usserii in loc. N. 26, 27.



may then deservedly be called one ; and be thought faithful, when I shall no longer appear to the world. Nothing is 'good that is seen : for even our God, Jesus Christ, now that he is in the Father, does so much the more appear. A Christian is not a work of opinion<sup>1</sup>, but of greatness of mind [<sup>2</sup>especially when he is hated by the world].

IV. I write to the Churches, and signify<sup>3</sup> to them all, that I am willing to die for God, unless you hinder<sup>4</sup> me. I beseech you, that you 'shew not an unseasonable good-will towards me. Suffer me to be food to the wild beasts, by whom I shall attain unto God. For I am the wheat of God ; and shall I be ground by the teeth of the wild beasts, that I may be found the pure bread<sup>5</sup> of Christ. Rather encourage<sup>6</sup> the beasts, that they may become my sepulchre, and may leave nothing of my body ; that being dead, I may not be troublesome to any : then shall I be truly the disciple of Jesus Christ, when the world shall not see so much as my body. Pray therefore unto Christ for me, that by these instruments I may be made the sacrifice<sup>7</sup> of God. I do not, as Peter and Paul, command you. They were Apostles, I a condemned man ; they were free, but I am even to this day a servant. But if I shall suffer, I shall then become the freeman of Jesus Christ, and shall rise free<sup>10</sup>. And now, being in bonds, I learn not to desire any thing<sup>11</sup>.

V. From Syria even unto Rome, I fight with

<sup>1</sup> Nothing that is seen is eternal : for the things which are seen are temporal, but the things that are not seen are eternal.—*Gr.*

<sup>2</sup> Persuasion, or silence.—*Gr.*

[<sup>3</sup> Desunt.—*Gr.*]

<sup>4</sup> Vid. Usser. Annot. N. 31.

<sup>5</sup> Forbid me.

<sup>6</sup> Be not.

<sup>7</sup> Vid. Lat. Vet. Interpr. Et Annot. Usser. N. 33.

<sup>8</sup> Flatter.

<sup>9</sup> Desunt.—*Gr.*

<sup>10</sup> Free in him.—*Gr.*

<sup>11</sup> Any worldly, or vain things.—*Gr.*

beasts, both by sea and land, both night and day; being bound to ten leopards; that is to say, to such a band of soldiers, who though treated with all manner of kindness, are the worse for it. But I am the more instructed by their injuries; *yet am I not therefore justified*<sup>1</sup>. May I enjoy the wild beasts that are prepared for me; which also I wish may<sup>2</sup> exercise all their fierceness upon me: and whom, for that end, I will encourage<sup>3</sup>, that they may be sure to devour me, and not serve me as they have done some, whom, out of fear, they have not touched. But, and if they will not do it willingly, I will provoke them to it. Pardon me in this matter; I know what is profitable for me. Now I begin to be a disciple<sup>4</sup>; nor shall any thing move me, whether visible or invisible, that I may attain to Christ Jesus. Let fire and the cross; let the companies<sup>5</sup> of wild beasts; let breakings of bones and tearing<sup>7</sup> of members; let the shattering<sup>8</sup> in pieces of the whole body, and all<sup>9</sup> the wicked torments of the devil come upon me; only let<sup>10</sup> me enjoy Jesus Christ.

VI. All the ends<sup>11</sup> of the world, and the kingdoms of it<sup>12</sup>, will profit me nothing: I would rather die for<sup>13</sup> Jesus Christ, than rule to the utmost ends of the earth. Him<sup>14</sup> I seek who died for us; Him I desire who rose again for us. This is the gain<sup>15</sup> that is laid up for me. Pardon me,

<sup>1</sup> 1 Cor. iv. 4.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. Voss. in loc. Usser. Annot. N. 48. May be ready for me.—Gr.

<sup>3</sup> Usser. Annot. N. 48.

<sup>4</sup> Luke xiv. 27.

<sup>5</sup> Vid. Cotelier. in loc. Rom. viii. 38, 39.

<sup>6</sup> Force, or rage.

<sup>7</sup> Let tearings, and rendings.—Gr.

<sup>8</sup> Vid. Usser. Annot. N. 56.

<sup>9</sup> Ib. N. 57.

<sup>10</sup> That I may enjoy.

<sup>11</sup> Gr. Pleasures.

<sup>12</sup> Of this age.

<sup>13</sup> Gr. Unto.

<sup>14</sup> For what is a man profited if he shall gain the whole world, and lose his own soul.—Gr. Add.

<sup>15</sup> Usury.—Gr. Vid. Voss. Correct. p. 301.

and the drink that I long for] is his blood, which is incorruptible love<sup>1</sup>.

VIII. I have no desire to live any longer after the manner of men; neither<sup>2</sup> shall I, if you consent. Be ye therefore willing, that ye yourselves also may be pleasing<sup>3</sup> to God. I<sup>4</sup> exhort you in a few words<sup>5</sup>; I pray you believe me. Jesus Christ will shew you that I speak truly. My mouth is without deceit, and the Father hath truly spoken by<sup>6</sup> it. Pray therefore for me, that I may accomplish what I desire. I have not written to you after the flesh, but according to the will of God. If I shall suffer, ye<sup>7</sup> have loved me; but if I shall be rejected<sup>8</sup>, ye have hated me.

IX. Remember in your prayers the Church of Syria, which now enjoys God for its shepherd instead of me: let<sup>9</sup> Jesus Christ only oversee<sup>10</sup> it, and your charity. But I am even ashamed to be reckoned as one of them: for neither am I worthy, being the least among them, and as one born out of due season<sup>11</sup>. But through mercy I have obtained to be somebody, if I shall get unto God. My spirit salutes you; and the charity of the Churches that have received me in the name of Jesus Christ; not as a passenger: for even they that were not near to me in the way, have gone before me to the next city to meet me.

X. These things I write to you from Smyrna, by the most worthy of the Church of Ephesus. There is now with me, together with many others, Crocus, most beloved of me. As for those which

<sup>1</sup> *Gr. adds,* and perpetual life.

<sup>2</sup> Willed.

<sup>3</sup> By a short letter.

<sup>4</sup> *Viz.* As unworthy to suffer.

<sup>5</sup> Shall oversee it.

<sup>6</sup> And that shall be.

<sup>7</sup> *Vid.* Annot. Voss. in loc.

<sup>8</sup> In. <sup>9</sup> Ye have willed.

<sup>10</sup> *Vid.* Vet. Interpr. Lat.

<sup>11</sup> 1 Cor. xv. 8.

are<sup>1</sup> come from Syria, and are gone before me to Rome, to the glory of God, I suppose you are not ignorant of them. Ye shall therefore signify to them that I draw near, for they are all worthy both of God, and of you: whom it is fit that you refresh in all things. This have I written to you, the day before the ninth of the calends of September<sup>2</sup>. Be strong unto the end, in the patience of Jesus Christ<sup>3</sup>.

*To the ROMANS.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Vet. Interpr. Lat.

<sup>2</sup> That is, the 23d of August.—Gr.

<sup>3</sup> Amen.—Gr.

CONTENTS  
OF  
ST. IGNATIUS'S EPISTLE  
TO THE PHILADELPHIANS.

---

Chap. *The SALUTATION.*

- I. *HE begins with a very great Commendation of their Bishop, whom they had sent unto him.*
- II. *He warns them against Divisions; and exhorts them to stick close to their Bishop, as the best means to avoid falling into Errors and false Doctrines;*
- III, IV. *Which Exhortation he again enforces, and shews them the Danger of following any Persons, to the making of a Schism in the Church,*
- V. *He excuses the length of this Advice, which proceeded from his Love towards them; desires their Prayers; and shews how the Holy Men under the Law, as well as since under the Gospel, were all united in Christ:*
- VI. *Yet this must not prompt them to receive their Doctrine who would tempt them to Judaize.*
- VII. *He declares what his own Conduct had been whilst he was amongst them;*
- VIII, IX. *And exhorts them, after his example, to maintain a pure Doctrine, in Unity with one another.*
- X. *He recounts to them how he had heard that the Persecution was stopped in his Church at Antioch; and directs them to send some Messenger thither to congratulate with them thereupon.*
- XI. *He tells them what Persons were still with him; and thanks them for the kind Entertainment they gave to some of them: and so concludes with the common Salutation of those who were present at his Writing of this Epistle to them.*

THE  
EPISTLE OF ST. IGNATIUS  
TO  
THE PHILADELPHIANS.

---

IGNATIUS, *who is also called THEOPHORUS, to the Church of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, which is at PHILADELPHIA in Asia; which has obtained mercy, being fixed in the concord of God, and rejoicing evermore<sup>1</sup> in the Passion of our Lord, and being fulfilled in all mercy through his Resurrection: which<sup>2</sup> also I salute in the blood of Jesus Christ, which is our eternal and undefiled joy, especially if they are at unity with the Bishop, and Presbyters who are with him, and the Deacons appointed according<sup>3</sup> to the mind<sup>4</sup> of Jesus Christ; whom he has settled according to his own will in all firmness by his Holy Spirit.*

I. WHICH Bishop I know obtained that great ministry among you<sup>5</sup>, not of himself, neither by men, nor out of vainglory, but by<sup>6</sup> the love of God the Father and our Lord Jesus Christ; whose moderation<sup>7</sup> I admire, who by his silence is able to do more than others<sup>8</sup>, with all their vain talk: for he is fitted to the commands, as the harp to its strings. Wherefore my soul esteems his mind

---

<sup>1</sup> Inseparably.

<sup>4</sup> Will, order.

<sup>6</sup> In.

<sup>8</sup> Those that speak vain things.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. Vet. Interp. Lat.

<sup>5</sup> Ministry belonging to the public.

<sup>7</sup> Has struck me with wonder.

<sup>3</sup> In.

towards God most happy, knowing it to be fruitful in all virtue, and perfect; full of constancy, free from passion, and according to<sup>1</sup> all the moderation of the living God.

II. Wherefore, as becomes the children both of the light and of truth, flee divisions and false doctrines: but where your shepherd is, there do ye, as sheep, follow after; for there are many wolves<sup>2</sup> who seem worthy of belief, that with <sup>3</sup>a false pleasure lead captive those that run in the course of God; but in your concord they shall find no place.

III. Abstain, therefore, from those evil herbs which Jesus Christ does not dress; because such are not the plantation of the Father. Not that I have found any division among you, but rather all manner of purity<sup>4</sup>. For as many as are of God, and of Jesus Christ, are also with their Bishop. And as many as shall with repentance return into the unity of the Church, even these shall also be the servants of God, that they may live according to Jesus Christ. Be not deceived, Brethren: If any one follows him that makes a schism in the Church, he shall not inherit the kingdom of God: If any one walks after any other opinion, he agrees not with the passion of Christ.

IV. Wherefore let it be your endeavour to partake all of the same Holy Eucharist; for there is but one flesh of our Lord Jesus Christ, and one cup, in the unity of his blood; one altar; as also there is one Bishop, together with his Presbytery, and the Deacons, my fellow-servants: that so whatsoever ye do, ye may do it according to the will of God.

---

<sup>1</sup> In.

<sup>3</sup> Evil.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. Voss. Annot. in loc.

<sup>4</sup> Cleanness made by sifting.

V. My Brethren, the love I have towards you makes me the more<sup>1</sup> large; and having a great joy in you, I endeavour to secure you against danger; or rather not I, but Jesus Christ; in whom being bound, I the more fear, as being yet only<sup>2</sup> on the way to suffering. But your prayer to God shall make me perfect, that I may attain to that portion which by God's mercy is allotted to me; fleeing to the Gospel as to the flesh of Christ, and to the Apostles as to the Presbytery of the Church. Let us also love the Prophets, forasmuch as they also have led<sup>3</sup> us to the Gospel, and to hope in Christ<sup>4</sup>, and to expect him. In whom also believing, they were saved, in the unity of Jesus Christ; being holy men, worthy to be loved, and had in wonder; who have received testimony from Jesus Christ, and are numbered in the gospel of our common hope.

VI. But if any one shall preach the Jewish law<sup>5</sup> unto you, hearken not unto him: for it is better to receive the doctrine of Christ from one that has been circumcised, than Judaism from one that has not. But if either the one, or other, do not speak concerning Christ Jesus, they seem to me to be but as monuments and sepulchres of the dead, upon which are written only the names of men. Flee therefore the wicked arts and snares of the prince of this world, lest at any time, being oppressed by his cunning<sup>6</sup>, ye grow cold<sup>7</sup> in your charity. But come all together into the same place, with an undivided heart. And I bless my God that I have a good conscience towards you, and that no one among you has whereof to boast,

---

<sup>1</sup> Very much poured out.

<sup>2</sup> *Vid. Voss. in loc.* Imperfect.

<sup>3</sup> Or, preached of the Gospel; and hoped in him, and expected him.

<sup>4</sup> *Vid. Voss. in loc.*

<sup>5</sup> Judaism.

<sup>6</sup> Opinion, council.

<sup>7</sup> Weak.



either openly or privately, that I have been burthensome to him in much or little. And I wish, to all amongst whom I have conversed, that it may not turn to a witness against them.

VII. For although some would have deceived me according to the flesh, yet the spirit, being from God, is not deceived: for it knows both whence it comes, and whither it goes, and reproves the secrets of the heart. I cried whilst I was among you, I spake with a loud voice: Attend to the Bishop, and to the Presbytery, and to the Deacons. Now some supposed that I spake this as foreseeing the division<sup>1</sup> that should come among you. But he is my witness for whose sake I am in bonds, that I knew nothing from any man: but the Spirit spake, saying on this wise, Do nothing without the Bishop; keep your bodies<sup>2</sup> as the temples of God; love unity; flee divisions; be the followers of Christ, as he was of his Father.

VIII. I therefore did as became me, as a man composed to unity: for where there is division, and wrath, God dwelleth not. But the Lord forgives all that repent, if they return<sup>3</sup> to the unity of God, and to the council of the Bishop. For I trust in the grace of Jesus Christ<sup>4</sup> that he will free you from every bond. Nevertheless, I exhort you, that you do nothing out of strife, but according to the instruction of Christ; because I have heard of some who say, Unless I find it written in the originals<sup>5</sup>, I will not believe it to be written in the Gospel. And when I said, It is written, they answered what lay before them in their corrupted copies. But, to me, Jesus Christ is instead of all the uncorrupted monuments in

---

<sup>1</sup> Of some.

<sup>2</sup> Flesh.

<sup>3</sup> Repent.

<sup>4</sup> Who will loose from you.

<sup>5</sup> Archives.—*Vid. Pass. Annot. in loc.*

the world; together with those undefiled<sup>1</sup> monuments, his cross, and death, and resurrection, and the faith which is by him: by which I desire, through your prayers, to be justified.

IX. The priests, indeed, are good; but much better is the high priest, to whom the Holy of Holies has been committed, and who alone has been entrusted with the secrets of God. He is the door of the Father, by which Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, and all the Prophets enter in, as well as the Apostles and the Church. And all these things tend to the unity which is of God. Howbeit the Gospel has somewhat in it far above all other dispensations; namely, the appearance of our Saviour, the Lord Jesus Christ, his passion and resurrection. For the beloved Prophets referred to him: but the Gospel is the perfection of incorruption. All therefore together are good, if ye believe with charity.

X. Now as concerning the Church of Antioch, which is in Syria: seeing I am told that through your prayers, and the bowels which ye have towards it in Jesus Christ, it is in peace, it will become you, as the church of God, to ordain some deacon<sup>2</sup> to go to them thither as the ambassador of God; that he may rejoice with them when they meet together, and glorify God's name. Blessed be that man, in Jesus Christ, who shall be found worthy of such a ministry; and ye yourselves also shall be glorified. Now, if ye be willing, it is not impossible for you to do this for the sake of God; as also the other neighbouring churches have sent them,—some bishops, some priests and deacons.

XI. As concerning Philo, the deacon of Cilicia,

---

<sup>1</sup> Untouched.

<sup>2</sup> Messenger or minister.

a most worthy<sup>1</sup> man: he still ministers unto me in the word of God; together with Rheus<sup>2</sup> of Agathopolis, a singular good person, who has followed me even from Syria, not regarding his life: these also bear witness unto you. And I myself give thanks to God for you, that ye receive them as the Lord shall receive you. But for those that dishonoured them, may they be forgiven through the grace of Jesus Christ. The charity of the brethren that are at Troas salutes you; from whence also I now write by Burrhus, who was sent, together with me, by those of Ephesus and Smyrna, for respect sake. May our Lord Jesus Christ honour them; in whom they hope, both in flesh, and soul, and spirit,—in faith, in love, in unity. Farewell in Christ Jesus, our common hope.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Vossius*, a martyr or confessor.—Vid. Annot. in loc.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. *Vossii* Annot. in Ep. ad Smyrn. p. 261. See below, p. 266. sect. x.

CONTENTS  
OF  
ST. IGNATIUS'S EPISTLE  
TO THE SMYRNÆANS.

---

Chap.

The SALUTATION.

- I. *HE declares the Joy he had to hear of their Firmness in the Gospel; the substance of which, as to what concerns the Person of Christ, he briefly repeats to them:*
- II. *And this against such as pretend, that Christ suffered only in show, and not really. Against these,*
- III. *He assures them, that he knew Christ was a true Man, even after his Resurrection; and did give manifest Proofs to his Disciples of his being such.*
- IV. *He exhorts them, therefore, to have nothing to do with those Heretics whom he here opposes; nor believe that he would suffer so much for the Faith of Christ, unless he were very sure of the Truth of it.*
- V. *He shews them, farther, the Danger of the Doctrine before mentioned; and how they who held it did, in effect, deny Christ.*
- VI. *How Dangerous this is! And how different those who maintain this Doctrine are, in all other respects, from the Church of Christ!*
- VII. *That it will, therefore, become them, to guard themselves against such Persons.*
- VIII. *To this end, he exhorts them to follow their Bishop and Pastors; but especially their Bishop.*
- IX. *He thanks them for their Kindness to himself,*
- X. *And to those that were with him; which God will reward.*
- XI. *He acquaints them with the Ceasing of the Persecution at Antioch: and exhorts them to send a Messenger thither, to congratulate with them on this Occasion.*
- XII. *He concludes with his own Salutation, and the Remembrances of those that were with him, to them all in general, to several in particular.*

THE  
EPISTLE OF ST. IGNATIUS

TO  
THE SMYRNEANS.

---

IGNATIUS, *who is also called THEOPHORUS, to the Church of God the Father, and of the beloved Jesus Christ; which God hath mercifully blessed<sup>1</sup> with every good gift, being filled with faith and charity, so that it is wanting in no gift; most worthy of God, and fruitful in Saints; the Church which is at SMYRNA in Asia; all joy, through his immaculate Spirit, and the Word of God.*

I. I GLORIFY God, even Jesus Christ, who has given you such wisdom : for I have observed that you are settled in an immovable faith, as if you were nailed to the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, both in the flesh and in the spirit ; and are confirmed in love through the blood of Christ ; being fully persuaded of those things which relate <sup>2</sup>unto our Lord ; who truly was of the race of David according to the flesh, but the Son of God according to the will and power of God ; truly born of the Virgin, and baptized of John ; that so all righteousness might be fulfilled by him<sup>3</sup>. He was also truly crucified by Pontius Pilate and Herod the tetrarch, being nailed for us in the flesh ; by the fruits of which we are saved, even by his most

---

<sup>1</sup> Comp. 1 Cor. vii. 25.

<sup>2</sup> Unto the Lord.

<sup>3</sup> Mat. iii. 15.

blessed passion; that he might set up<sup>1</sup> a token for all ages, through his resurrection, to all his holy and faithful servants, whether they be Jews or Gentiles, in one body of his Church.

II. Now all these things he suffered for us, that we might be saved. And he suffered truly, as he also truly raised up himself; and not, as some unbelievers say, that he only seemed to suffer, they themselves only seeming to be<sup>2</sup>. And as they believe, so shall it happen unto them; when being divested of the body, they shall become mere spirits<sup>3</sup>.

III. But I know that, even after his resurrection, he was in the flesh; and I believe that he is still so. And when he came to those who were with Peter, he<sup>4</sup> said unto them, "Take, handle me," and see that I am not an incorporeal dæmon." And straightway they felt him and believed; being convinced both by his flesh and spirit. For this cause they despised death, and were found to be above it<sup>5</sup>. But after his resurrection he did eat and drink with them, as he was flesh; although as to his spirit he was united to the Father.

IV. Now these things, Beloved, I put<sup>6</sup> you in mind of, not questioning but that you yourselves also believe<sup>7</sup> that they are so. But I arm you before-hand against certain beasts in the shape of men; whom you must not only not receive, but if it be possible must not meet with. Only you must pray for them, that, if it be the will of God, they may repent; which yet will be very hard. But of this our Lord Jesus Christ has the power, who is our true life. For if all these things

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Voss. Annot. in loc.

<sup>2</sup> i. e. Christians.

<sup>3</sup> Incorporeal and dæmoniac.

<sup>4</sup> Ex Evang. Sec. Hebr. See Dr. Grabe Spicileg. tom. li. p. 25.

<sup>5</sup> Death.

<sup>6</sup> Admonish.

<sup>7</sup> Have so.

who are of a different opinion from us, as to what concerns the grace of Jesus Christ, which is come unto us, how contrary they are to the design of God! They have no regard to charity; no care of the widow, the fatherless, and the oppressed; of the bound or free, of the hungry or thirsty.

VII. They abstain from the Eucharist, and from the Public Offices<sup>1</sup>, because they confess not the Eucharist to be the flesh of our Saviour Jesus Christ; which suffered for our sins, and which the Father, of his goodness, raised again from the dead. And for this cause, contradicting the gift of God, they die in their disputes. But<sup>2</sup> much better would it be for them to receive<sup>3</sup> it, that they might one day rise through it. It will therefore become you, to abstain from such persons, and not to speak with them, neither in private, nor in public; but to hearken to the Prophets, and especially to the Gospel, in which both Christ's passion is manifested unto us, and his resurrection perfectly declared. But flee all divisions, as the beginning of evils.

VIII. See that ye all follow your Bishop, as Jesus Christ, the Father; and the Presbytery, as the Apostles: and reverence the Deacons, as the command of God. Let no man do any thing of what belongs to the Church separately from the Bishop. Let that Eucharist be looked upon as well established, which is either offered by the Bishop, or by him to whom the Bishop has given his consent. Wheresoever the Bishop shall appear, there let the people<sup>4</sup> also be; as where Jesus Christ is, there is the Catholic Church. It is not lawful without the Bishop, neither to baptize, nor to<sup>5</sup> cele-

<sup>1</sup> *Vid. Annot. Coteler. in loc.*—Or, prayers.

<sup>2</sup> *Vid. Coteler. Annot.*

<sup>4</sup> Multitude.

<sup>3</sup> Love.

<sup>5</sup> Make a love-feast.

brate the Holy Communion: but whatsoever he shall approve of, that is also pleasing unto God; that so whatever is done, may be sure and well done.

IX. For what remains: it is very reasonable that we should repent<sup>1</sup>, whilst there is yet time to return unto God. It is a good thing to have a due regard both to God, and to the Bishop: he that honours the Bishop, shall be honoured of God. But he that does any thing without his knowledge, ministers<sup>2</sup> unto the devil. Let all things, therefore, abound to you in charity; seeing ye are worthy. Ye have refreshed me in all things; so shall Jesus Christ you. Ye have loved me, both when I was present with you, and now, being absent, ye cease not to do so. May God be your reward; for whom whilst ye undergo all things, ye shall attain unto him.

X. Ye have done well in that ye have received Philo, and Rheus Agathopus<sup>3</sup>, who followed me for<sup>4</sup> the word of God, as the deacons of Christ our God. Who also give thanks unto the Lord for you, forasmuch as ye have refreshed them in all things<sup>5</sup>. Nor<sup>6</sup> shall any thing that you have done be lost to you. My soul<sup>7</sup> be for yours, and my bonds, which ye have not despised nor been ashamed of. Wherefore neither shall Jesus Christ, our perfect faith, be ashamed of you.

XI. Your prayer is come to the Church of Antioch which is in Syria; from whence being sent, bound with chains, becoming God, I salute the<sup>8</sup> Churches; being not worthy to be<sup>9</sup> called from thence, as being the least among them.

<sup>1</sup> Return to a sound mind.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. Voss. Annot. in loc.

<sup>3</sup> Vid. Epist. Interpol.

<sup>4</sup> All the.

<sup>5</sup> Does worship.

<sup>6</sup> Unto. <sup>7</sup> Ways.

<sup>8</sup> Spirit.

<sup>9</sup> i. e. The bishop of that church.



Nevertheless, by the will of God, I have been thought worthy of this honour; not for that I think I have deserved it, but by the grace of God; which I wish may be perfectly given unto me, that through your prayers I may attain unto God. And therefore that your work may be fully accomplished both upon earth and in heaven, it will be fitting, and for the honour of God, that your Church<sup>1</sup> appoint some worthy delegate, who being come as far as Syria, may rejoice, together with them, that they are in peace; and that they are again restored to their former state<sup>2</sup>, and have again received their proper body. Wherefore I should think it a worthy action, to send some one from you with an epistle, to congratulate with them their peace in God; and that through your prayers they have now gotten to their harbour. For inasmuch as ye are perfect yourselves, you ought to think those things that are perfect. For when you are desirous to do well, God is ready to enable<sup>3</sup> you thereunto.

XII. The love of the brethren that are at Troas salute you; from whence I write to you by Burrhus, whom ye sent with me, together with the Ephesians your brethren; and who has in all things refreshed me. And I would to God that all would imitate him, as being a pattern of the ministry of God. May his grace fully reward him. I salute your very worthy Bishop, and your venerable Presbytery; and your Deacons, my fellow-servants, and all of you in general, and every one in particular, in the name of Jesus Christ, and in his flesh and blood; in his passion and resurrection, both fleshly and spiritually; and in

---

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Voss. Annot. in loc.

<sup>2</sup> Bulk, greatness.

<sup>3</sup> Help you.

the unity<sup>1</sup> of God with<sup>2</sup> you. Grace be with you, and patience, for evermore.

XIII. I salute the families of my brethren, with their wives and children; and the virgins<sup>3</sup> that are called widows. Be strong in the power of the Holy Ghost. Philo, who is present with me, salutes you. I salute the house of Tavius, and pray that it may be strengthened in faith and charity, both of flesh and spirit. I salute Alcé, my well-beloved, together<sup>4</sup> with the incomparable Daphnus, and Eutechnus, and all by name. Farewell in the grace of God.

*To the SMYRNÆANS from Troas.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Voss. Annot. in loc.

<sup>2</sup> And.

<sup>3</sup> *i. e.* The deaconesses.—See, for the reason of this name, Voss. Annot. in loc. Add. Coteler. *ib.*

<sup>4</sup> See Voss. Annot. ex Epist. Interpol.

CONTENTS  
OF  
ST. IGNATIUS'S EPISTLE  
TO ST. POLYCARP.

---

Chap.

*The SALUTATION.*

- I. *HE blesses GOD for the firm Establishment of POLYCARP in all Piety; and gives him many particular Directions for his Improvement in it;*
  - II. *But especially with relation to the Church over which he was Bishop.*
  - III, IV. *He continues his Advice to him; and*
  - V. *Teaches him what Advice he should give to others:*
  - VI. *In which he continues; and especially enforces Unity among themselves, and Subjection to their Bishop.*
  - VII. *He recounts to POLYCARP the Peace of his Church in Syria; and directs him to appoint some Messenger to go to Antioch, to rejoice with them on that Occasion.*
  - VIII. *He desires POLYCARP to write to the same Effect to the neighbouring Churches; which he had not himself time to do;*
- And then concludes all with his Salutation, both to POLYCARP, and to several of the Church of Smyrna, by name.*

THE  
EPISTLE OF ST. IGNATIUS  
TO  
ST. POLYCARP.

---

IGNATIUS, *who is also called THEOPHORUS, to POLYCARP, bishop of the Church which is at Smyrna*<sup>1</sup>; *their overseer, but rather himself overlooked by God the Father, and the Lord Jesus Christ; all happiness.*

I. **H**AVING known that thy mind towards God, is fixed, as it were, upon an immovable rock, I exceedingly give thanks, that I have been thought worthy to behold thy blessed<sup>2</sup> face, in which may I always rejoice in God. Wherefore, I beseech thee, by the grace of God, with which thou art clothed, to press forward in thy course; and to exhort all others, that they may be saved. Maintain thy place, with all care both of flesh and spirit<sup>3</sup>: make it thy endeavour to preserve unity, than which nothing is better. Bear with all men, even as the Lord with thee. Support all in love, as also thou dost. *'Pray without ceasing:* ask more understanding than what thou already hast. Be watchful, having thy spirit always awake. Speak to every one according as God shall enable thee.<sup>4</sup> Bear the infirmities<sup>5</sup> of all, as a perfect

---

<sup>1</sup> *Of the Smyrneans.*

<sup>2</sup> Innocent.

<sup>3</sup> Vid. 1 Cor. vii. 34.

<sup>4</sup> Be at leisure to, &c.

<sup>5</sup> Vid. Voss. in loc. aliter Vet. Lat. Interpr.

<sup>6</sup> The diseases.

combatant: Where the labour is great, the gain is<sup>1</sup> the more.

II. If thou shalt love the good disciples, what thank is it? But rather do thou subject to thee those that are mischievous, in meekness. Every wound is not healed with the same plaster: if the accessions of the disease be vehement, mollify them with soft remedies<sup>2</sup>: be in all things, *Wise as a serpent, but harmless as a dove*<sup>3</sup>. For this cause thou art composed of flesh and spirit, that thou mayest mollify those things that appear before thy face. And as for those that are not seen, pray to God that he would reveal them unto thee, that so thou mayest be wanting in nothing, but mayest abound in every gift. The times demand thee, as the pilots the winds; and he that is tossed in a tempest, the haven where he would be; that thou mayest attain unto God. Be sober, as the combatant of God; the crown<sup>4</sup> proposed to thee, is immortality and eternal life, concerning which thou art also fully persuaded. I will be thy surety in all things, and my bonds, which thou hast loved.

III. Let not those that seem worthy of credit, but teach other doctrines, disturb<sup>5</sup> thee. Stand firm and immoveable, as an anvil when it is beaten upon. It is the part of a brave combatant, to be wounded<sup>6</sup>, and yet to overcome. But especially we ought to endure all things for God's sake, that he may bear with us. Be every day better<sup>7</sup> than other: consider the times; and expect him, who is above all time, eternal; invisible, though for our sakes made visible; impalpable, and impassible, yet for us subjected to sufferings, enduring all manner of ways for our salvation.

<sup>1</sup> Is much.

<sup>2</sup> Superfusions.

<sup>3</sup> Matt. x. 16.

<sup>4</sup> Vid. Voss. Annot. in loc. Collat. cum Coteler. ib.

<sup>5</sup> Amaze thee.

<sup>6</sup> Beaten.

<sup>7</sup> More studious, diligent.

IV. Let not the widows be neglected: be thou, after God, their guardian. Let nothing be done without thy knowledge and consent: neither do thou any thing but according to the will of God; as also thou dost, with all constancy<sup>1</sup>. Let your assemblies be more full: inquire into all by name. Overlook not the men and maid-servants: neither let them be puffed up; but rather let them be the more subject,—to the glory of God, that they may obtain from him a better liberty. Let them not desire to be<sup>2</sup> set free at the public cost, that they be not slaves to their own lusts.

V. Flee evil arts<sup>3</sup>; or, rather, make not any mention of them. Say to my sisters, that they love the Lord; and be satisfied with their own husbands, both in the flesh and spirit. In like manner, exhort my brethren, in the name of Jesus Christ, that they love their wives, even as the Lord the Church. If any man can remain in a virgin state, to<sup>4</sup> the honour of the flesh of Christ, let him remain without boasting: but if he boast, he is undone. And if he desire to be more taken notice of than the Bishop, he is corrupted. But it becomes all such as are married, whether men or women, to come together with the consent of the Bishop, that so their marriage may be according to godliness, and not in lust. Let all things be done to the honour of God.

VI. Hearken unto the Bishop<sup>5</sup>, that God also may hearken unto you. My soul be security for them that submit to their Bishop, with their Presbyters, and Deacons. And may my portion be together with theirs in God. Labour with

<sup>1</sup> Being well-settled.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. Annot. Cotelier. in loc.

<sup>3</sup> Or, trades.

<sup>4</sup> Vid. Annot. Vossii et Cotelier. in loc.

<sup>5</sup> Observe, from the foregoing section, that Ignatius here speaks not to Polycarp, but through him to the Church of Smyrna.

one another; contend together, run together, suffer together; sleep together, and rise together; as the stewards, and assessors, and ministers, of God. Please him under whom ye war; and from whom ye receive your wages. Let none of you be found a deserter; but let your baptism remain, as your arms—your faith, as your helmet—your charity, as your spear—your patience, as your whole armour. Let your works be your charge<sup>1</sup>, that so you may receive a suitable reward. Be long-suffering, therefore, towards each other in meekness; as God is towards you. Let me have joy of you in all things.

VII. Now forasmuch as the Church of Antioch in Syria, is, as I am told<sup>2</sup>, in peace through your prayers, I also have been the more comforted, and without care, in God<sup>3</sup>—if so be that by suffering, I shall attain unto God, that, through your prayers, I may be found a disciple of Christ. It will be very fit, O most worthy Polycarp, to call a select council<sup>4</sup>, and choose some one whom ye particularly love, and who is patient of labour, that he may be the messenger of God; and that going unto Syria, he may glorify your incessant love, to the praise of Christ. A Christian has not the power of himself, but must always be at leisure for God's service. Now this work is both God's, and yours, when ye shall have perfected it. For I trust, through the grace of God, that ye are ready to every good work that is fitting for you in the Lord. Knowing therefore your earnest affection to the truth, I have exhorted you by these short letters<sup>5</sup>.

VIII. But forasmuch as I have not been able

<sup>1</sup> That which is committed to your custody, to keep secure.

<sup>2</sup> It has been manifested unto me. <sup>3</sup> In the security of God.

<sup>4</sup> Most becoming God.

<sup>5</sup> Viz. To the Smyrneans, and This to Himself. See Pearson in loc,

274 ST. IGNATIUS'S *Epistle to ST. POLYCARP.*

to write to all the Churches, because I must suddenly sail from Troas to Neapolis—(for so is the command of those to whose pleasure I am subject)—do you write to the Churches that are near you, as being instructed in the will of God, that they also may do in like manner. Let those that are able send messengers<sup>1</sup>; and let the rest send their letters by those who shall be sent by you; that you may be glorified to all eternity<sup>2</sup>, of which you are worthy. I salute all by name, particularly the wife of Epitropus, with all her house and children. I salute Attalus, my well-beloved. I salute him who shall be thought worthy to be sent by you into Syria. Let grace be ever with him, and with Polycarp, who sends him<sup>3</sup>. I wish you all happiness in our God, Jesus Christ; in whom continue, in the unity and protection of God. I salute Alcé, my well-beloved. Farewell in the Lord.

*To POLYCARP.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Footmen.

<sup>2</sup> *Vid. Voss. in loc.* In the eternal work.

<sup>3</sup> *Ex Vet. Interpr. Vid. Voss. Annot.*



# A RELATION OF THE MARTYRDOM OF ST. IGNATIUS.

*Translated from the Original Greek, published by DR. GRABE,  
in his Spicileg. Patrum, tom. ii.*

I. **W**HEN Trajan, not long since, came to the Roman empire, Ignatius, the disciple of St. John the Apostle [and Evangelist<sup>1</sup>], a man in all things like unto the Apostles<sup>2</sup>, governed the Church of Antioch with all care; who being scarcely able to escape the storms of the many persecutions before under Domitian, as a good governor, by the helm of prayer and fasting, by the constancy of his doctrine and spiritual labour<sup>3</sup>, withstood the raging floods; fearing lest they should sink those who either wanted courage, or were not well-grounded<sup>4</sup> in the faith.

II. Wherefore the persecution being at present somewhat abated, he rejoiced greatly at the tranquillity of his Church; yet was troubled as to himself, that he had not attained to a true love of Christ, nor was come up to the pitch<sup>5</sup> of a perfect disciple: for he thought, that the confession which is made by martyrdom, would bring him to<sup>6</sup> a yet more close and intimate union with the Lord. Wherefore continuing a few years longer with the Church, and after the manner of a divine<sup>7</sup> lamp

<sup>1</sup> Desunt.—Gr.      <sup>2</sup> Apostolical.      <sup>3</sup> Compare the Cotton MS.

<sup>4</sup> *Magis simplices.* In MS. Cotton, *infirmum.*—Gr. *ἀσθενέστεροι.*

<sup>5</sup> Order.      <sup>6</sup> More to a familiarity of the Lord.      <sup>7</sup> Candle.

illuminating the hearts<sup>1</sup> of the faithful by the exposition of the Holy Scriptures, he attained to what he had desired.

III. For Trajan, in the nineteenth year<sup>a</sup> of his empire, being lifted up with his victory over the Scythians and Dacians, and many other nations; and thinking that the religious company of Christians was yet wanting to his absolute and universal dominion; and thereupon threatening them that they should be persecuted, unless they would choose to worship the devil, with all other nations; fear obliged all such as live religiously, either to sacrifice, or to die. Wherefore our brave<sup>c</sup> soldier of Christ, being in fear for the Church of Antioch, was voluntarily brought before Trajan; who was at that time there, on his way to Armenia, and the Parthians, against whom he was hastening.

IV. Being come into the presence of the emperor Trajan, the emperor asked him, saying; "What a wicked wretch<sup>d</sup> art thou, thus to endeavour<sup>e</sup> to transgress our commands, and to persuade others also to do likewise, to their destruction<sup>f</sup>?" Ignatius answered; "No one ought to call Theophorus after such a manner<sup>g</sup>; forasmuch as all wicked spirits are departed far from the servants of God. But if, because I am a trouble to those evil spirits, you call me wicked, with reference to them I confess the charge; for having [within me<sup>h</sup>] Christ, the heavenly king, I dissolve all the snares of<sup>i</sup> the devils."

<sup>1</sup> Every man's heart.

<sup>a</sup> See Bp. Pearson's Diss. of the year of St. Ignatius's Martyrdom, p. 61.

<sup>b</sup> Manly.

<sup>c</sup> Devil.—*Vid. Pears. Find. Ign. par. ii. cap. 12.*

<sup>d</sup> *Evadēfor*.—*Gr.* To set thyself.

<sup>e</sup> That they may be miserably destroyed.—*Gr.*

<sup>f</sup> *Kanēdēpora*.

<sup>g</sup> Desunt.—*Gr.*

<sup>h</sup> Of those.

V. *Trajan* replied, "And who is Theophorus?"

*Ignatius*. "He who has Christ in his breast."

*Trajan*. "And do not we then seem to thee to have the gods within us<sup>1</sup>, who fight for us against our enemies?"—*Ignat*. "You err, in that you call the evil spirits of the heathens, gods. For there is but one God, who made heaven and earth, and the sea, and all that are in them; and one Jesus Christ, his only-begotten Son, whose kingdom may I enjoy."

VI. *Trajan*. "His kingdom you say<sup>2</sup> who was crucified under Pontius Pilate."—*Ignat*. "His who crucified my sin, with the inventor of it; and has put all the deceit and malice of the devil under the feet of those who carry him in their heart."—*Trajan*. "Dost thou then carry Him who was crucified within thee?"—*Ignat*. "I do: for it is written, *I will dwell in them and walk in them*<sup>3</sup>."—Then *Trajan* pronounced this sentence against him: "Forasmuch as *Ignatius* has confessed that he carries about within himself Him that was crucified, we command that he be carried, bound by soldiers, to the great Rome, there to be thrown to the beasts, for the entertainment<sup>4</sup> of the people."

VII. When the holy Martyr heard this sentence, he cried out with joy, "I thank thee, O Lord, that thou hast vouchsafed to honour me with a perfect love towards thee; and hast made me to be put into iron bonds with thy Apostle Paul." Having said this, he with joy put his bonds about him; and having first prayed for the

<sup>1</sup> In our mind.—*Gr*. In our breast: so MS. Cotton. To have an understanding of the gods; *or*, the gods according to understanding. So the other, of Abp. Usher. *Metaphrastes* joins both together. *Vid. Annot. Usher. n. 5.*

<sup>2</sup> You mean him.—*Gr*.

<sup>3</sup> 2 Cor. vi. 16.

<sup>4</sup> *Gr*.—Delight.

Church, and commended it with tears unto the Lord, he was hurried away, like a choice ram, the leader of a good flock, by the brutish soldiers, in order to his being carried to Rome, there to be devoured by the blood-thirsty beasts.

VIII. Wherefore with much readiness and joy, out of his desire to suffer, he left Antioch and came to Seleucia; from whence he was to sail. And after a great deal of toil, being come to Smyrna, he left the ship with great gladness, and hastened to see the holy Polycarp, his fellow-scholar<sup>1</sup>, who was bishop there: for they had both of them been formerly the disciples of St. John.

IX. Being brought to him, and communicating to him some spiritual gifts, and glorying in his bonds, he entreated, first of all, the whole Church, (for the churches and cities of Asia attended<sup>2</sup> this holy man by their Bishops, and Priests, and Deacons, all hastening to him, if by any means they might receive<sup>3</sup> some part of his spiritual gift,) but more particularly Polycarp, to<sup>4</sup> contend with God in his behalf; that being<sup>5</sup> suddenly taken by the beasts from the world, he might appear before the face of Christ. And this he thus spake, and testified, extending so much his love for<sup>6</sup> Christ as one who was about to receive heaven through his own good confession, and the earnest contention of those who prayed together with him; and to return a recompense to the Churches, who came to meet him by their governors, he<sup>7</sup> sent letters of thanks to them, which distilled spiritual grace, with prayer and exhortation. Seeing there-

<sup>1</sup> Co-auditor.

<sup>2</sup> Gr.—Received.

<sup>3</sup> Partake of his spiritual blessing.—*MS. Cotton.* Hear his discourses.—*Metaphrast.*

<sup>4</sup> To contend to his purpose.

<sup>5</sup> That the more suddenly disappearing to the world.

<sup>6</sup> To.

<sup>7</sup> Gr.—By sending.

fore all men so kindly affected towards him; and fearing lest the love of the brotherhood should prevent his hastening to the Lord, now that a fair door of suffering was opened to him; he wrote the Epistle we here subjoin to the Romans. (See the Epistle before.)

X. And having thus strengthened such of the brethren at Rome as were against his martyrdom, by this Epistle, as he desired; setting sail from Smyrna, (for he was pressed by the soldiers to hasten to the public spectacles at great Rome, that being delivered to the wild beasts in sight of the people of the Romans, he might receive the crown for which he strove;) he came to Troas; from whence going on, being brought to Neapolis, he passed by Philippi through Macedonia, and that part of Epirus which is next to Epidamnus: having found a ship in one of the sea-ports, he sailed over the Adriatic sea; [and from thence entering into the Tyrrhene,] and passing by several islands and cities, at length he saw Puteoli; which being shewed to the holy man, he hastened to go forth, being desirous to walk from thence, in the way that Paul the Apostle had gone<sup>1</sup>: but a violent wind arising, and driving<sup>2</sup> on the ship, would not suffer him so to do; wherefore, commending the love of the brethren in that place, he sailed forward.

XI. And the wind continuing favourable to us, in one day and a night, we indeed were unwillingly hurried on, as sorrowing to think of being separated from this holy Martyr: but to him it happened justly according to his wish, that he might go the sooner<sup>3</sup> out of the world, and attain

---

<sup>1</sup> Acts xxviii. 13, 14.

<sup>2</sup> The ship being repelled from the forepart would not permit.

<sup>3</sup> Being in haste to go.

unto the Lord, whom he loved. Wherefore, sailing into the Roman port, and those impure sports being almost at an end, the soldiers began to be offended at our slowness; but the Bishop with great joy complied with their hastiness.

XII. Being therefore soon forced away from the port so called, we forthwith met the brethren, (for the report of what concerned the holy Martyr was spread abroad,) who were full of fear and joy: for they rejoiced in that God had vouchsafed them the company of Theophorus, but were afraid, when they considered, that such an one was brought thither to die. Now some of these he commanded to hold their peace who were the most zealous<sup>1</sup> for his safety, and said, that "they would appease the people; that they "should not desire the destruction of the just<sup>2</sup>:" who presently knowing this by the spirit, and saluting all of them, he desired them that they would shew a true love to him; disputing yet more with them than he had done in his Epistle, and persuading them not to envy him who was hastening unto the Lord. And so, all the brethren kneeling down, he prayed<sup>3</sup> to the Son of God, in behalf of the Churches, that he would put a stop to the persecution, and continue the love of the brethren towards each other; which being done, he was with all haste led into the amphitheatre, and speedily, according to the command of Cæsar before given, thrown in, the end of the spectacles being at hand. For it was then a very solemn day, called in the Roman tongue the thirteenth of the calends of January; upon which the people were more than ordinarily

---

<sup>1</sup> Hot.

<sup>2</sup> Quietare plebem ad non expetere perdere justum.

<sup>3</sup> Entreated.

wont to be gathered together. Thus was he delivered to the cruel beasts, near the temple, by wicked men; that so the desire of the holy Martyr, Ignatius, might be accomplished; as it is written, *The desire of the righteous is acceptable*<sup>1</sup>; namely, that he might not be burthensome to any of the brethren, by the gathering of his relics, but might be wholly devoured by them; according as in his Epistle he had before wished that so his end might be. For only the greater and harder of his holy bones remained; which were carried to Antioch, and there put up in a napkin, as an inestimable treasure left to the Church by the grace which was in the Martyr.

XIII. Now these things were done the thirteenth of the calends of January, that is, the twentieth day of December; Sura and Synecius being the second time consuls of the Romans; of which we ourselves were eye-witnesses. And being the night following watching, with tears, in the house; praying to God with our bended knees, that he would give us, weak men, some assurance of what had been before done,—it happened, that falling into a slumber, some of us, on the sudden, saw the Blessed Ignatius standing by us and embracing us; others beheld the Blessed Martyr praying for us; others, as it were, dropping with sweat, as if he were just come from his great labour, and standing by the Lord.

XIV. Which when we saw, being filled with joy, and comparing the visions of our dreams with one another, we glorified God, the giver of all good things; and being assured of the blessedness of the Saint<sup>2</sup>, we have<sup>3</sup> made known

---

<sup>1</sup> Prov. x. 24.    <sup>2</sup> *Beatificantes Sanctum*. Pronouncing him blessed.

<sup>3</sup> Having manifested or made known.

unto you both the day and the time; that, being assembled together according to the time of his martyrdom, we may communicate with the Combatant, and most valiant Martyr, of Christ, who trod under foot the devil, and perfected the course he had piously desired, in Christ Jesus our Lord; by whom, and with whom, all glory and power be to the Father, with the Blessed Spirit, for ever and ever. Amen.



CIRCULAR EPISTLE  
OF THE  
CHURCH OF SMYRNA  
CONCERNING THE  
MARTYRDOM OF ST. POLYCARP.

---

*The Church of God which is at SMYRNA, to the Church of God which is at PHILADELPHIA<sup>1</sup>; and to all the other assemblies<sup>2</sup> of the Holy Catholic Church, in every place; mercy, peace, and love from God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, be multiplied.*

I. **WE** have written to you, Brethren, both of what concerns the other Martyrs, but especially Polycarp the Blessed, who by his sufferings<sup>3</sup> put an end to the persecution; setting, as it were, his seal to it. For almost all things that went before, were done, that the Lord might shew us, from above, a martyrdom truly such as became the Gospel. For he expected to be delivered up, even as the Lord also did, that we should become the followers of his example<sup>4</sup>; considering not only what is profitable for ourselves, but also for our neighbours' advantage. For it is the part of a true and perfect charity, to desire, not only that a man's self should be saved, but also all the brethren.

II. The sufferings<sup>5</sup>, then, of all the other Martyrs, were blessed<sup>6</sup> and generous; which they underwent according to the will of God. For

---

<sup>1</sup> Philomelia Vid. Annot. Uss. n. 1. Comp. Vet. Lat. Interpr. et Euseb. Hist. Eccles. l. iv. c. 15.    <sup>2</sup> Παρεκκλησιαι.

<sup>3</sup> Martyrdom.

<sup>4</sup> Him.

<sup>5</sup> Martyrdoms.

<sup>6</sup> Happy.

so it becomes<sup>1</sup> us, who are more religious than others, to ascribe the power and ordering of all things unto him. And, indeed, who can choose but admire the greatness of their mind, and that admirable patience, and love of their Master, which then appeared in them? Who when they were so flayed with whipping, that the frame and structure of their bodies were laid open to their very inward veins and arteries, nevertheless endured it. And when all that beheld them pitied and lamented them; yet they shewed so great a generosity of mind, that not one of them let so much as a sigh, or a groan, escape them, <sup>2</sup>plainly shewing, that those Holy Martyrs of Christ, at the very same time that they were thus tormented, were absent from the body; or, rather, that the Lord stood by them, and conversed with them. Wherefore, being<sup>3</sup> supported by the grace of Christ, they despised all the torments of the world; by the sufferings of an hour, redeeming themselves from everlasting punishment. For this cause, even the fire of their cruel and barbarous executioners seemed cold to them; <sup>4</sup>whilst they hoped thereby to escape that fire which is eternal, and shall never be extinguished; and beheld, with the eyes of faith<sup>5</sup>, those good things which are reserved for them that endure to the end; *which neither ear has heard, nor eye seen, nor have they entered into the heart of man*<sup>6</sup>. But to them they were now revealed<sup>7</sup> by the Lord; as being no longer men, but already become angels. In like manner, those who were con-

---

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Correct. Cotelier. et Vales. in Annot. ad Euseb. l. iv. c. 15. p. 61.

<sup>2</sup> Shewing to all of us.

<sup>3</sup> Attending to.

<sup>4</sup> For they had before their eyes to escape.

<sup>5</sup> Of their heart.

<sup>6</sup> 1 Cor. ii. 9.

<sup>7</sup> Shewn.

demned to the beasts, and kept a long time in prison, underwent many cruel torments; being forced to lie upon sharp spikes<sup>1</sup>, laid under their bodies; and tormented with divers other sorts of punishments; that so, if it were possible, the tyrant, by the length of their sufferings, might have brought them to deny Christ.

III. For, indeed, the devil did invent many things against them; but, thanks be to God, he was not able to prevail over all: for the brave Germanicus strengthened those that feared<sup>2</sup>, by his patience; and fought gloriously with the beasts. For when the Proconsul would have persuaded him, telling him, that he should consider his age, and spare himself, he pulled the wild beast to him, and provoked him, being desirous the more quickly to be delivered from a wicked and unjust world<sup>3</sup>. Upon this, the whole multitude, wondering at the courage of the holy and pious race of Christians, cried out, "Take away those wicked wretches<sup>4</sup>; let Polycarp be looked out."

IV. Then one named Quintus, a Phrygian, being newly come from thence, seeing the beasts, was afraid. This was he who forced himself and some others, to present themselves of their own accord, to the trial. Him, therefore, the Proconsul persuaded, with many promises, to swear and sacrifice. For which cause, Brethren, we do not commend those who offer themselves to persecution; seeing the Gospel teaches no such thing.

V. But the most admirable Polycarp, when he first heard that he was called for, was not at all

---

<sup>1</sup> See Bishop Usher's Annot. n. 7. Euseb. l. iv. c. 15. et in eum  
<sup>2</sup> Annot. Valesii p. 62. D. <sup>3</sup> Their fearfulness.  
<sup>4</sup> Atheists.

concerned at it; but resolved to tarry in the city. Nevertheless, he was at the last persuaded, at the desire of many, to go out of it. He departed therefore into a little village, not far distant from the city, and there tarried with a few about him; doing nothing, night nor day, but praying for all men, and for the Churches which were in all the world, according to his usual custom. And as he was praying, he saw a vision three days before he was taken; and, behold, the pillow under his head seemed to him on fire. Whereupon, turning to those that were with him, he said prophetically, that he<sup>1</sup> should be burnt alive.

VI. Now when those who were to take him drew near, he departed into another village; and immediately they who sought him came thither. And when they found him not, they seized upon two young men that were there; one of which, being tormented, confessed. For it was impossible he should be concealed, forasmuch as they who betrayed him were his own domestics. So the officer who is also called *cleronomus*<sup>2</sup>, (Hérod by name,) hastened to bring him into the lists; that so Polycarp might receive his proper portion, being made partaker of Christ, and they that betrayed him, undergo the punishment of Judas.

VII. The serjeants, therefore, and horsemen, taking the young lad along with them, departed about supper-time, (being Friday,) with their usual arms, as it were against a thief or a robber. And being come to the place where he was, about the close of the evening, they found him lying down in a little upper-room; from whence he could easily have escaped into another place, but he

---

<sup>1</sup> I must be.

<sup>2</sup> Justice of the peace.—*Vid. User. in loc. num. 14, 15. Vales. in Euseb. p. 63. D.*

would not; saying, "The will of the Lord be done." Wherefore, when he heard that they were come to the house, he went down and spake to them. And as they that were present wondered at his age and constancy, some of them began to say, "Was<sup>1</sup> there need of all this care to take such an old man?" Then presently he ordered, that the same hour there should be somewhat got ready for them, that they might eat and drink their fill; desiring them withal, that they would give him one hour's liberty the while, to pray without<sup>2</sup> disturbance. And when they had permitted him, he stood praying, being full of the grace of God, so that he ceased not for two whole hours, to the admiration of all that heard him; insomuch that many of the soldiers began to repent that they were come out against so godly an old man.

VIII. As soon as he had done his prayer—in which he remembered all men, whether little or great, honourable or obscure, that had at any time been<sup>3</sup> acquainted with him; and, with them, the whole Catholic Church, over all the world—the time being come that he was to depart, the guards set him upon an ass, and so brought him into the city, being the day of the great Sabbath. And Herod, the chief officer, with his father Nicetes, met him in a chariot. And having taken him up to them, and set him in the chariot, they began to persuade him, saying, "What harm<sup>1</sup> is there in it, to say, Lord Cæsar, and sacrifice, (with the rest that is usual on such occasions,) and so be safe?" But Polycarp, at first, an-

---

<sup>1</sup> Why was all this diligence.—*Vid. Annot. 20. Usser. in loc.*

<sup>2</sup> Freely.

<sup>3</sup> Comp. Euseb. l. iv. c. 15. p. 10. B. edit. Vales. et Annot. Vales. p. 62. C.

swered them not: whereupon they continuing to urge him, he said, "I shall not do what you "persuade me to." So being out of all hope of prevailing with him, they<sup>1</sup> began first to rail at him; and then, with violence, threw him out of the chariot, insomuch that he hurt his thigh with<sup>2</sup> the fall. But he, not turning back, went on readily with all diligence, as if he had received no harm at all, and so was brought to the lists, where there was so great a tumult, that nobody could be heard.

IX. As he was going into the lists, there came a voice from heaven to him—"Be strong, Polycarp, and quit thyself like a man." Now no one saw who it was that spake to him; but for the voice, many of our brethren, who were present, heard it. And as he was brought in, there was a great disturbance when they heard how that Polycarp was taken. And when he came near, the Proconsul asked him, "Whether he was Polycarp?" who confessing that he was, he persuaded him to deny the faith, saying, "Reverence thy old age;" with many other things of the like nature, as their custom is; concluding thus, "Swear by Cæsar's fortune. Repent, and say, 'Take away the wicked!'" Then Polycarp, looking with a stern countenance upon the whole multitude of wicked Gentiles that was gathered together in the lists; and shaking his hand at them, looked up to heaven, and groaning, said, "Take away the wicked." But the Proconsul, insisting and saying, "Swear; and I will set thee at liberty: reproach Christ." Polycarp replied, "Eighty-and-six years have I now served Christ,

---

<sup>1</sup> They spake bitter words.

<sup>2</sup> Getting out of the chariot.

<sup>3</sup> Atheists.

"and he has never done me the least wrong; how then can I blaspheme my King and my Saviour?"

X. And when the Proconsul nevertheless still insisted, saying, "Swear by the Genius of Cæsar," he answered, "Seeing thou art so vainly urgent with me that I should swear, as thou callest it, by the Genius of Cæsar, seeming as if thou didst not know what I am; hear me freely professing it to thee, that I am a Christian. But if thou farther desirest an account what Christianity is, appoint a day, and thou shalt hear it." The Proconsul replied, "Persuade the people." Polycarp answered, "To thee have I offered to give a reason of my faith: for so are we taught to pay all due honour (such only excepted as would be hurtful to ourselves,) to the powers and authorities which are ordained of God. But for the people, I esteem them not worthy, that I should give any account<sup>1</sup> of my faith to them."

XI. The Proconsul continued, and said unto him, "I have wild beasts ready; to those I will cast thee, except thou repent." He answered, "Call for them then; for we Christians are fixed in our minds not to change from good to evil. But for me it will be good, to be changed from evil to good<sup>2</sup>." The Proconsul added, "Seeing thou despisest the wild beasts, I will cause thee to be devoured by fire, unless thou shalt repent." Polycarp answered, "Thou threatenest me with fire which burns for an hour, and so is extinguished; but knowest not the fire of the future judgment, and of that eternal punishment which

---

<sup>1</sup> Make an apology.

<sup>2</sup> The meaning is—To be translated from what is grievous, and hard to suffer, here, to the just reward of my sufferings in the other world.

"is reserved for the ungodly. But why tarriest thou? Bring forth what thou wilt."

XII. Having said this, and many other things of the like nature, he was filled with confidence and joy, insomuch that his very countenance was full of grace; so that he did not only not let it fall with any confusion<sup>1</sup> at what was spoken to him; but on the contrary, the Proconsul was struck with astonishment, and sent his crier into the middle of the lists, to proclaim three several times—"Polycarp has confessed himself to be a Christian." Which being done by the crier, the whole multitude, both of the Gentiles and of the Jews which dwelt at Smyrna, being full of fury, cried out with a loud voice, "This is the doctor of Asia<sup>2</sup>, the father of the Christians, and the overthrower of our gods; he that has taught so many not to sacrifice, nor pay any worship to the gods." And saying this, they cried out, and desired Philip the Asiarch<sup>3</sup>, that he would let loose a lion against Polycarp. But Philip replied, that it was not lawful for him to do so, because that kind of spectacle was already over<sup>4</sup>. Then it pleased them to cry out with one consent, that Polycarp should be burnt alive. For so it was necessary that the vision should be fulfilled which was made manifest unto him by his pillow, when, seeing it on fire as he was praying, he turned about, and said prophetically to the faithful that were with him, "I must be burnt alive."

XIII. This, therefore, was done with greater

<sup>1</sup> As troubled or disturbed.

<sup>2</sup> So Eusebius, Ruffin. Vet. Interpr. Lat. &c. Vid. User. not. 44.

<sup>3</sup> Who was President of the Spectacles, the Chief Priest for that year. See User. Annot. numb. 46. Vales. in Euseb. p. 63, 64.

<sup>4</sup> He had already fulfilled, or finished, the baiting of dogs.



speed than it was spoke; the whole multitude instantly gathering together wood and faggots, out of the shops and baths: the Jews especially, according to their custom, with all readiness assisting them in it. When the fuel was ready, Polycarp, laying aside all his upper garments, and undoing his girdle, tried also to pull off his clothes underneath, which aforetime he was not wont to do; forasmuch as always every one of the Christians that was about him contended who should soonest touch his flesh. For<sup>1</sup> he was truly adorned by his good conversation with all kind of piety<sup>2</sup>, even before his martyrdom. This being done, they presently put about him such things<sup>3</sup> as were necessary to prepare the fire<sup>4</sup>. But when they would have also nailed him to the stake, he said, "Let me alone as I am: for he who has given me strength to endure the fire, will also enable me, without your securing me by nails, to stand without moving in the pile."

XIV. Wherefore they did not nail him, but only tied him to it. But he, having put his hands behind him—and being bound as a ram chosen out of a great flock for an offering, and prepared to be a burnt-sacrifice acceptable unto God—looked up to heaven, and said, "O Lord God Almighty, the Father of thy well-beloved and blessed Son, Jesus Christ, by whom we have received the knowledge of thee; the God of angels and powers, and of every creature, and especially of the whole race of just men who live in thy presence! I give thee hearty thanks that thou hast vouchsafed to bring me to this day, and to

<sup>1</sup> Vid. aliter apud Euseb. l. iv. c. 15. Et in eum Vales. Annot. p. 64.

<sup>2</sup> With every thing that was good. <sup>3</sup> Instruments.

<sup>4</sup> The pile that was to burn him.—See Vales. in Euseb. p. 64. b.

“ this hour; that I should have a part in the  
 “ number of thy Martyrs, in the cup of thy Christ,  
 “ to the resurrection of eternal life, both of soul  
 “ and body, in the incorruption of the Holy Ghost.  
 “ Among which may I be accepted this day before  
 “ thee, as a fat and acceptable sacrifice; as thou  
 “ the true God, with whom is no falsehood, hast  
 “ both before ordained, and manifested unto me,  
 “ and also hast now fulfilled it. For this, and for  
 “ all things else, I praise thee, I bless thee, I  
 “ glorify thee<sup>1</sup>, by the eternal and heavenly high-  
 “ priest, Jesus Christ, thy beloved Son; with  
 “ whom, to thee, and<sup>2</sup> the Holy Ghost, be glory,  
 “ both now, and to all succeeding ages. Amen.”

XV. He had no sooner pronounced aloud *Amen*, and finished his prayer, but they who were appointed to be his executioners lighted the fire. And when the flame began to blaze to a very great height; behold, a wonderful miracle appeared, to us who had the happiness to see it, and who were reserved by heaven to report to others what had happened. For the flame, making a kind of arch, like the sail of a ship filled with the wind, encompassed, as in a circle, the body of the holy Martyr; who stood in the midst of it, not as if his flesh were burnt, but as bread that is baked, or as gold or silver glowing in the furnace. Moreover, so sweet a smell came from it, as if frankincense, or some rich spices, had been smoking there.

XVI. At length, when those wicked men saw that his body could not be consumed by the fire, they commanded the executioner<sup>3</sup> to go near to

<sup>1</sup> Euseb. et Vet. Lat. Interp.

<sup>2</sup> In the H. G. Euseb.

<sup>3</sup> *Καμίνιστρα*. Vid. Annot. Usser. num. 75.—Vales. understands by it, one of the lance-men that were set to kill the beasts, if they grew unruly, at these kind of spectacles. Vid. in Euseb. p. 64. C.

him, and stick his dagger in him; which being accordingly done, there came forth so great a quantity of blood<sup>1</sup>, as even extinguished the fire, and raised an admiration in all the people, to consider what a difference there was between the Infidels and the Elect: one of which this great martyr, Polycarp, most certainly was; being in our times a truly apostolical and prophetical teacher, and bishop of the Catholic Church which is at Smyrna. For every word that went out of his mouth either has been already fulfilled, or, in its due time, will be accomplished.

XVII. But when the emulous, and envious, and wicked adversary of the race of the just, saw the greatness of his martyrdom; and considered how irreprehensible his conversation had been from the beginning, and how he was now crowned with the crown of immortality, having without all controversy received his reward; he took all possible care that not the least remainder of his body should be taken away by us, although many desired to do it, and to be made partakers of his holy flesh. And to that end, he suggested it to Nicetas, the father of Herod and brother of Alcé, to go to the governor, and hinder him from giving us his body to be buried. "Lest, (says he,) forsaking him that was crucified, they should begin to worship this Polycarp." And this he said at the suggestion and instance of the Jews; who also watched us, that we should not take him out of the fire: not considering<sup>2</sup>, that neither is it possible for us ever to forsake Christ, who suffered for the salvation of all such as shall be saved throughout the whole world, *the righteous for the ungodly*<sup>3</sup>; nor worship any other besides him. For him indeed, as

---

<sup>1</sup> So Eusebius.

<sup>2</sup> Knowing.

<sup>3</sup> 1 Pet. iii. 18.

being the Son of God, we do adore: but for the martyrs, we worthily love them, as the disciples and followers<sup>1</sup> of our Lord; and upon the account of their exceeding great affection towards 'their Master, and their King. Of whom may we also be made companions and fellow-disciples.

XVIII. The centurion, therefore, seeing the contention of the Jews, put his body into the midst of the fire, and so consumed it. After which, we taking up his bones, more precious than the richest jewels, and tried above gold, deposited them where it was fitting: where, being gathered together as we have opportunity, with joy and gladness, the Lord shall grant unto us to celebrate the anniversary of his martyrdom, both in memory of those who have suffered, and for the exercise and preparation of those that may hereafter suffer.

XIX. Such was the passion of the blessed Polycarp, who though he was the twelfth of those who, together with those of Philadelphia, suffered martyrdom, is yet alone chiefly had in memory of all men: insomuch that he is spoken of, by the very Gentiles themselves, in every place, as having been not only an eminent teacher, but also a glorious Martyr; whose death<sup>2</sup> all desire to imitate, as having been every way conformable to the Gospel of Christ. For having by patience overcome the unjust governor, and so received the crown of immortality, he now, together with the Apostles, and all other righteous men, who have gone before, with great triumph, glorifies God, even the Father; and blesses our Lord, the governor both of our souls<sup>3</sup> and bodies, and

---

<sup>1</sup> Imitators.

<sup>2</sup> Own proper.

<sup>3</sup> Martyrdom.

<sup>4</sup> Vid. Coteler. in marg. et Vet. Lat. Interp.

shepherd of the Catholic Church which is over all the earth.

XX. Whereas therefore ye desired that we would at large declare to you what was done; we have for the present given you a summary account of it by our brother Marcus: having therefore yourselves read this Epistle, you may do well to send it forward to the brethren that are farther off, that they also may glorify God, who makes such choice of his own servants, and is able to bring all of us, by his grace and help, to his eternal kingdom, through his only-begotten Son Jesus Christ; to whom be glory, and honour, and power, and majesty, for ever and ever. Amen.— Salute all the saints; they that are with us salute you; and Evarestus, who wrote this Epistle, with his whole house.

XXI. Now the suffering of the blessed Polycarp was the second day of the present month Xanthicus; viz. the seventh of the calends of May<sup>1</sup>; being the great sabbath, about the eighth hour. He was taken by Herod, Philip the Trallian being high-priest<sup>2</sup>; Statius Quadratus, proconsul; but our Saviour Christ reigning for evermore: to him be honour, glory, majesty, and an eternal throne, from generation to generation. Amen.

XXII. We wish you, Brethren, all happiness, by living according to the rule of the Gospel of Jesus Christ: with whom, glory be to God the Father, and the Holy Spirit, for the salvation of his chosen saints. After whose example the blessed<sup>3</sup> Polycarp suffered; at whose feet may we be found in the kingdom of Jesus Christ.

---

<sup>1</sup> Rather of April.—*See Annot. User. n. 105. et Pearson Chron. Diss. 11. c. 18. n. 4.*

<sup>2</sup> Asiarch.

<sup>3</sup> As the blessed, &c.

*An ADVERTISEMENT relating to the foregoing*  
EPISTLE.

---

THIS Epistle was transcribed by CAIUS<sup>1</sup> out of the copy of IRENÆUS the disciple of POLYCARP; who also lived and conversed with Irenæus. And I, Socrates, transcribed it at Corinth, out of the copy of the said Caius. Grace be with all.

After which I, Pionius, again wrote it from the copy before mentioned; having searched it out by the revelation of Polycarp, who directed me to it; as also I shall declare in what follows: Having gathered these things together, now almost corrupted through process of time, that Jesus Christ our Lord may also gather me together with his elect; to whom, with the Father, and the Holy Ghost, be glory for ever and ever. Amen.

---

<sup>1</sup> Ad finem Exempl. User. p. 30.

GENUINE REMAINS  
OF THE  
APOSTOLICAL FATHERS.

---

---

Part II.

---

---

IN WHICH ARE COMPRISED,

- I. *The Epistle of St. BARNABAS.*
- II. *The SHEPHERD of HERMAS.*
- AND
- III. *Part of the Second Epistle of St. CLEMENT to  
the CORINTHIANS.*





# CONTENTS

## OF THE

### CATHOLIC EPISTLE OF ST. BARNABAS.

---

Chap.

- I. *THE Salutation, and Preface to the following Epistle.*
- II, III. *That God has abolished the legal Sacrifices, to introduce the Spiritual Righteousness of the Gospel.*
- IV. *The Prophecies of Daniel concerning the Ten Kings, and the Coming of Christ.*
- V, VI. *That Christ was to suffer; proved from the Prophecies concerning him.*
- VII. *The Scape-goat, an evident Type of this.*
- VIII. *The Red Heifer, another Type of Christ.*
- IX. *Of the Circumcision of the Ears; and how, in the first Institution of Circumcision, ABRAHAM mystically foretold Christ by Name.*
- X. *That the Commands of Moses, concerning Clean and Unclean Beasts, &c. were all designed for a Spiritual Signification.*
- XI, XII. *Baptism and the Cross of Christ, foretold in Figures under the Law.*
- XIII. *The Promise of God not made to the Jews only, but to the Gentiles also:*
- XIV. *And fulfilled to us by Jesus Christ.*
- XV. *That the Sabbath of the Jews was but a figure of a more Glorious Sabbath to come.*
- XVI. *Their Temple; of the Spiritual Temples of God.*
- XVII. *The Conclusion of the former part of this Epistle.*
- XVIII. *He goes on to the other Part, which relates to Practice: this he divides into two considerations; the former, of the Way of Light; the latter, of the Way of Darkness.*
- XIX. *Of the Way of Light; being a summary of what a Christian is to do, that he may be happy for ever.*
- XX. *Of the Way of Darkness; that is, what kind of Persons shall be for ever cast out of the Kingdom of God.*
- XXI. *The Close of all; being an earnest Exhortation to them to live so that they may be blessed to all Eternity.*

THE  
CATHOLIC EPISTLE OF ST. BARNABAS.

---

*All happiness to you, my Sons and Daughters, in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, who loved us; in peace.*

I. **H**AVING perceived abundance of knowledge of the great and excellent<sup>1</sup> laws<sup>2</sup> of God to be in you, I exceedingly rejoice in your blessed and admirable souls<sup>3</sup>, because ye have so worthily received the grace which was grafted<sup>4</sup> in you. For which cause, I am full of joy, hoping the rather to be saved<sup>5</sup>; inasmuch as I truly see a spirit infused into you, from the pure<sup>6</sup> Fountain of God. Having this persuasion, and being fully convinced thereof, because that since I have begun to speak unto you, I have had a more than ordinary good success in the way of the law<sup>7</sup> of the Lord, which is in Christ. For which cause<sup>8</sup>, Brethren, I also think, verily, that I love you above my own soul; because that therein dwelleth the greatness of faith and charity, as also the hope of that life which is to come. Wherefore considering this, that if I shall take care to communicate to you a part of what I have received, it shall turn to my reward, that I have served such good souls<sup>9</sup>, I gave diligence to write in a few words unto you, that together with your faith, your<sup>10</sup> knowledge

<sup>1</sup> *Honestarum.*    <sup>2</sup> *Æquitarum; Δίκαιον μέρους*; righteous judgments.

<sup>3</sup> *Spiritibus*, disposition.

<sup>4</sup> Natural; Gr. *ἡμετέρας*. See Chap. xix. *ἡμετέρας δόξης διδασκῶν*; which the Lat. Int. renders *Naturale donum doctrinæ*. Comp. Jam. i. 31.

<sup>5</sup> *Liberari*: Gr. ut videtur *εὐφραίνεσθαι*.    <sup>6</sup> *Honesto*, from the Gr. *καλῶς*.

<sup>7</sup> Comp. Psal. cix. 33. viz. either by preaching, or fulfilling the same.

<sup>8</sup> Vid. Annot. Voss. in loc.    <sup>9</sup> *Talibus spiritibus serviēti*. Usser.

<sup>10</sup> *Trivium*.

also may be perfect. There are, therefore, three things ordained by the Lord<sup>1</sup>—the hope of life, the beginning<sup>2</sup>, and the completion of it. For the Lord hath both declared unto us, by the prophets, those things that are past<sup>3</sup>; and opened to us<sup>4</sup> the beginnings of those that are to come. Wherefore, it will behove us, as he has spoken<sup>5</sup>, to come more holily<sup>6</sup>, and nearer to his altar. I therefore, not as a teacher, but as one of you<sup>7</sup>, will endeavour to lay before you a few things by which you may, on many accounts<sup>8</sup>, become the more joyful.

II. Seeing, then, the days are exceeding evil, and the adversary has got the power of this present world<sup>9</sup>, we ought to give the more diligence to inquire into the righteous judgments<sup>10</sup> of the Lord. Now, the assistants of our faith are, fear and patience; our fellow-combatants, long-suffering and continence. Whilst these remain pure in what relates unto the Lord: wisdom, and understanding, and science, and knowledge—rejoice together with them. For God has manifested to us, by all the Prophets, that he has no occasion for our sacrifices, or burnt-offerings, or oblations; saying thus: *To what purpose is the multitude of your sacrifices unto me? saith the LORD: I am full of the burnt-offerings of rams, and the fat of fed beasts<sup>11</sup>; and I delight not in the blood of bullocks, or of he-goats. When ye come to appear before me; who hath required this at your hands?*

<sup>1</sup> *Δόγματις Κυρίου*, Constitutions of the Lord.

<sup>2</sup> *Viz.* Faith and Charity.—See before.

<sup>3</sup> *Namely*, which we are to believe.

<sup>4</sup> *That is*, which are to be hoped for, and end in love.

<sup>5</sup> Given us to know.

<sup>6</sup> *Honestius et altius*; the more honestly and highly.

<sup>7</sup> Like yourselves.

<sup>8</sup> In many things.

<sup>9</sup> Age.

<sup>10</sup> Equities. *Comp. Græc. Clem. Alex.*

<sup>11</sup> Lambs.

*Ye shall no more tread my courts. Bring no more vain oblations; incense is an abomination unto me: your new moons and sabbaths, the calling of assemblies, I cannot away with; it is iniquity, even the solemn meeting. Your new moons, and your appointed feasts, my soul hateth*<sup>1</sup>. These things, therefore, hath God abolished, that the new law of our Lord Jesus Christ, which is without the yoke of any such necessity, might have the spiritual offering of men themselves. For so the Lord saith again to those heretofore; *'Did I at all command your fathers, when they came out of the land of Egypt, concerning burnt-offerings or sacrifices: but this I commanded them, saying, Let none of you imagine evil in your hearts against his neighbour, and love no false oath.* Forasmuch then as we are not without understanding, we ought to apprehend the design of our merciful Father<sup>4</sup>. For he speaks to us, being willing that we who have been in the same error about the sacrifices, should seek and find how to approach unto him. And therefore he thus bespeaks us—*The sacrifice of God [is a broken spirit], a broken and contrite heart God will not despise*<sup>5</sup>. Wherefore, Brethren, we ought the more diligently to inquire after those things that belong to our salvation, that the adversary may not have any entrance into us, and deprive us of our spiritual life.

III. Wherefore he again speaketh to them, concerning these things: *Ye shall not fast as ye do this day, to make your voice to be heard on high. Is it such a fast that I have chosen? a day for a man to afflict his soul? Is it to bow down his head*

---

<sup>1</sup> Isaiah i. 11—14.

<sup>2</sup> Jer. vii. 22, 23.

<sup>3</sup> Zech. viii. 17.

<sup>4</sup> Of the mercy of our Father.

<sup>5</sup> Psal. l. 19.

*like a bulrush, and to spread sackcloth and ashes under him? wilt thou call this a fast, and an acceptable day to the LORD? But to us he saith on this wise. Is not this the fast that I have chosen? to loose the bands of wickedness, to undo the heavy burdens, and to let the oppressed go free; and that ye break every yoke? Is it not to deal thy bread to the hungry, and that thou bring the poor that are cast out to thy house? when thou seest the naked, that thou cover him, and that thou hide not thyself from thine own flesh? Then shall thy light break forth as the morning, and thy health shall spring forth speedily; and thy righteousness shall go before thee, the glory of the LORD shall be thy reward. Then shalt thou call, and the LORD shall answer: thou shalt cry, and he shall say, Here I am; if thou put away from the midst of thee the yoke, the putting forth of the finger, and speaking vanity: and if thou draw out thy soul to the hungry, and satisfy the afflicted soul'. In this therefore, Brethren, God has manifested his foreknowledge<sup>a</sup> and mercy to us; because the people which he has purchased to his beloved Son were to believe in sincerity<sup>b</sup>; and therefore he has shewn these things to all of us, that we should not run as proselytes to the<sup>c</sup> Jewish law.*

IV. Wherefore it is necessary, that, searching diligently<sup>d</sup> into those things which are near to come to pass, we should write to you what may serve to keep you whole. To which end, let us flee from every evil work, and hate the errors of the present time, that we may be happy<sup>e</sup> in that which is to come. Let us not give ourselves the liberty of disputing with the wicked and sinners;

<sup>a</sup> Isaiah lviii. 4—10.

<sup>b</sup> Providence.

<sup>c</sup> Simplicity.

<sup>d</sup> Their.

<sup>e</sup> *Histantibus*: read *instantibus*.

<sup>f</sup> Beloved.

the hope of his faith. Wherefore let us give heed unto the last times. For all the time<sup>1</sup> past of our life, and our faith will profit us nothing, unless we continue to hate what is evil, and to withstand the future temptations. So the Son of God tells us, *Let us resist all iniquity and hate it.* Wherefore consider the works of the evil way. Do<sup>2</sup> not withdraw yourselves from others, as if you were already justified; but coming all together into one place, inquire what is agreeable to, and profitable for, the beloved of God. For the Scripture saith, *Woe unto them that are wise in their own eyes, and prudent in their own sight*<sup>3</sup>. Let us become spiritual, a perfect temple to God. As much as in us lies, let us meditate upon the fear of God; and strive, to the utmost of our power, to keep his commandments, that we may rejoice in his righteous judgments. For God will judge the world, without respect of persons; and every one shall receive according to his works. If a man shall be good, his righteousness shall go before him; if wicked, the reward of his wickedness shall follow him. Take heed, therefore, lest sitting still, now that we are called, we fall asleep in our sins; and the wicked one, getting the dominion over us, stir us up, and shut us out of the kingdom of the Lord<sup>4</sup>. Consider this also: although you have seen so great signs and wonders done among the people of the Jews, yet (this notwithstanding) the Lord hath forsaken them. Beware therefore, lest it happen to us: as it is written, *There be many called, but few chosen*<sup>5</sup>.

V. For this cause did our Lord vouchsafe to give up his body to destruction, that through the

<sup>1</sup> Days.      <sup>2</sup> Heb. x. 25.

<sup>4</sup> Matt. xxv. 5—10.

<sup>3</sup> Vid. Gr. Clem. Alex. Isa. vi. 21.

<sup>5</sup> Matt. xxii. 14.

forgiveness of our sins we might be sanctified; that is, by the sprinkling of his blood. Now for what concerns the things that are written about him—some belong to the people of the Jews, and some to us. For thus saith the Scripture, *He was wounded for our transgressions; he was bruised for our iniquities; and by his blood we are healed. He was led as a lamb to the slaughter; and as a sheep before his shearers is dumb, so he opened not his mouth*<sup>1</sup>. Wherefore we ought the more to give thanks unto God, for that he hath both declared unto us what is passed, and not<sup>2</sup> suffered us to be without understanding of those things that are to come. But to them he saith, *The nets are not unjustly spread for the birds*<sup>3</sup>. This he spake, because a man will justly perish, if having the knowledge of the way of truth, he shall nevertheless not refrain himself from the way of darkness. And for this cause the Lord was content to suffer for our souls, although he be the Lord of the whole earth; to whom God said before the beginning of the world, *Let us make man after our own image and likeness*<sup>4</sup>. Now, how he suffered for us, seeing it was by men that he underwent it, <sup>5</sup>I will shew you. The Prophets, having received from him the gift of prophecy, spake before concerning him; but he, that he might abolish death, and make known the resurrection from the dead, was content, as it was necessary, to appear in the flesh, that he might make good the promise before given to our fathers, and preparing himself a new people, might demonstrate to them, whilst he was upon earth, that, after the resurrection, he would judge the

<sup>1</sup> Isa. liii. 5. 7.<sup>2</sup> Prov. i. 17.<sup>3</sup> Vid. Edit. Oxon. p. 21.<sup>4</sup> Gen. i. 26.<sup>5</sup> Learn.

world. And finally, teaching the people of Israel, and doing many wonders and signs among them, he preached to them, and shewed the exceeding great love which he bare towards them. And when he chose his Apostles, which were afterwards to publish his Gospel, he took men who had been very great sinners; that thereby he might plainly shew, *That he came not to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance*<sup>1</sup>. Then he clearly manifested himself to be the Son of God. For had he not come in the flesh, how should men have been able to look upon him, that they might be saved? seeing if they behold only the sun, which was the work of his hands, and shall hereafter cease to be, they are not able to endure steadfastly to look against the rays of it. Wherefore the Son of God came in the flesh for this cause, that he might fill up the measure of their iniquity who have persecuted his prophets unto death. And for the same reason also he suffered: for God hath said, *of the stripes of his flesh, that they were from them*<sup>2</sup>. And, *I will smite the shepherd, and the sheep of the flock shall be scattered*<sup>3</sup>. Thus he would suffer, because it behoved him to suffer upon the cross. For thus one saith, prophesying concerning him, *Spare my soul from the sword*. And again, *Pierce my flesh from thy fear*. And again, *The congregation of wicked doers rose up against me, [They have pierced my hands and my feet*<sup>4</sup>.] And again, he saith, *I gave*

<sup>1</sup> Matt. ix. 13.    <sup>2</sup> Namely, from the Jews.    <sup>3</sup> Zech. xiii. 6, 7.

<sup>4</sup> According to the Lxx. Psal. xxii. 20; cxviii. [cxix. Heb.] 120; xxii. 16.

<sup>5</sup> These words were doubtless cited thus by Barnabas; because that without them, those foregoing do not prove the crucifixion of Christ. But through the repetition of the same preposition, this latter part was so early omitted, that it was not in the Latin Interpreter's Copy.

<sup>6</sup> Psal. xxi. 16.



my back to the smiters, and my cheeks to be buffeted, and my face I set as an hard rock<sup>1</sup>.

VI. And when he had fulfilled the commandment of God, what says he? *Who will contend with me? Let him stand against me: or who is he that will implead me? Let him draw near to the servant of the LORD.* *Woe be to you! Because ye shall all wax old as a garment, the moth shall eat you up*<sup>2</sup>. And again the Prophet adds, *He is put for a stone of stumbling. Behold, I lay in Zion for a foundation, a precious stone, a choice corner-stone, an honourable stone*<sup>3</sup>. And what follows? *And he that hopeth in him shall live for ever.* What then? Is our hope built upon a stone? God forbid. But because the Lord hath hardened<sup>4</sup> his flesh against sufferings, he saith, *I have put me as a firm rock*<sup>5</sup>. And again the Prophet adds, *The stone which the builders refused is become the head of the corner*<sup>6</sup>. And again he saith, *This is the great and wonderful day which the LORD hath made*<sup>7</sup>. [<sup>8</sup>I write these things the more plainly to you that ye may understand:] For<sup>9</sup>, indeed, I could be content even to die for your sakes. But what saith the Prophet again,—*The counsel of the wicked encompassed me about. They came about me, as bees about the honey-comb; and, Upon my vesture they cast lots*<sup>10</sup>. Forasmuch then as our Saviour was to appear in the flesh, and suffer, his passion was hereby foretold. For thus saith the Prophet against Israel, *Woe*<sup>11</sup> *be to their soul, because they have taken wicked counsel against*

<sup>1</sup> Isa. l. 6.

<sup>2</sup> Isa. l. 8, 9. Septuag. Inter.

<sup>3</sup> Isa. viii. 14; xxviii. 16. <sup>4</sup> Gr.—Put in strength, or strengthened.

<sup>5</sup> Isa. l. 7.

<sup>6</sup> Psal. cxvii. 22.

<sup>7</sup> Psal. cxvii. 24.

<sup>8</sup> Clem. Alex. Strom. v. This is not in the old Lat. Version.

<sup>9</sup> Vid. Edit. Oxon. p. 29. a. *περίληψα τῆς ἀγάπης ὑμῶν.*

<sup>10</sup> Psal. xxi. 17; cxvii. 12; xxi. 9.

<sup>11</sup> Isa. iii. 9.

themselves, saying, *Let us lay<sup>1</sup> snares for the righteous, because he is unprofitable to us.* Moses also in like manner speaketh to them; *Behold thus saith the LORD God, Enter ye into the good land of which the LORD hath sworn to Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, that he would give it you, and possess it; a land flowing with milk and honey<sup>2</sup>.* Now what the spiritual meaning of this is, learn: It<sup>3</sup> is as if it had been said, Put your trust in Jesus, who shall be manifested to you in the flesh. For man is the earth which suffers; forasmuch as out of the substance<sup>4</sup> of the earth Adam was formed. What therefore does he mean when he says, *Into a good land flowing with milk and honey?* Blessed be our Lord, who has given us wisdom, and a heart to understand his secrets! For so says the Prophet, *Who shall understand the hard sayings of the LORD? But he that is wise, and intelligent, and that loves his LORD<sup>5</sup>.* Seeing therefore he has renewed us by the remission of our sins, he has put us into another frame<sup>6</sup>, that we should have souls like<sup>7</sup> those of children, forming us again himself by the Spirit<sup>8</sup>. For thus the Scripture saith concerning us, where<sup>9</sup> it introduceth the Father speaking to the Son; *Let us make man after our likeness and similitude; and let them have dominion over the beasts of the earth, and over the fowls of the air, and over the fish of the sea<sup>10</sup>.* And when the Lord saw the man which he had formed, that behold he was very good, he said, *Increase, and multiply, and replenish the earth<sup>11</sup>.* And this

<sup>1</sup> Bind.

<sup>2</sup> Exod. xxxiii. 1, 3.

<sup>3</sup> Vid. Coteler. Annot. Marg. ex Clem. Alex.

<sup>4</sup> Πρωτότυπον.

<sup>5</sup> Hosea xiv. ult.. Prov. i. 6. Eccl. i. 10.

<sup>6</sup> Gr.—Made us another form.

<sup>7</sup> Vid. Edit. Oxon. p. 30. b.

<sup>8</sup> Vid. Vet. Lat. Interp.

<sup>9</sup> As he saith to the Son.

<sup>10</sup> Gen. i. 26. Comp. Coloss. iii. 10.

<sup>11</sup> Gen. i. 28.

he spake to his Son. I will now shew you, how he made us a new-creature<sup>1</sup> in the latter days. The Lord saith, *Behold I will make the last as the first*<sup>2</sup>. Wherefore the Prophet thus spake,—*Enter into the land flowing with milk and honey, and have dominion over it*<sup>3</sup>. Wherefore ye see how we are again formed anew; as also he speaks by another Prophet,—*Behold saith the LORD, I will take from them* (that is, from those whom the Spirit of the Lord foresaw,) *their hearts of stone, and I will put into them hearts of flesh*<sup>4</sup>. Because he was about to be made manifest in the flesh, and to dwell in us. For, my Brethren, the habitation of our heart is a holy temple<sup>5</sup> unto the Lord. For the Lord saith again, *In what place shall I appear before the LORD my God, and be glorified?* He answers, *I will confess unto thee in the congregation in the midst of my brethren; and will sing unto thee in the church of the saints*<sup>6</sup>. Wherefore we are they whom he has brought into that good land. But<sup>7</sup> what signifies the milk and honey? Because as the child is nourished first with milk, and then with honey; so we, being kept alive by the belief of his promises and his word, shall live and have dominion over the land. For he foretold above, saying, *Increase, and multiply, and have dominion over the fishes, &c.* But who is there that is now able to have this dominion over the wild beasts, or fishes, or fowls of the air? For you know that to rule is to have power—that a man should be set over what he rules. But forasmuch as this we have not now, he tells us when we shall have it; namely, when we shall become perfect, that

<sup>1</sup> Gr.—A second formation.

<sup>2</sup> Comp. Heb.-iii.

<sup>3</sup> Isa. xliii. 18, 19. Matt. xx. 16.

<sup>4</sup> Ezek. xi. 19; xxxvi. 26.

<sup>5</sup> So St. Paul, 1 Cor. iii. 16, 17; vi. 19.

<sup>6</sup> Psal. xli. 3; xxi. 23.

<sup>7</sup> Comp. Hier. in Jer. xxxii. 23. et in Jer. xi. 5. Add. 1 Pet. ii. 2.

we may be made inheritors of the covenant of the Lord.

VII. Understand then, My beloved Children, that the good God hath before manifested all things unto us, that we might know to whom we ought always to give thanks and praise. If therefore the Son of God, who is the Lord of all, and shall come to judge both the quick and the dead, hath suffered, that by his stripes we might live, let us believe that the Son of God could not have suffered but for us. But, being crucified, they gave him vinegar and gall to drink. Hear therefore, how the priests of the temple did foreshew this also: 'The Lord, by his command which was written, declared, that whosoever did not fast the appointed fast he should die the death<sup>1</sup>: because he also was himself one day to offer up his <sup>3</sup>body for our sins; that so the type of what was done in Isaac<sup>4</sup> might be fulfilled, who was offered upon the altar. What therefore is it that he says by the Prophet? *'And let them eat of the goat which is offered in the day of the fast for all their sins. Harken diligently, [my Brethren,] And all the priests, and they only, shall eat the inwards, not washed with vinegar.* Why so? Because<sup>6</sup> I know that when I shall hereafter offer my flesh for the sins of a new people, ye will give me vinegar to drink, mixed with gall; therefore do ye only eat, the people fasting the while, and lamenting in sackcloth and ashes. And that he might foreshew that he was to suffer for them, hear then, how he appointed it:—*'Take, says he, two goats, fair and*

<sup>1</sup> See this applied after the same manner, Heb. ix.

<sup>2</sup> Levit. xxiii. 29.

<sup>3</sup> The vessel of his spirit.

<sup>4</sup> Gen. xxii.

<sup>5</sup> Numb. xxix, &c. Vid. Cotelier. in 'Marg. et Annot. in loc. Comp. Observ. Edit. Oxon.

<sup>6</sup> Vid. Annot. Cotelier. in loc.

<sup>7</sup> Levit. xvi. Vid. Maimon. Tract. de Die Exp. Edit. du Veil. p. 350. Add. Annot. Cotel. et Ed. Oxon. in loc.

alike, and offer them; and let the high-priest take one of them for a burnt-offering. And what must be done with the other? *Let it, says he, be accursed.* Consider how exactly this appears to have been a type of Jesus. *And let all the congregation spit upon it, and prick it; and put the scarlet wool about its head: And thus let it be carried forth into the wilderness*<sup>1</sup>. And this being done, he that was appointed to convey the goat, led it into the wilderness, and<sup>2</sup> took away the scarlet wool, and put it upon a thorn-bush, whose young<sup>3</sup> sprouts when we find them in the field we are wont to eat: so the fruit of that thorn only is sweet. And to what end was this ceremony? Consider;—one was offered upon the altar, the other was accursed. And why was that which was accursed, crowned? Because they shall see Christ in that day, having a scarlet garment about his body, and shall say, Is not this he whom we crucified; having despised him, pierced him, mocked him? Certainly this is he who then said, that he was the Son of God. 'As therefore he shall be then like to what he was on earth, so were the Jews heretofore commanded, *to take two goats, fair and equal.* That when they shall see [*our Saviour*] hereafter coming [*in the clouds of heaven,*] they may be amazed at the likeness of the goats. Wherefore ye<sup>4</sup> here again see a type of Jesus who was to suffer for us. But what then signifies this, *That the wool was to be put into the midst of the thorns?* This also is a figure of Jesus, set out to the Church. For as he who would take away the scarlet wool must undergo many difficulties, because that thorn was very

---

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Edit. Oxon. p. 40. a. 41. b.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. Maim. *ibid.* p. 341. Comp. Annot. Edit. Oxon. in loc.

<sup>3</sup> Vid. Annot. Isaac. Voss. in loc.

<sup>4</sup> The Greek is imperfect.

<sup>5</sup> Vid. Lat. Ver.

sharp, and with difficulty get it; so they, says Christ, that will see me, and come to my kingdom, must, through many afflictions and troubles attain unto me<sup>1</sup>.

VIII. But what type<sup>2</sup> do ye suppose it to have been, where it is commanded<sup>3</sup> to the people of Israel, that grown persons, in whom sins are come to perfection, should offer a heifer, and after they had killed it should burn the same: but then young men should take up the ashes and put them in vessels; and tie a piece of scarlet wool and hyssop upon a stick, and so the young men should sprinkle every one of the people, and they should be clear from their sins? Consider how all these are delivered in a figure<sup>4</sup> to us. This heifer is Jesus Christ; the wicked men that were to offer it, are those sinners who brought him to death; who afterwards have no more to do with it: the sinners have no more the honour of handling of it; but the young men who performed the sprinkling, signified those who preach to us the forgiveness of sins, and the purification of the heart; to whom the Lord gave authority to preach his gospel: being at the beginning twelve, to signify<sup>5</sup> the tribes, because there were twelve tribes of Israel. But why were there three young men, appointed to sprinkle? To denote Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, because they were great before God. And why was the wool put upon a stick? Because the kingdom of Jesus was founded upon the cross<sup>6</sup>; and therefore they that put their trust in him, shall live for ever. But why was the wool and hyssop put together? To signify

<sup>1</sup> See Acts xiv. 22.

<sup>2</sup> Numb. xix.

<sup>3</sup> That this was also a type of Christ. See Heb. ix. 13.

<sup>4</sup> *Vid. Vet. Lat. Interpr. Simplicity.—Gr.*

<sup>5</sup> *Gr.*—To testify.

<sup>6</sup> Wood.

that in the kingdom of Christ there shall be evil and filthy days, in which, however, we shall be saved; and because<sup>1</sup> he that has any disease in the flesh by some filthy humours, is cured by hyssop. Wherefore these things being thus done, are to us indeed evident: but to the Jews<sup>2</sup> they are obscure; because they hearkened not unto the voice of the Lord.

IX. And therefore the Scripture again speaks concerning our ears, that God has circumcised them, together with our hearts. For thus saith the Lord by the holy Prophet: *By the hearing of the ear they obeyed me*<sup>3</sup>. And again, *They who are afar off, shall hear and understand what things I have done*<sup>4</sup>. And again, *Circumcise your hearts, saith the LORD*<sup>5</sup>. And again he saith, *Hear, O Israel! For thus saith the LORD thy God*<sup>6</sup>. And again the Spirit of God prophesieth, saying, *Who is there that would live for ever, let him hear the voice of my Son*<sup>7</sup>. And again, *Hear, O heaven, and give ear, O earth! Because the LORD has spoken*<sup>8</sup> these things for a witness. And again he saith, *Hear the word of the LORD, ye princes of the people*<sup>9</sup>. And again, *Hear, O children! the voice of one crying in the wilderness*<sup>10</sup>. Wherefore he has circumcised our ears, that we should hear his word, and believe. But as for that circumcision, in which the Jews trust, it is abolished. For the circumcision of which God spake, was not of the flesh; but they have transgressed his commands, because the evil<sup>11</sup> one hath deceived them. For thus God bespeaks

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Coteler. in loc.

<sup>2</sup> Them.

<sup>3</sup> Septuag. Psal. xvii. 45.

<sup>4</sup> Isa. xxxiii. 13.

<sup>5</sup> Jer. iv. 4.

<sup>6</sup> Jer. vii. 2.

<sup>7</sup> Psal. xxxiii, xxxiv.

<sup>8</sup> Isa. l. 10.

<sup>9</sup> Isa. i. 2.

<sup>10</sup> Ib. 10.

<sup>11</sup> Isa. xl. 3.

<sup>12</sup> Angel.

them; *Thus saith the LORD your God*, [Here I find the new law] *Sow not among thorns; but circumcise yourselves to the LORD your God*<sup>1</sup>. And what doth he mean by this saying? Harken unto your Lord. And again he saith, *Circumcise the hardness of your heart, and harden not your neck*<sup>2</sup>. And again, *Behold, saith the LORD, all the nations are uncircumcised* [they have not lost their foreskin;] *but this people is uncircumcised in heart*<sup>3</sup>. But you will say the Jews<sup>4</sup> were circumcised for a sign. <sup>5</sup>And so are all the Syrians, and Arabians, and all the idolatrous priests: but are they, therefore, of the covenant of Israel? And even the Egyptians themselves are circumcised. Understand therefore, Children, these things more fully, that Abraham, who was the first that brought in circumcision, looking forward in the Spirit to Jesus, circumcised, having received the mystery of three letters. For the Scripture says, that Abraham circumcised three hundred and eighteen men of his house<sup>6</sup>. But what, therefore, was the mystery that was made known unto him? Mark, first the eighteen, and next the three hundred. For the numeral letters of ten and eight are I H. And these denote Jesus. And because the cross was that by which we were to find grace; therefore he adds, three hundred, the note of which is T [the figure of his cross]. Wherefore, by two letters, he signified Jesus; and by the third, his cross. He who has put the engrafted gift of his doctrine within us, knows

<sup>1</sup> Jer. iv. 3, 4.

<sup>2</sup> Jer. iv. 4.

<sup>3</sup> Deuter. x. 16.

<sup>4</sup> That people.

<sup>5</sup> Vid. Cotelier. in loc. Confer. Orig. ad Rom. c. ii. 24.

<sup>6</sup> That many others of the Ancient Fathers have concurred with him in this.—See Cotelier. in loc. *Add. Eund. pp. 34, 35. ibid. Ed. Oxon. D. in loc.* An instance of the like kind, see in Rev. xiii. 17, 18. *Add. Annot. Bernard. Edit. Oxon. p. 125.*



that I never taught to any one a more 'certain truth: but I trust that ye are worthy of it.

X. But why did Moses say, *'Ye shall not eat of the swine; neither the eagle, nor the hawk, nor the crow; nor any fish that has not a scale upon him?'* I answer, that in the spiritual sense, he comprehended three doctrines, that were to be gathered<sup>1</sup> from thence. Besides which he says to them in the Book of Deuteronomy, *And I will give my statutes unto this people*<sup>2</sup>. Wherefore it is not the command of God, that they should not eat these things; but Moses in the Spirit spake to them. Now the sow he forbade them to eat; meaning thus much: Thou shalt not join thyself to such persons as are like unto swine; who whilst they live in pleasure, forget their God,—but when any want pinches them, then they know the Lord: as the sow when she is full, knows not her master; but when she is hungry, she makes a noise, and being again fed, is silent. *Neither*, says he, *shalt thou eat the eagle, nor the hawk, nor the kite, nor the crow;* that is, Thou shalt not keep company with such kind of men as know not how, by their labour and sweat, to get themselves food: but injuriously ravish away the things of others; and watch how to lay snares for them; when at the same time they appear to live in perfect innocence. [<sup>3</sup>So these birds alone seek not food for themselves, but] sitting idle, seek how they may eat of the flesh which others have provided; being destructive through their wickedness. *Neither*, says he, *shalt thou eat*

---

<sup>1</sup> Genuine.

<sup>2</sup> That in this he goes on the received opinions of the RR. Vid. Annot. Coteler. et Ed. Oxon. in loc. Levit. xi. Deut. xiv. Add. Ainsworth on Lev. xi. 1. And again on Deut. xiv. 4.

<sup>3</sup> In the understanding. <sup>4</sup> Deut. iv. <sup>5</sup> Vid. Antiq. Lat. Vers.

*the lamprey, nor the polypus, nor the cuttle-fish;* that is, thou shalt not be like such men, by using to converse with them, who are altogether<sup>1</sup> wicked and adjudged to death. For so those fishes are alone accursed, and wallow in the mire, nor swim as other fishes, but tumble in the dirt at the bottom of the deep. But he adds, *'Neither shalt thou eat of the hare.'* To what end? To signify this to us: Thou shalt not be an adulterer<sup>2</sup>; nor liken thyself to such persons. For the hare every year multiplies<sup>3</sup> the places of its conception; and as many years as it lives, so many it has<sup>4</sup>. *Neither shalt thou eat of the hyæna:* that is, again, Be not an adulterer, nor a corrupter of others; neither be like to such. And wherefore so? Because<sup>5</sup> that creature every year changes its kind, and is sometimes male and sometimes female. For which cause also he justly hated the weasel; to the end that they should not be like such persons who with their mouths commit wickedness, by reason of their uncleanness; nor join themselves with those impure women, who with their mouths commit wickedness. <sup>6</sup>Because that animal conceives with its mouth. Moses, therefore, speaking as concerning meats, delivered, indeed, three great precepts to them, in the spiritual signification of those commands; but they, according to the desires of the flesh, understood him as if he had only meant it of meats. And therefore David took aright the knowledge of his threefold command, saying, in like manner, *Blessed is the*

<sup>1</sup> Wicked to the end.

<sup>2</sup> See Coteler. Annot. in loc.

<sup>3</sup> Thou shalt not abuse thyself with mankind.

<sup>4</sup> Ἀποδινοῖ.

<sup>5</sup> Τέτρας.

<sup>6</sup> So several naturalists have affirmed, though others deny it. See Annot. Coteler. in loc.

<sup>7</sup> Vid. Arist. apud Euseb. Præp. Evang. lib. viii. c. 9. Add. Coteler. in loc.

*man that hath not walked in the counsel of the ungodly*<sup>1</sup>; as the fishes before-mentioned, in the bottom of the deep, in darkness; *nor stood in the way of sinners*, as they who seem to fear the Lord, but yet sin, as the sow. *And hath not sate in the seat of the scorers*, as those birds who sit and watch that they may devour. Here you have the law concerning meat perfectly set forth, and according to the true knowledge of it. But says Moses, *Ye shall eat all that divideth the hoof, and cheweth the cud*<sup>2</sup>; signifying thereby such an one as having taken his food, knows him that nourisheth him; and resting upon him, rejoiceth in him. And in this he spake well, having respect to the commandment. What therefore is it that he says<sup>3</sup>? That we should hold fast to them that fear the Lord—with those who meditate on the command of the Word which they have received in their heart—with those that declare the righteous judgments of the Lord, and keep his commandments; in short, with those who know that to meditate is a work of pleasure, and therefore exercise<sup>4</sup> themselves in the Word of the Lord. But why might they eat those that clave the hoof? Because the righteous liveth in this present world; but his expectation is fixed upon the other. See, Brethren, how admirably Moses commanded these things. But how should we thus know all this, and understand it? We, therefore, understanding aright the Commandments, speak as the Lord would have us. Wherefore he has circumcised our ears and our hearts, that we might know these things.

---

<sup>1</sup> Psal. i. 1.

<sup>2</sup> See Edit. Oxon. p. 64. a. So Iren. adv. Her. lib. v. c. 8.

<sup>3</sup> Comp. Clem. Alex. lib. iii. *Pædag.* c. 11. Et simil. Orig. *Theod.* &c. Cotelier. Annot. in loc.

<sup>4</sup> Ruminare upon.

XI. Let us now inquire, whether the Lord took care to manifest any thing beforehand concerning *Water* and the *Cross*? Now for the former of these, it is written to the people of Israel, how they shall not receive that Baptism which brings to forgiveness of sins; but shall institute another to themselves that cannot. For thus saith the Prophet; *'Be astonished, O heaven' and let the earth tremble at it, because this people have done two great and wicked things: they left me, the fountain of living water, and have digged for themselves broken cisterns, that can hold no water. Is my holy mountain, Zion<sup>1</sup>, a desolate wilderness? For ye shall be as a young bird when its nest is taken away.* And again the Prophet saith, *I will go before thee, and will make plain the mountains, and will break the gates of brass, and will snap in sunder the bars of iron: and will give thee dark, and hidden, and invisible treasures, that they may know that I am the LORD God<sup>2</sup>.* And again, *He shall dwell in the high den of the strong rock.* And then what follows in the same Prophet? *His water is faithful: Ye shall see the King with glory, and your soul shall learn the fear of the LORD<sup>3</sup>.* And again he saith, in another Prophet; he that does these things, *shall be like a tree planted by the currents of water, which shall give its fruit in its season. Its leaf also shall not wither, and whatsoever he doth it shall prosper. As for the wicked it is not so with them; but they are as the dust which the wind scattereth away from the face of the earth. Therefore the ungodly shall not stand in the judgment, neither the sinners in the council of the*

---

<sup>1</sup> Jer. ii. 19.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. Annot. Cotelier, et Ed. Oxon. in loc. Isa. xvi. 1, 2.

<sup>3</sup> Isa. xlv. 2, 3.

<sup>4</sup> Isa. xxxiii. 16, 17.

righteous. *For the LORD knoweth the way of the righteous, and the way of the ungodly shall perish*<sup>1</sup>. Consider how he has joined both the cross and the water together. For this he saith, Blessed are they who, putting their trust in the cross, descend into the water; for they shall have their reward in due time: then, saith he, will I give it them. But as concerning the present time, he saith, *Their leaves shall not fall*; meaning thereby, that every word that shall go out of your mouth, shall, through faith and charity, be to the conversion and hope of many. In like manner does another Prophet speak: *And the land of Jacob was the praise of all the earth*<sup>2</sup>; magnifying<sup>3</sup> thereby the vessel of his spirit<sup>4</sup>. And what follows? *And there was a river running on the right hand, and beautiful trees grew up by it; and he that shall eat of them shall live for ever*. The signification of which is this—That we go down into the water, full of sins and pollutions, but come up again, bringing forth fruit; having in our hearts the fear and hope which is in Jesus, by the spirit. *And whosoever shall eat of them shall live for ever*; that is, whosoever shall hearken to those who call them, and shall believe, shall live for ever.

XII. In like manner he determines concerning the cross in another Prophet<sup>5</sup>, saying, *And when shall these things be fulfilled?* The Lord answers, *When the tree that is fallen shall rise, and when blood shall drop down from the tree*. Here you have again mention made, both of the cross, and of him that was to be crucified upon it.

<sup>1</sup> Psal. i.

<sup>2</sup> Zeph. iii. 19.

<sup>3</sup> For *εὐδοκία* *ἀγαθὰ*, and *ἡ*, the old Interpreter did not read: and Clemens Alex. lib. iii. Strom. p. 463, transcribing this passage, hath them not.

<sup>4</sup> i. e. The body of Christ.

<sup>5</sup> Vid. Conject. Edit. Oxon. Com. iv. Esdr. v. 4. Et Obs. Cotel. in loc.

And<sup>1</sup> yet, farther, he saith by Moses; (when Israel was fighting with, and beaten by, a strange people; to the end that God might put them<sup>2</sup> in mind how that for their sins they were delivered unto death;) yea the Holy Spirit put it into the heart of Moses, to represent both the sign of the cross, and of him that was to suffer; that so they might know that if they did not believe in him, they should be overcome for ever. Moses, therefore, piled up armour upon armour<sup>3</sup> in the middle of a rising ground, and, standing up high above all of them, stretched forth his arms; and so Israel again conquered. But no sooner did he let down his hands, but they were again slain. And why so? To the end they might know, that except they trust in him they cannot be saved. And in another Prophet he saith, *I have stretched out my hands all the day long to a people disobedient, and speaking against my righteous way*<sup>4</sup>. And again Moses makes a type<sup>5</sup> of Jesus, to shew that he was to die; and then that he, whom they thought to be dead, was to give life to others; in the type<sup>6</sup> of those<sup>7</sup> that fell in Israel. For God caused all sorts of serpents to bite them, and they died; forasmuch as, by a serpent, transgression began in Eve; that so he might convince them that for their transgressions they shall be delivered into the pain of death. Moses then himself, who had commanded them, saying, *Ye shall not make to yourselves any graven or molten image, to be your God*<sup>8</sup>, yet now did so himself,

---

<sup>1</sup> See St. Hier. in like manner. Annot. D. Bernard. p. 124. Edit. Oxon. Exod. xvii.      <sup>2</sup> That were so beaten.

<sup>3</sup> Again set them in array, being armed.—*Lat. Vers.*

<sup>4</sup> Isa. lxx. 2.

<sup>5</sup> So Irenæus, Just. Mart. St. Chrysost. &c. Vid. Edit. Oxon. p. 77. a.

<sup>6</sup> Sign.

<sup>7</sup> Israel falling.

<sup>8</sup> Deut. xxvii. 15.

that he might represent to them the figure of the Lord Jesus. For he made a brazen serpent, and set it up on high, and called the people together by a proclamation; where being come, they entreated Moses that he would make an atonement for them, and pray that they might be healed. Then Moses spake unto them, saying, when any one among you shall be bitten, *let him come unto the serpent that is set upon the pole; and let him assuredly trust in him; that though he be dead, yet he is able to give life, and presently he shall be saved;* and so they did. See therefore how here also you have in this the glory of Jesus; and that *in him, and to him, are all things*<sup>1</sup>. Again; what says Moses to Jesus the son of Nun, when he gave that name unto him, as being a Prophet, that all the people might hear him alone, because the Father<sup>2</sup> did manifest all things concerning his Son Jesus, in Jesus<sup>3</sup> the son of Nun; and gave him that name when he sent him to spy out the land of Canaan: he said, *Take a book in thine hands, and write what the LORD saith: forasmuch as Jesus the Son of God, shall in the last days cut off by the roots all the house of Amalech*<sup>4</sup>. See here again Jesus, not the son of man, but the Son of God, made manifest in a type and in the flesh. But because it might hereafter be said, that Christ was the Son of David; <sup>5</sup>therefore David, fearing, and well-knowing the errors of the wicked, saith, *The LORD said unto my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand until I make thine enemies thy footstool*<sup>6</sup>. And again Isaiah speaketh on this

<sup>1</sup> Rom. xi. 36.<sup>2</sup> Deut. xviii. 15, 18.<sup>3</sup> So the other Fathers; Just. Mart. &c. Vid. Edit. Oxon. p. 79.<sup>4</sup> Vid. Interp. Vet. Lat. Exod. xvii. 14.<sup>5</sup> Comp. Vet. Lat. Interp.<sup>6</sup> Psal. cx. 1.

wise, *The LORD said unto Christ<sup>1</sup> my Lord, I have laid hold on his right hand, that the nations should obey before him, and I will break the strength of kings.* Behold, how both David<sup>2</sup> and Isaiah call him Lord, and the Son of God.

XIII. But let us go yet farther, and inquire, whether his people be the heir, or the former; and whether the covenant be with us, or with them. And first, as concerning the people, hear now what the Scripture saith. Isaac<sup>3</sup> prayed for his wife Rebekah, because she was barren; and she conceived. Afterwards Rebekah went forth to inquire of the Lord. And the Lord said unto her, *There are two nations in thy womb, and two people shall come from thy body; and the one shall have power over the other; and the greater shall serve the lesser.* Understand here, who was Isaac, who Rebekah, and of whom it was foretold, that this people should be greater than that. And in another prophecy, Jacob speaketh more clearly to his son Joseph, saying, *Behold, the LORD hath not deprived me of seeing thy face; bring me thy sons that I may bless them<sup>4</sup>.* And he brought unto his father Manasseh<sup>5</sup> and Ephraim, desiring that he should bless Manasseh, because he was the elder. Therefore Joseph brought him to the right hand of his father Jacob. But Jacob, by the spirit, foresaw the figure of the people that was to come. And what saith the Scripture? *And Jacob crossed his hands, and put his right hand upon Ephraim, his second and the younger son, and blessed him.* And Joseph said

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Annot. Coteler. in loc. Edit. Oxon. p. 78. c. Isa. xlv. l.

<sup>2</sup> Comp. Vet. Lat. Interp.

<sup>3</sup> Gen. xxv. 21. Comp. St. Paul, Rom. ix. Just. Mart. Tert. & Vid. Ed. Oxon. p. 81. a.

<sup>4</sup> Gen. xlviii.

<sup>5</sup> Vid. Lat. Interp. Vet.



unto Jacob, *Put thy right hand upon the head of Manasseh, for he is my first-born son.* And Jacob said unto Joseph, *I know it, my son, I know it; but the greater shall serve the lesser; though he also shall be blessed.* Ye see of whom he appointed it, that they should be the first people, and heirs of the covenant. If therefore God shall have yet farther taken notice of this by Abraham too, our understanding of it will then be perfectly established. What then saith the Scripture<sup>1</sup> to Abraham, when *he believed, and it was imputed unto him for righteousness?* Behold *I have made thee a father of the nations, which without circumcision believe in the LORD.*

XIV. Let us, therefore, now inquire, whether God has fulfilled the covenant, which he sware to our fathers, that he would give the people? Yes verily, He gave it: but they were not worthy to receive it by reason of their sins. For thus saith the Prophet; *And Moses continued fasting in Mount Sinai, to receive the covenant of the LORD with the people, forty days and forty nights*<sup>2</sup>. And he received of the Lord two tables, written with the finger<sup>3</sup> of the Lord's hand in the Spirit. And Moses, when he had received them, brought them down, that he might deliver them to the people. And the Lord said unto Moses,—*Moses, Moses, get thee down quickly, for the people which thou broughtest out of the land of Egypt have done wickedly*<sup>4</sup>. And Moses understood that they had again set up a molten image; and he cast the two tables out of his hands; and the tables of the covenant of the Lord were broken. Moses therefore received them, but they were not

<sup>1</sup> Gen. xv. 6; xvii. 5. So St. Paul himself applies this; Rom. iv. 3.

<sup>2</sup> Exod. xxiv. 18.

<sup>3</sup> Deuter. ix. 10. Exod. xxxi. 12.

<sup>4</sup> Exod. xxxii. 7. Deuter. ix. 12.

worthy. Now then learn how we have received them: Moses, being a servant, took them; but the Lord himself has given them unto us, that we might be the people of his inheritance, having suffered for us. He was, therefore, made manifest, that they should fill up the measure of their sins, and that we being<sup>1</sup> made heirs by him, should receive the covenant of the Lord Jesus. And again the Prophet saith, *Behold, I have set thee for a light unto the Gentiles, to be the Saviour of all the ends of the earth, saith the LORD, the God who hath redeemed thee*<sup>2</sup>. Who for that very end was prepared, that by his own appearing he might redeem our hearts, already devoured by death, and delivered over to the irregularity of error, from darkness; and establish a covenant with us by his Word. For so it is written, that the Father commanded him, by delivering us from darkness, to prepare unto himself a holy people. Wherefore the Prophet saith, *I the LORD thy God have called thee in righteousness, and I will take thee by thy hand and will strengthen thee. And give thee for a covenant of the people, for a light of the Gentiles. To open the eyes of the blind, to bring out the prisoners from the prison, and them that sit in darkness out of the prison-house*<sup>3</sup>. Consider therefore from whence we have been redeemed. And again the Prophet saith, *The Spirit of the LORD is upon me, because he hath anointed me; he hath sent me to preach glad-tidings to the lowly; to heal the broken in heart; to preach remission to the captives, and sight unto the blind: To proclaim the acceptable year of*

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Lat. Interp. Vet.

<sup>2</sup> Isa. xlix. 6.

<sup>3</sup> For salvation unto.

<sup>4</sup> Isa. xlii. 6, 7.

pure in all things. Behold, therefore, He will then truly sanctify it with blessed rest, when we (having received the righteous promise, when iniquity shall be no more, all things being renewed by the Lord) shall be able to sanctify it, being ourselves first made holy. Lastly, he saith unto them, *Your new moons and your sabbaths, I cannot bear them*<sup>1</sup>. Consider what he means by it;—The sabbaths, says he, which ye now keep, are not acceptable unto me, but those which I have made; when resting from all things, I shall begin the eighth day<sup>2</sup>, that is, the beginning of the other world. For which cause we observe the eighth day with gladness, in which Jesus rose from the dead; and having manifested himself to his disciples, ascended into heaven.

XVI. It remains yet that I speak to you concerning the temple: how those miserable men, being deceived, have put their trust in the house<sup>3</sup>, and not in God himself who made them; as if it were the habitation of God. For much after the same manner as the Gentiles, they consecrated him in the temple. But learn, therefore, how the Lord speaketh, rendering the temple vain: *Who has measured the heaven with a span, and the earth with his hand? Is it not I*<sup>4</sup>? Thus saith the Lord,—*Heaven is my throne, and the earth is my footstool. What is the house that ye will build me? Or what is the place of my rest*<sup>5</sup>? Know therefore that all their hope is vain. And again, he speaketh after this manner: *Behold they that destroy this temple, even they shall again build it up*<sup>6</sup>. And so it came to pass; for through their wars it is now destroyed by their enemies; and the

<sup>1</sup> Isa. i. 13.

<sup>2</sup> So the other Fathers, q. v. apud Coteler. Annot. in loc. p. 36.

<sup>3</sup> Vid. Edit. Oxon. et Vet. Lat. Interp.

<sup>4</sup> Isa. xl. 12.

<sup>5</sup> Isa. lxvi. 1.

<sup>6</sup> Isa. xlix. 17.

who were in bondage of death, the gate of our temple<sup>1</sup>; that is, the mouth of wisdom; having given repentance unto us: and, by this means, has brought us to be an incorruptible temple. He therefore that desires to be saved looketh not unto the man, but unto him that dwelleth in him, and speaketh by him; being struck with wonder, forasmuch as he never either heard him speaking such words out of his mouth, nor ever desired to hear them. This is that spiritual temple that is built unto the Lord.

XVII. And thus, I trust, I have declared to you as much, and with as great simplicity as I could, those things which make for your salvation, so as not to have omitted any thing that might be requisite thereunto. For should I speak farther of the things that now<sup>2</sup> are, and of those that are to come, you would not yet understand them, seeing they lie in parables. This therefore shall suffice as to these things.

XVIII. Let us now go on to the other kind of knowledge and doctrine. There are two ways of doctrine and power; the one of Light, the other of Darkness. But there is a great deal of difference between these two ways: for over one are appointed the Angels<sup>3</sup> of God, the leaders of the way of light; over the other, the angels of Satan. And the one is the Lord from everlasting to everlasting; the other is, the prince of the time of unrighteousness.

XIX. Now the way of Light is this, if any one desires to attain to the place that is appointed for him, and will hasten thither by his works. And the knowledge that has been given to us for walking in it, is to this effect. \* Thou shalt love

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Lat. Ver. Interp.

<sup>2</sup> So the Old Lat. Interp.

<sup>3</sup> Vid. Coteler. in loc. Et Basil. in Psal. i.

him that made thee: \*Thou shalt glorify him that hath redeemed thee from death. \*Thou shalt be simple in heart, and \*Rich in the Spirit. \*Thou shalt not cleave to those that walk in the way of death. \*Thou shalt hate to do any thing that is not pleasing unto God. \*Thou shalt abhor all dissimulation. \*Thou shalt not neglect any of the commands of the Lord. \*Thou shalt not exalt thyself, but shalt be humble. \*Thou shalt not take honour to thyself. \*Thou shalt not enter into any wicked counsel against thy neighbour. \*Thou shalt not be over-confident in thy heart. \*Thou shalt not commit \*fornication, nor \*adultery. Neither shalt thou \*corrupt thyself with mankind. \*Thou shalt not make use of the word of God, to any impurity. \*Thou shalt not accept any man's person, when thou reprovest any one's faults. \*Thou shalt be gentle. \*Thou shalt be quiet. \*Thou shalt tremble at the words which thou hast heard. \*Thou shalt not keep any hatred in thy heart against thy brother. \*Thou shalt not entertain any doubt whether it shall be, or not. \*Thou shalt not take the Name of the Lord in vain. \*Thou shalt love thy neighbour above thy own soul. \*Thou shalt not destroy thy conceptions before they are brought forth; nor kill them after they are born. \*Thou shalt not withdraw thy hand from thy son, or from thy daughter; but shalt teach them from their youth the fear of the Lord. \*Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's goods; neither shalt thou be an extortioner<sup>1</sup>. \*Neither shall thy heart be joined to proud men; but thou shalt be numbered among the righteous and the lowly. \*Whatever events<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Greedy, πλεονεκτης.

<sup>2</sup> Effects.

shall happen unto thee, thou shalt receive them as good. \*Thou shalt not be double-minded, or double-tongued; for a double tongue is the snare of death. \*Thou shalt be subject unto the Lord, and to inferior masters as to the representatives of God, in fear and reverence. \*Thou shalt not be bitter in thy commands towards any of thy servants that trust in God; lest thou chance not to fear him who is over both; because he came not to call any with respect of persons; but whomsoever the Spirit had prepared. \*Thou shalt communicate to thy neighbour of all thou hast; thou shalt not call any thing thine own: for if ye partake in such things as are incorruptible, how much more should ye do it in those that are corruptible? \*Thou shalt not be forward to speak; for the mouth is the snare of death. \*Strive for thy soul with all thy might. \*Reach not out thine hand to receive, and withhold it not when thou shouldst give. \*Thou shalt love, as the apple of thine eye, every one that speaketh unto thee the word of the Lord. \*Call to thy remembrance, day and night, the future judgment. \*Thou shalt seek out every day the persons of the righteous: \*and both consider, and go about to exhort others by the word, and meditate how thou mayest save a soul. \*Thou shalt also labour with thy hands to give to the poor, that thy sins<sup>6</sup> may be forgiven thee. \*Thou shalt

<sup>1</sup> See Eccclus. iv. 34.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. ver. 33. For so I chose to read it, *ὅτι ἐν τῇ ψυχῇ σου ἀγνοῖς*, according to the conjecture of Cotelerius.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. ver. 36.

<sup>4</sup> And remember him night and day. The words *ἡμέρας καὶ νυκτὸς* seem to have been erroneously inserted, and pervert the sense.

<sup>5</sup> Gr.—Saints.

<sup>6</sup> Gr.—For the redemption of thy sins. Comp. Dan. iv. 24. See LXX.

not deliberate whether thou shouldst give; • nor having given, murmur at it. • Give to every one that asks; so shalt thou know who is the good rewarder of thy gifts. • Keep what thou hast received; thou shalt neither add to it, nor take from it. • Let the wicked be always thy aversion. • Thou shalt judge righteous judgment. • Thou shalt never cause divisions; but shalt make peace between those that are at variance, and bring them together. • Thou shalt confess thy sins; • and not come to thy prayer with an evil conscience. This is the way of Light.

XX. But the way of Darkness is crooked, and full of cursing. For it is the way of eternal death, with punishment; in which, they that walk, meet those things that destroy their own souls. Such are—idolatry, confidence, pride of power, hypocrisy, double-mindedness, adultery, murder, rapine, pride, transgression, deceit, malice, arrogance, witchcraft, covetousness, and the want of the fear of God. In this walk those who are the persecutors of them that are good—haters of truth, lovers of lies; who know not the reward of righteousness, nor cleave to any thing that is good; who administer not righteous judgment to the widow and orphan; who watch for wickedness, and not for the fear of the Lord: from whom gentleness and patience are far off; who love vanity, and follow after rewards; having no compassion upon the poor; nor take any pains for such as are heavy laden and oppressed: ready to evil-speaking, not knowing him that made them; murderers of children, corrupters of the creature of God, that turn away from the needy, oppress the afflicted; are the advocates of the rich, but unjust judges of the poor; being altogether sinners.

XXI. It is therefore fitting, that, learning the just commands of the Lord, which we have before mentioned, we should walk in them. For he who does such things, shall be glorified in the kingdom of God. But he that chooses the other part, shall be destroyed together with his works. For this 'cause, there shall be both a resurrection, and a retribution. I beseech those that are in high estate among you, (if so be you will take the counsel which with a good intention I offer to you:) You have those with you towards whom you may do good; do not forsake them. For the day is at hand in which all things shall be destroyed, together with the wicked one. The Lord is near, and his reward is with him. I beseech you, therefore, again and again, be as good lawgivers to one another; continue faithful counsellors to each other: remove from among you all hypocrisy. And may God, the Lord of all the world, give you wisdom, knowledge, counsel, and understanding of his judgments in patience! Be ye taught of God; seeking what it is the Lord requires of you, and doing it; that ye may be saved in the day of judgment. And if there be among you any remembrance of what is good, think of me; meditating upon these things, that both my desire and my watching for you may turn to a good account. I beseech you; I ask it as a favour of you; whilst you are in this beautiful tabernacle<sup>1</sup> of the body, be wanting in none of these things; but without ceasing seek them, and fulfil every command: for these things are fitting and worthy to be done. Wherefore I have given the more diligence to write unto you,

---

<sup>1</sup> Vessel.



according to my ability, that you might rejoice.  
Farewell, children of love and peace. The Lord  
of glory, and of all grace, be with your spirit.  
Amen.

*The end of the Epistle of BARNABAS, the Apostle and  
fellow-traveller of ST. PAUL the Apostle.*

CONTENTS  
OF THE  
SHEPHERD OF ST. HERMAS.

---

THE FIRST BOOK.

Vision

- I. *AGAINST filthy and proud Thoughts; also, the neglect of HERMAS in chastising his Children.*
  - II. *Again, of his Neglect in correcting his Talkative Wife and his Lewd Sons.*
  - III. *Of the Building of the Church-Triumphant; and of the several Orders of Reprobates.*
  - IV. *Of the Trial and Tribulation that is about to come upon Men.*
- ~~~~~

THE SECOND BOOK.

AN INTRODUCTION to the following COMMANDS:

Command

- I. *Of believing in One God.*
- II. *That we must avoid Detraction, and do our Alms-deeds with Simplicity.*
- III. *Of avoiding Lying: and the Repentance of HERMAS for his Dissimulation.*
- IV. *Of putting away one's Wife for Adultery.*
- V. *Of the Sadness of the Heart, and of Patience.*
- VI. *That every Man has two Angels; and of the Suggestions of both.*
- VII. *That we must fear God, but not the Devil.*
- VIII. *That we must flee from Evil, and do Good.*
- IX. *That we must ask of God daily, and without doubting.*
- X. *Of the Sadness of the Heart; and that we must take heed not to grieve the Spirit of God that is in us.*
- XI. *That the Spirits and Prophets are to be tried by their Works; and of a two-fold Spirit.*
- XII. *Of a two-fold Desire: that the Commands of God are not impossible; and that the Devil is not to be feared by them that believe.*

## CONTENTS.

### THE THIRD BOOK.

*similitude*

- I. *That seeing we have no abiding City in this World, we ought to look after that which is to come.*
- II. *As the Vine is supported by the Elm, so is the Rich Man helped by the Prayers of the Poor.*
- III. *As the Green Trees in the Winter cannot be distinguished from the Dry; so neither can the Righteous from the Wicked in this present World.*
- IV. *As in Summer the Living Trees are distinguished from the Dry by their Fruit and Green Leaves; so in the World to come, the Righteous shall be distinguished from the Unrighteous by their Happiness.*
- V. *Of a true Fast, and the Reward of it; also of the Cleanness of the Body.*
- VI. *Of two Sorts of voluptuous Men; and of their Death, Defection, and of the Continuance of their Pains.*
- VII. *That they who repent, must bring forth Fruits worthy of Repentance.*
- VIII. *That there are many kinds of Elect and of Repenting Sinners: and how all of them shall receive a Reward proportionable to the Measure of their Repentance and Good Works.*
- IX. *The greatest Mysteries of the Militant and Triumphant Church which is to be built.*
- X. *Of Repentance, and Alms-deeds.*

THE  
FIRST BOOK OF ST. HERMAS,  
WHICH IS CALLED  
HIS VISIONS.

---

VISION I.

*Against filthy and proud thoughts: also the neglect  
of Hermas in chastising his Children.*

I. **H**E who had bred me up, sold a certain young maid at Rome; whom, when I saw many years after, I remembered her, and began to love her as a sister. It happened, some time afterwards, that I saw her washing in the river Tiber; and I reached out my hand unto her, and brought her out of the river. And when I saw her, I thought with myself, saying, How happy should I be if I had such a wife, both for beauty and manners. This I thought with myself; nor did I think any thing more. But not long after, as I was walking and musing on these thoughts, I began to honour this creature of God, thinking with myself how noble and beautiful she was. And when I had walked a little, I fell asleep. And the Spirit caught me away, and carried me through a certain place towards the right hand, through which no man could pass. It was a place among rocks, very steep, and unpassable for water. When I was past this place, I came into a plain; and there falling down upon my knees, I began to pray unto the Lord, and to confess my sins. And as I was praying, the heaven was opened, and I

who trust not in the Lord, and despise and neglect their own life. But do thou pray unto the Lord, and he will heal thy sins, and the sins of thy whole house, and of all his Saints."

II. As soon as she had spoken these words, the heavens were shut, and I remained utterly swallowed up with sadness and fear; and said within myself, If this be laid against me for sin, how can I be saved? or how shall I ever be able to entreat the Lord for my many and great sins? with what words shall I beseech him to be merciful unto me? As I was thinking over these things, and meditating in myself upon them, behold a chair was set over against me of the whitest wool, as bright as snow. And there came an old woman in a bright garment, having a book in her hand, and sat alone, and saluted me, saying, "'Hermas, hail!" And I being full of sorrow, and weeping, answered, "Hail, lady!" And she said unto me, "Why art thou sad, Hermas, who wert wont to be patient and modest, and always cheerful?" I answered and said to her, "Lady, a reproach has been laid to my charge by an excellent woman, who tells me that I have sinned against her." She replied, "Far be any such thing from the servant of God. But it may be, the desire of her has risen up in thy heart; for indeed such a thought maketh the servants of God guilty of sin; nor ought such a detestable thought to be in the servant of God; nor should he who is approved by the Spirit desire that which is evil; but especially Hermas, who contains himself from all wicked lusts, and is full of all simplicity, and of great innocence.

III. "Nevertheless the Lord is not so much angry with thee for thine own sake, as upon the

---

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Hieron. in Hoseam, vii. 9.

holy church, which he hath blessed : behold, he will remove the heavens, and the mountains, the hills, and the seas ; and all things shall be made plain for his elect ; that he may render unto them the promise which he has promised, with much honour and joy ; if so be that they shall keep the commandments of God, which they have received with great faith."

IV. And when she had made an end of reading, she rose out of the chair ; and, behold, four young men came, and carried the chair to the east. And she called me unto her, and touched my breast, and said unto me, " Did my reading please thee ? " I answered, " Lady, these last things please me ; but what went before was severe and hard." She said unto me, " These last things are for the righteous<sup>1</sup>, but the foregoing for the revoltors and heathen." And as she was talking with me, two men appeared, and took her up on their shoulders, and went to the east, where the chair was. And she went cheerfully away ; and as she was going, said unto me, " Hermas, be of good cheer."

## VISION II.

*Again, Of his neglect in correcting his talkative Wife ; and, Of his lewd Sons<sup>2</sup>.*

I. As I was on the way to Cumæ, about the same time that I went the year before, I began to call to mind the vision I formerly had. And again the Spirit carried me away, and brought me into the same place in which I had been the year before. And when I was come into the place, I fell down upon my knees, and began to pray unto the Lord, and to glorify his name, that he had

---

<sup>1</sup> Edit. Oxon.

<sup>2</sup> *Et ejus modo.*

esteemed me worthy, and had manifested unto me my former sins. And when I arose from prayer, behold I saw over against me the old woman whom I had seen the last year, walking, and reading in a certain book. And she said unto me, "Canst thou tell these things to the elect of God?" I answered, and said unto her, "Lady, I cannot retain so many things in my memory; but give me the book, and I will write them down." "Take it, (says she) and see that thou restore it again to me." As soon as I had received it, I went aside into a certain place of the field, and transcribed every letter, for I found no syllables. And as soon as I had finished what was written in the book, the book was suddenly caught out of my hands, but by whom I saw not.

II. After fifteen days, when I had fasted, and entreated the Lord with all earnestness, the knowledge of the writing was revealed unto me. Now the writing was this:—Thy seed, O Hermas! have sinned against the Lord, and have betrayed their parents, through their great wickedness; and they have been called the betrayers of their parents, and have gone on in their treachery. And now have they added lewdness to their other sins, and the pollutions of naughtiness: thus have they filled up the measure of their iniquities. But do thou upbraid<sup>1</sup> thy sons with all these words; and thy wife, which shall be thy sister; and let her learn to refrain her tongue, with which she calumniates; for when she shall hear these things, she will refrain herself, and shall obtain mercy. And they also shall be instructed, when thou shalt have reproached them with these words, which the Lord has commanded to be revealed unto thee.

<sup>1</sup> Clem. Alex. Strom. vi.

<sup>2</sup> *Impropera.*

<sup>3</sup> So one MS. in Coteler. edit. Oxon. And she, &c.

Then shall their sins be forgiven which they have heretofore committed, and the sins of all the saints who have sinned even unto this day, if they shall repent with all their hearts, and remove all doubts out of their hearts. For the Lord hath sworn by his glory concerning his elect; having determined this very time<sup>1</sup>, that if any one 'shall even now sin, he shall not be saved. For the repentance of the righteous has its end: the days of repentance are fulfilled to all the saints, but to the heathen there is repentance even unto the last day. Thou shalt, therefore, say to those who are over the church, that they order their ways in righteousness, that they may fully receive the promise with much glory. Stand fast, therefore, ye that work righteousness; and continue to do it, that your departure may be with the holy angels. Happy are ye, as many as shall endure the great trial that is at hand, and whosoever shall not deny his life. For the Lord hath sworn by his Son, that whoso denieth his Son and him, being afraid of his life, he will also deny him in the world<sup>2</sup> that is to come. But those who shall never deny him, he will, of his exceeding great mercy, be favourable unto them.

III. But thou, O Hermas! remember not the evils<sup>4</sup> which thy sons have done, neither neglect thy sister, but take care that they amend of their former sins. For they will be instructed by this doctrine, if thou shalt not be mindful of what they have done wickedly. For the remembrance of evils worketh death; but the forgetting of them, life eternal. But thou, O Hermas! hast undergone a great many worldly troubles for the offences

---

<sup>1</sup> Day. *Præfinita ista die etiam nunc si peccaverit aliquis.*—Lat.

<sup>2</sup> Shall sin after it.

<sup>3</sup> Days that are coming.

<sup>4</sup> Injuries.



of thy house ; because thou hast neglected them, as things that did not belong unto thee, and thou art wholly taken up with thy great business. Nevertheless, for this cause shalt thou be saved, that thou hast not departed from the living God : and thy simplicity and singular continency shall preserve thee, if thou shalt continue in them. Yea, they shall save all such as do such things, and walk in innocence and simplicity. They who are of this kind, shall prevail against all impiety, and continue unto life eternal. Happy are all they that do righteousness; they shall not be consumed for ever. But thou wilt say, Behold, there is a great trial coming. If it seems good to thee, deny him again. The Lord is nigh to them that turn to him; as it is written in the books of Heldam and Modal<sup>1</sup>, who prophesied to the people of Israel in the wilderness.

IV. Moreover, Brethren, it was revealed to me, as I was sleeping, by a very goodly young man, saying unto me, "What thinkest thou of that old woman from whom thou receivedst the book? Who is she?" I answered, "A sybil." "Thou art mistaken, (said he,) she is not." I replied, "Who is she then, Sir?" He answered me, "It is the Church of God." And I said unto him, "Why then does she appear old?" "She is therefore (said he) an old woman, because she was the first<sup>2</sup> of all the creation, and the world was made for her." After this I saw a vision at home in my own house; and the old woman, whom I had seen before, came to me, and asked me, "Whether I had yet delivered her<sup>3</sup> book to the

<sup>1</sup> Eldad and Medad. Numb. xi. 26, 27.

<sup>2</sup> See Dr. Grabe's Annot. to Bishop Bull's Def. Fid. Nic. p. 24. fol. de S. Hermæ.

<sup>3</sup> ~~Some~~ is added in the Lambeth MS.

elders of the church?" And I answered, "that I had not yet." She replied, "Thou hast well done; for I have certain words more to tell thee. But when I shall have finished all the words, they shall be clearly understood by the elect. And thou shalt write two books; and send one to Clement, and one to Grapté. For Clement shall send it to the foreign cities, because it is permitted to him so to do; but Grapté shall admonish the widows and orphans. But thou shalt read in this city with the elders of the church."

## VISION III.

*Of the building of the Church-Triumphant; and,  
Of the several sorts of Reprobates.*

I. THE Vision which I saw, Brethren, was this. When I had often fasted, and prayed unto the Lord, that he would manifest unto me the revelation which he had promised by the Old Woman to shew unto me, the same night she appeared unto me, and said unto me, "Because thou dost thus afflict thyself, and art so desirous to know all things, come into the field, where thou wilt; and about the sixth hour I will appear unto thee, and shew thee what thou must see." I asked her, saying, "Lady, into what part of the field?" She answered, "Wherever thou wilt; only choose a good and a private place." And before I began to speak, and to tell her the place, she said unto me, "I will come where thou wilt." I was therefore, Brethren, in the field, and I observed the hours, and came into the place where I had appointed her to come. And I beheld a bench placed; it was a linen pillow, and over it spread a covering of fine

---

<sup>1</sup> Origen. Philocal. cap. 1.

linen. When I saw these things ordered in this manner, and that there was nobody in the place, I began to be astonished, and my hair stood on end, and a kind of horror seized me; for I was alone. But being come to myself, and calling to mind the glory of God, and taking courage, I fell down upon my knees, and began again to confess my sins as before. And whilst I was doing this, the Old Woman camethither with the six youngmen whom I had seen before, and stood behind me as I was praying, and heard me praying and confessing my sins unto the Lord. And, touching me, she said, "Leave off now to pray only for thy sins; pray also for righteousness, that thou mayest receive a part of her in thy house." And she lifted me up from the place, and took me by the hand, and brought me to the seat, and said to the young men, "Go, and build." As soon as they were departed, and we were alone, she said unto me, "Sit here." I answered her, "Lady, Let those who are elder sit first." She replied, "Sit down as I bid you." And when I would have sat on the right side, she suffered me not, but made a sign to me with her hand that I should sit on the left. As I was therefore musing, and full of sorrow, that she would not suffer me to sit on the right side, she said unto me, "Hermas, why art thou sad? The place which is on the right hand, is theirs who have already attained unto God, and have suffered for his name's sake. But there is yet a great deal remaining unto thee, before thou canst sit with them. But continue, as thou dost, in thy sincerity, and thou shalt sit with them; as all others shall, that do their works, and shall bear what they have borne."

II. I said unto her, "Lady, I would know what it is that they have suffered?" "Hear then, (said

she:) Wild beasts, scourgings, imprisonments, and crosses, for his name's sake. For this cause, the right hand of holiness belongs to them, and to all others as many as shall suffer for the name of God; but the left belongs to the rest. Howbeit, the gifts and the promises belong to both, to them on the right, and to those on the left hand; only that sitting on the right hand, they have some glory above the others. But thou art desirous to sit on the right hand with them; and yet thy defects<sup>1</sup> are many. But thou shalt be purged from thy defects; as also all who doubt not shall be cleansed from all the sins which they have committed unto this day." And when she had said this, she would have departed; wherefore falling down before her feet, I began to entreat her, for the Lord's sake, that she would shew me the Vision which she had promised. Then she again took me by the hand, and lifted me up, and made me sit upon the seat on the left side; and holding up a certain bright wand, said unto me; "Seest thou that great thing?" I replied, "Lady, I see nothing." She answered, "Dost thou not see over against thee a great tower, which is built upon the water with bright square stones?" For the tower was built upon a square by those six young men that came with her. But many thousands of other men brought stones: some drew them out of the deep: others carried them from the ground, and gave them to the six young men; and they took them, and built. As for those stones which were drawn out of the deep, they put them all into the building; for they were polished, and their squares exactly answered one another; and so one was joined in such wise to

---

<sup>1</sup> Lat.—*Exiguitates*.

and after this, be no longer importunate with me about the revelation. For these revelations have an end, seeing they are fulfilled; but thou dost not leave off to desire revelations, for thou art very urgent<sup>1</sup>. As for the tower which thou seest built, it is I myself, namely, the Church, which have appeared to thee both now and heretofore; wherefore ask what thou wilt concerning the tower; and I will reveal it unto thee, that thou mayest rejoice with the saints." I said unto her, "Lady, because thou hast thought me once worthy to receive from thee the revelation of all these things, declare them unto me." She answered me; "Whatsoever is fit to be revealed unto thee, shall be revealed; <sup>2</sup>only let thy heart be with the Lord, and doubt not, whatsoever thou shalt see." I asked her; "Lady, why is the tower built upon the water?" She replied; "I said before to thee that thou wert very wise, to inquire diligently concerning the building, therefore thou shalt find the truth. Hear, therefore, why the tower is built upon the water:—because your life is and shall be saved by water: for it<sup>4</sup> is founded by the word of the Almighty and Honourable Name, and is supported by the invisible power and virtue of God.

IV. And I answering said unto her; "These things are very admirable; but, Lady, who are those six young men that build?" "They are (said she) the Angels of God, which were first appointed, and to whom the Lord has delivered all his creatures, to frame and build them up, and to rule over them; for by these the building of the tower shall be finished." "And who are the rest, who bring them stones?" "They also are the holy Angels of the Lord; but the other are more

<sup>1</sup> Edit. Oxon.

<sup>2</sup> Baptism.

<sup>3</sup> Clem. Alex. Strom. xii.

<sup>4</sup> Namely, the tower.

excellent than these. Wherefore, when the whole building of the tower shall be finished, they shall all feast together beside the tower, and shall glorify God, because the structure of the tower is finished." I asked her, saying; "I would know the condition of the stones, and the meaning of them, what it is?" She answering said unto me: "Art thou better than all others, that this should be revealed unto thee? for others are both before thee, and better than thou art, to whom these Visions should be made manifest; nevertheless, that the name of God may be glorified, it has been, and shall be revealed unto thee, for the sake of those who are doubtful, and think in their hearts whether these things are so or not. Tell them that all these things are true; and that there is nothing in them that is not true; but all are firm, and truly established.

V. "Hear now then concerning the stones that are in the building. The square and white stones, which agree exactly in their joints, are the apostles, and bishops, and doctors, and ministers, who through the mercy of God have come in, and governed, and taught, and ministered holily and modestly to the elect of God, both that are fallen asleep and which yet remain; and have always agreed with them, and have had peace within themselves, and have heard each other. For which cause, their joints exactly meet together in the building of the tower. They which are drawn out of the deep, and put into the building, and whose joints agree with the other stones which are already built, are those which are already fallen asleep, and have suffered for the sake of the Lord's name." "And what are the other stones, Lady, that are brought from the earth; I would know what they are?" She answered, "They which

lie upon the ground, and are not polished, are those which God has approved, because they have walked in 'the law of the Lord, and directed their ways in his commandments. They which are brought and put in the building of the tower, are the young in faith, and the faithful: and these are admonished by the angels to do well, because that iniquity is not found in them." "But who are those whom they rejected, and laid beside the tower?" "They are such as have sinned, and are willing to repent; for which cause they are not cast far from the tower, because they will be useful for the building, if they shall repent. They, therefore, that are yet to repent, if they shall repent, shall become strong in the faith; that is, if they repent now, whilst the tower is building. For if the building shall be finished, there will then be no place for them to be put in, but they shall be rejected: for he, only, has this privilege who shall now be put into the tower."

VI. "But would you know who they are that were cut out, and cast afar off from the tower?" "Lady, (said I,) I desire it." "They are the children of iniquity, who believed only in hypocrisy, but departed not from their evil ways; for this cause they shall not be saved, because they are not of any use in the building, by reason of their sins: wherefore they are cut out, and cast afar off, because of the anger of the Lord, and because they have provoked him to anger against them. As for the great number of other stones which thou hast seen placed about the tower, but not put into the building: those which are rugged, are they who have known the truth, but have not continued in it, nor been joined to the saints, and

---

<sup>1</sup> *In æquitatem Domini.*—Lat.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. ed. Ozon.

therefore are unprofitable. Those that have clefts<sup>1</sup> in them, are they who keep up discord in their hearts against each other, and live not in peace; that are friendly when present with their brethren, but, as soon as they are departed from one another, their wickedness still continues in their hearts: these are the clefts which are seen in those stones. Those that are maimed and short, are they who have believed, indeed, but still are in great measure full of wickedness; for this cause are they maimed, and not whole." "But what are the white and round stones, Lady, and which are not proper for the building of the tower?" She answering, said unto me; "How long wilt thou continue foolish, and without understanding; asking every thing and discerning nothing? They are such as have faith, indeed, but have withal the riches of this present world. When therefore any troubles arise, for the sake of their riches and traffic they deny the Lord." I answering said unto her, "When therefore will they be profitable to the Lord?" "When their riches shall be cut away (says she) in which they take delight, then they will be profitable unto the Lord for his building: for, as a round stone, unless it be cut away, and cast somewhat off of its bulk, cannot be made square; so they who are rich in this world, unless their riches be pared off, cannot be made profitable unto the Lord. Learn this from thy own experience: when thou wert rich, thou wast unprofitable, but now thou art profitable, and fit for the life which thou hast undertaken; for thou also once wast one of those stones."

VII. "As for the rest of the stones which thou sawest cast afar off from the tower, and running

---

<sup>1</sup> Tribulation arises.



in the way, and tumbled out of the way into desert places, they are such as have believed, indeed, but, through their doubting, have forsaken the true way, thinking that they could find a better. But they wander, and are miserable, going into desolate ways. Then for those stones which fell into the fire, and were burnt: they are those who have for ever<sup>1</sup> departed from the living God; nor doth it ever come into their hearts to repent, by reason of the affection which they bear to their lusts and wickednesses which they commit.” “And what are the rest, which fell by the water, and could not roll into the water?” “They are such as have heard the word, and were willing to be baptized in the name of the Lord, but, considering the great holiness which the truth requires, have withdrawn themselves, and walked again after their wicked lusts.” Thus she finished the explication of the tower. But I being still urgent, asked her: “Is there repentance allowed to all those stones which are thus cast away, and were not suitable to the building of the tower; and shall they find place in this tower?” “They may repent, (said she,) but they cannot come into this tower; but they shall be placed in a much lower rank, and this after that they shall have been afflicted, and fulfilled the days of their sins. And for this cause they shall be removed, because they have received the word of righteousness: and then they shall be translated from their afflictions, if they shall have a true sense in their hearts of what they have done amiss. But if they shall not have this sense in their hearts, they shall not be saved, by reason of the hardness of their hearts.

---

<sup>1</sup> Finally.

VIII. When therefore I had done asking her concerning all these things, she said unto me: Wilt thou see somewhat else? And being desirous of seeing it, I became very cheerful of countenance. She, therefore, looking back upon me, and smiling a little, said unto me: "Seest thou seven women about the tower?" "Lady," said I, "I see them." "This tower," replied she, "is supported by them, according to the command of the Lord: hear, therefore, the effects of them. The first of them, which holds fast with her hand, is called Faith: by her the elect shall be saved. The next, which is girt up, and looks manly, is named Abstinence: she is the daughter of Faith. Whosoever, therefore, shall follow her, shall be happy in all his life; because he shall abstain from all evil works, believing, that if he shall contain himself from all concupiscence, he shall be the heir of eternal life." "And what, Lady," said I, "are the other five?" "They are," replied she, "the daughters of one another. The first of them is called Simplicity; the next Innocence; the third Modesty; then Discipline; and the last of all is Charity. When, therefore, thou shalt have fulfilled the works of their mother, thou shalt be able to do all things." "Lady," said I, "I would know what particular virtue every one of these has." "Hear then," replied she, "they have equal virtues; and their virtues are knit together, and follow one another as they were born. From Faith proceeds Abstinence; from Abstinence, Simplicity; from Simplicity, Innocence; from Innocence, Modesty; from Modesty, Discipline, and Charity. Therefore the works of these are holy, and chaste, and right. Whosoever, therefore, shall serve these, and hold fast to their works, he shall have his dwelling in the tower with the saints of God."

Then I asked her concerning the times, whether the end were now at hand? But she cried out with a loud voice, saying: "O foolish man! Dost thou not see the tower yet a building? When, therefore, the tower shall be finished, and built, it shall have an end; and indeed it shall soon be accomplished. But do not ask me any more questions: what has been said may suffice thee and all the saints, for the refreshment of your spirits. For these things have not been revealed to thee only, but that thou mayest make them manifest unto all. For therefore, O Hermas, after three days thou must understand these words which I begin to speak unto thee, that thou mayest speak them in the ears of the saints; that when they shall have heard and done them, they may be cleansed from their iniquities, and thou together with them.

IX. Hear me therefore, O my sons! I have bred you up in much simplicity, and innocency, and modesty, for the mercy of God, which has dropped down upon you in righteousness; that you should be sanctified, and justified from all sin and wickedness: but ye will not cease from your evil doings. Now therefore hearken unto me, and have peace one with another, and visit one another, and receive one another, and do not enjoy the creatures of God alone. Give freely to them that are in need. For some by too free feeding contract an infirmity in their flesh, and do injury to their bodies; whilst the flesh of others, who have not food, withers away, because they want sufficient nourishment, and their bodies are consumed. Wherefore this intemperance is hurtful to you, who have, and do not communicate to them that want. Prepare for the judgment that is about to come upon you. Ye that are the more

eminent, search out them that are hungry, whilst the tower is yet unfinished. For when the tower shall be finished, ye shall be willing to do good, and shall not find any place in it. Beware therefore, ye that glory in your riches, lest perhaps they groan who are in want, and their sighing come up unto God, and ye be shut out with your goods without the gate of the tower. Behold I now warn you who are set over the church, and love the highest seats : be not ye like unto <sup>1</sup>those that work mischief. And they indeed carry about their poison in boxes : but ye contain your poison and infection<sup>2</sup> in your hearts ; and will not purge them, and mix your sense with a pure heart, that ye may find mercy with the Great King. Take heed, my children, that your dissensions deprive you not of your lives. How will ye instruct the elect of God, when ye yourselves want correction ? Wherefore admonish one another, and be at peace among yourselves, that I, standing before your father, may give an account for you unto the Lord."

X. And when she had made an end of talking with me, the six young men that built, came and carried her to the tower ; and four others took up the seat on which she sate, and they also went away again to the tower. I saw not the faces of these, for their backs were towards me. As she was going away, I asked her, ' that she would reveal to me what concerned the three forms, in which she had appeared unto me.' But she answering said unto me : " Concerning these things thou must ask some other, that they may be revealed unto thee." Now, brethren, in the first

---

<sup>1</sup> Poisoners.

<sup>2</sup> Medicaments.

Vision the last year, she appeared unto me exceedingly old, and sitting in a chair. In another Vision, she had indeed a youthful face, but her flesh and hair were old; and she talked with me standing, and was more cheerful than the first time. In the third Vision, she was in all respects much younger, and comely to the eye; only she had the hair of an aged person: yet she looked cheerful, and sate upon a seat. I was therefore very sad concerning these things, until I might understand the vision. Wherefore I saw the same old woman, in a vision of the night, saying unto me: "All prayer needeth humiliation. Fast therefore, and thou shalt learn from the Lord that which thou dost ask." I fasted therefore one day. The same night a young man appeared to me and said: "Why dost thou thus often desire revelations in thy prayers? Take heed that by asking many things, thou hurt not thy body. Let these revelations suffice thee. Canst thou see more notable revelations than those which thou hast already received?" I answered and said unto him: "Sir, I only ask this one thing upon the account of the three figures of the old woman that appeared to me, that the revelation may be compleat." He answered me: "You are not without understanding, but your doubts make you so; forasmuch as you have not your heart with the Lord." I replied and said: "But we shall learn these things more carefully from you."

XI. "Hear then," says he, "concerning the figures, about which you inquire. And first, in the first Vision she appeared to thee in the shape of an old woman sitting in a chair; because your old spirit was decayed, and without strength, by reason of your infirmities, and the doubtfulness of your heart. For as they who are old have no hope of

renewing themselves, nor expect any thing but their departure ; so you, being weakened through your worldly affairs, gave yourself up to sloth, and cast not away your solicitude from yourself upon the Lord; and your sense was confused<sup>1</sup>, and you grew old in your sadness." "But, Sir, I would know why she sate upon a chair?" He answered: "Because every one that is weak sitteth upon a chair, by reason of his infirmity, that his weakness may be upheld: behold therefore the figure of the first Vision.

XII. In the second Vision you saw her standing, and having a youthful face, and more cheerful than her former; but her flesh and her hair were antient. "Hear," said he, "this parable also. When any one grows old, he despairs of himself by reason of his infirmity and poverty; and expects nothing but the last day of his life. But on a sudden an inheritance is left to him; and he hears of it, and rises; and being become cheerful, he puts on new strength. And now he no longer sits down, but stands; and is delivered from his former sorrow; and sits not, but acts manfully. So you, having heard the revelation which God revealed unto you—because God had compassion upon you, and renewed your spirit—both laid aside your infirmities, and strength came to you, and you grew strong in the faith; and God, seeing your strength, rejoiced. For this cause he shewed you the building of the tower; and will shew other things unto you, if you shall have peace with all your heart among each other.

XIII. But in the third Vision you saw her yet younger; <sup>2</sup>fair and cheerful, and of a serene coun-

---

<sup>1</sup> Broken. *Contusus.*

<sup>2</sup> *Honestam.*

tenance. For, as if some good news comes to one that is sad, he straightway forgets his sadness, and regards nothing else but the good news which he has heard ; and for the rest he is comforted, and his spirit is renewed through the joy which he has received : even so you have been refreshed in your spirit, by seeing these good things. And for that you saw her sitting upon a bench, it denotes a strong position ; because a bench has four feet, and stands strongly. And even the world itself is upheld by the four elements. They therefore that repent perfectly, shall be young ; and they that turn from their sins with their whole heart, shall be established. And now you have the revelation fully ; ask no more to have any thing farther revealed unto you. But if any thing be to be revealed, it shall be made manifest unto you."

#### VISION IV.

*Of the Trial and Tribulation that is about to come upon Men.*

I. I SAW a Vision, Brethren, twenty days after the former Vision ; a representation of the tribulation that is at hand. I was walking in the field<sup>1</sup> way : (now from the public way to the manor whither I went is about ten furlongs : it is a way very little frequented :) and as I was walking alone, I entreated the Lord that he would confirm the revelation which he had shewed unto me by his holy church : and would grant repentance to all his servants, who had offended, that his great and honourable name might be glorified ; and because he thought me worthy <sup>2</sup>to whom he might

---

<sup>1</sup> Campaign way.

<sup>2</sup> That he would shew me.

certain virgin well adorned, as if she had been just come out of her bride-chamber; all in white, having on white shoes, and a veil down her face, and covered with shining hair. Now I knew by my former visions that it was the Church, and thereupon grew the more cheerful. She saluted me, saying, "Hail, O man!" I returned the salutation, saying, "Lady, hail!" She, answering, said unto me, "Did nothing meet you, O man!" I replied, "Lady, there met me such a beast as seemed able to devour a whole people: but by the power of God, and through his singular mercy, I escaped it." "Thou didst escape it well," said she, "because thou didst cast thy whole care upon God; and openedst thy heart unto him; believing that thou couldst be safe by no other, than by his great and honourable name. For this cause the Lord sent his angel who is over the beasts, whose name is HEGRIN, and stopped his mouth, that he should not devour thee. Thou hast escaped a great trial through thy faith, and because thou didst not doubt for such a terrible beast. Go, therefore, and relate to the elect of God, the great things that he hath done for thee. And thou shalt say unto them, that this beast is the figure of the trial that is about to come. If, therefore, ye shall have prepared yourselves, ye may escape it, if your heart be pure and without spot; and if ye shall serve God all the rest of your days without complaint. Cast all your cares upon the Lord, and he will direct them. Believe in God, ye doubtful, because he can do all things; he can both turn away his wrath from you, and send you help and security. Woe to the doubtful, to those who shall hear these words, and shall despise them: it had been better for them that they had not been born."

III. Then I asked her concerning the four



colours which the beast had upon its head. But she answered me, saying: "Again thou art curious in that thou askest concerning these things. "And I said unto her: "Lady, shew me what they are?" "Hear," said she, "the black which thou sawest, denotes the world in which you dwell. The fiery and bloody colour, signifies, that this age must be destroyed by fire and blood. The golden part are ye, who have escaped out of it: for as gold is tried by the fire, and is made profitable; so are ye also in like manner tried who dwell among the men of this world. They, therefore, that shall endure to the end, and be proved by them, shall be purged. And as gold, by this trial, is cleansed and loses its dross; so shall ye also cast away all sorrow and trouble, and be made pure for the building of the tower. But the white colour denotes the time of the world which is to come, in which the elect of God shall dwell: because the elect of God shall be pure and without spot unto life eternal. Wherefore do not thou cease to speak these things in the ears of the saints. Here ye have the figure of the great tribulation that is about to come; which, if you please, shall be nothing to you. Keep therefore in mind the things which I have said unto you." When she had spoken thus much, she departed; but I saw not whither she went. But suddenly I heard a noise, and I turned back, being afraid; for I thought that the beast was coming towards me.

THE  
SECOND BOOK OF ST. HERMAS,  
WHICH IS CALLED  
HIS COMMANDS.

---

*The Introduction.*

WHEN I had prayed at home, and was sate down upon the bed, a certain man came in to me, with a reverend look, in the habit of a shepherd, clothed with a white cloak, having his bag upon his back, and his staff in his hand, and saluted me. I returned his salutation; and immediately he sate down by me, and said unto me: "I am sent by that venerable messenger, that I should dwell with thee all the remaining days of thy life." But I thought that he was come to try me, and said unto him: "Who are you? For I know to whom I am committed." He said unto me: "Do you not know me?" I answered: "No." "I am (said he) that Shepherd, to whose care you are delivered." Whilst he was yet speaking, his shape was changed; and when I knew that it was he to whom I was committed, I was ashamed, and a sudden fear came upon me, and I was utterly overcome with sadness, because I had spoken so foolishly unto him. But he said unto me: "Be not ashamed, but receive strength in thy mind, through the Commands which I am about to deliver unto thee. For (said he) I am sent to shew unto thee all those things again, which thou hast

## THE SECOND COMMAND.

*That we must avoid Detraction; and do our Alms-deeds with Simplicity.*

HE said unto me: "Be<sup>1</sup> innocent and without disguise; so shalt thou be like an infant who knows no malice, which destroys the life of man. Especially, see that thou speak evil of none; nor willingly hear any one speak evil of any. <sup>2</sup>For if thou observest not this, thou also who hearest shalt be partaker<sup>3</sup> of the sin of him that speaketh evil, by believing the slander; and thou also shalt have sin, because thou believedst him that spake evil of thy brother. Detraction<sup>4</sup> is a pernicious thing; an inconstant<sup>5</sup> evil spirit; that never continues in peace, but is always in discord. Wherefore<sup>6</sup> refrain thyself from it; and keep peace evermore with thy brother. Put on a holy constancy<sup>7</sup>, in which there are no sins, but all is full of joy<sup>8</sup>; and do good of thy labours. <sup>9</sup>Give<sup>10</sup> without distinction to all that are in want; not doubting to whom thou givest. But give to all; for God will have us give to all, of<sup>11</sup> all his own gifts. They, therefore, that receive shall give an account to God, both wherefore they received, and for what end. And they that receive without a real need,

<sup>1</sup> *Lat.* Have simplicity, and be innocent.

<sup>2</sup> *Gr.* Εἰ ἂν μὴ, καὶ οὐ ἀνομιᾶν ἔσθαι ἴσθαι.

<sup>3</sup> So the *Gr.* and *Lamb.* MS. Particeps eris peccati male loquentis, credens; et tu habebis peccatum.

<sup>4</sup> *Vid.* Antioch. Hom. xxix.

<sup>5</sup> *Dæmon.*

<sup>6</sup> The Greek hath οὐ.

<sup>7</sup> Rather, Simplicity; according to the Greek reading, preserved by Athanasius.

<sup>8</sup> *Gr.* In which there is no evil offence, but all things smooth and delightful. ἐν οἷς οὐδὲν πρὸς ἐκδομὴν ἵσται πνεῦμα, ἀλλὰ πάντα ἡμεῖς καὶ ἡλαρό.

<sup>9</sup> *Vid.* Antioch. Hom. xcviii.

<sup>10</sup> Simply.

<sup>11</sup> *Gr.* ἐκ τῶν ἰδίων δωρημάτων. MS. *Lamb.* De suis donis.

shall give an account for it: but he that gives shall be innocent; for he has fulfilled his duty as he received it from God; not making any choice to whom he should give, and to whom not. And this service he did with simplicity, and 'to the glory of God. Keep, therefore, this command according as I have delivered it unto thee, that thy repentance may be found to be sincere, and that good may come to thy house; and have a pure heart."

### THE THIRD COMMAND.

#### *Of avoiding Lying: and the Repentance of HERMAS for his Dissimulation.*

'MOREOVER he said unto me: "Love truth, and let all the speech be true which proceeds out of thy mouth, that the spirit which the Lord hath given to dwell in thy flesh may be found true towards all men; and the Lord be glorified, who hath given such a spirit unto thee: because God is true in all his words, and in him there is no lie. They, therefore, that lie, deny the Lord; 'and become robbers of the Lord, 'not rendering to God what they received from him. For they received the spirit free from lying: if, therefore, they make that a liar, they defile what was committed to them by the Lord, and become deceivers." When I heard this, I wept bitterly. And when he saw me weeping, he said unto me: "Why weepest thou?" And I said: "Because, Sir, I doubt whether I can be saved." He asked me: "Wherefore?" I replied: "Because, Sir, I never spake a

<sup>1</sup> Gloriously to God.

<sup>2</sup> Antioch. Hom. lxvi.

<sup>3</sup> According to the Gr.

<sup>4</sup> See below. Book iii. Sim. ix. ch. 32.

true word in my life ; but always lived in dissimulation, and affirmed a lie for truth to all men ; and no man contradicted me ; but all gave credit to my words. How then can I live, seeing I have done in this manner?" And he said unto me : "Thou thinkest well, and truly. For thou oughtest, as the servant of God, to have walked in the truth, and not have joined an evil conscience with the spirit of truth ; nor have grieved the holy and true spirit of God." And I replied unto him : "Sir, I never before hearkened so diligently to these things." He answered : "Now thou hearest them : take care, from henceforth, that even those things which thou hast formerly spoken falsely for the sake of thy business, may, <sup>1</sup>by thy present truth, receive credit. For even those things may be credited, if for the time to come thou shalt speak the truth ; and <sup>2</sup>by so doing thou mayest attain unto life. And whosoever shall hearken unto this command, and do it ; and shall depart from all lying, he shall live unto God."

#### THE FOURTH COMMAND.

##### *Of putting away one's Wife for Adultery.*

I. "FURTHERMORE," said he, "I command thee, that thou keep <sup>3</sup>thyself chaste ; and that thou suffer not any thought<sup>4</sup> of any other marriage, or of fornication, to enter into thy heart : for such a thought produces a great sin. But be thou at all times mindful of the Lord, and thou shalt never sin. For if such an evil thought should arise in thy heart, thou shouldest be guilty of a great sin ; and they who do such things follow the way of

---

<sup>1</sup> Through these words. Lat. *His verbis et illa fidem recipiant.*

<sup>2</sup> If thou shalt keep the truth. <sup>3</sup> Chastity. <sup>4</sup> Another man's.

death. Look, therefore, to thyself, and keep thyself from such a thought: for where chastity remains in the heart of a righteous man, there an evil thought ought never to arise." And I said unto him: "Sir, suffer me to speak a little to you." He bade me say on. And I answered: "Sir, if a man shall have a wife that is faithful in the Lord, and shall catch her in adultery, doth a man sin that continues to live still with her?" And he said unto me: "As long as he is ignorant of her sin, he commits no fault in living with her: but if a man shall know his wife to have offended, and she shall not repent of her sin, but go on still in her fornication, and a man shall continue nevertheless to live with her, he shall become guilty of her sin, and partake with her in her adultery." And I said unto him: "What, therefore, is to be done, if the woman continues on in her sin?" He answered: "Let her husband put her away, and let him continue by himself. But if he shall put away his wife, and marry another, he also doth commit adultery." And I said: "What if the woman that is so put away, shall repent, and be willing to return to her husband; shall she not be received by him?" He said unto me: "Yes; and if her husband shall not receive her, he will sin, and commit a great offence against himself: but he ought to receive the offender, if she repents; only not often. For to the servants of God there is but one repentance. And for this cause a man that putteth away his wife ought not to take another, because she may repent. This act is alike both in the man and in the woman. Now they commit adultery, not only who pollute their flesh, but who also make an image. <sup>1</sup>If, therefore, a woman perse-

---

<sup>1</sup> See 1 Cor. vii. 15.

veres in any thing of this kind, and repents not, depart from her, and live not with her: otherwise thou also shalt be partaker of her sin. But it is, therefore, commanded, that both the man and the woman should remain unmarried, because such persons may repent. Nor do I in this administer any occasion for the doing of these things; but rather that whoso has offended, should not offend any more. But for their former sins, God, who has the power of healing, will give a remedy: for he has the power of all things."

II. I ASKED him again, and said: "Seeing the Lord hath thought me worthy that thou shouldst dwell with me continually, speak a few words unto me, because I understand nothing, and my heart is hardened through my former conversation; and open my <sup>1</sup>understanding, because I am very dull, and apprehend nothing at all." And he answering, said unto me: "I am the <sup>2</sup>minister of repentance, and give <sup>3</sup>understanding to all that repent. Does it not seem to thee to be <sup>4</sup>a very wise thing to repent? Because he that does so, gets great understanding: for he is sensible that he hath sinned and done wickedly in the sight of the Lord; and he remembers <sup>5</sup>within himself, that he has offended; and repents and does no more wickedly; but does that which is good, and humbles his soul, and afflicts it, because he has offended. You see, therefore, that repentance is great wisdom." And I said unto him: "For this cause, Sir, I inquire diligently into all things, because I am a sinner, that I may know what I must do that I may live; because my sins are many." And he said unto me:

---

<sup>1</sup> Sense.

<sup>4</sup> Great wisdom.

<sup>2</sup> Præpositus.

<sup>5</sup> In his understanding.

<sup>3</sup> See below, chap. iii.

"Thou shalt live if thou shalt keep these my commandments. And whosoever shall hear and do these commands, shall live unto God."

III. And I said unto him : " I have even now heard from certain teachers that there is no other repentance besides that of baptism ; when we go down into the water, and receive the forgiveness of our sins ; and that after that, we must sin no more, but live in 'purity.'" And he said unto me : "Thou hast <sup>2</sup>been rightly informed. Nevertheless, seeing now thou inquirest diligently into all things, I will manifest this also unto thee ; yet not so as to give any occasion of sinning, either to those who shall hereafter believe, or to those who have already believed in the Lord. For neither they who have <sup>3</sup>newly believed, or who shall hereafter believe, have any repentance of sins, but forgiveness of them. But as to those who have been called to the faith, and since that are fallen into any gross sin, the Lord hath appointed repentance : because God knoweth the thoughts of all men's hearts, and their infirmities ; and the manifold wickedness of the devil, who is always contriving something against the servants of God, and maliciously lays snares for them. Therefore, our merciful Lord had compassion towards his creature, and appointed that repentance, and gave unto me the power of it. And, therefore, I say unto thee : If any one, after that great and holy calling, shall be tempted by the devil and sin, he has one <sup>4</sup>repentance. But if he shall often sin and repent, it shall not profit such a one ; for he shall hardly live unto God." And I said : " Sir, I am

---

<sup>1</sup> Chastity.

<sup>2</sup> Rightly heard.

<sup>3</sup> MS. Lamb. *Qui modo crediderunt.* Who have just now believed.

<sup>4</sup> Vid. Annot. Coteler. in loc. p. 60, 61.



restored again to life, since I have thus diligently hearkened to these Commands. For I perceive, that if I shall not hereafter add any more to my sins, I shall be saved." And he said: "Thou shalt be saved; and so shall all others, as many as shall observe these Commandments."

IV. AND again I said unto him: "Sir, seeing thou hearest me patiently, shew me yet one thing more." "Tell me," saith he, "what it is." And I said: "If a husband or wife die, and the party which survives marry again, does he sin in so doing?" "He that marries," says he, "sins not: howbeit, if he shall remain single, he shall thereby gain to himself great honour before the Lord. Keep, therefore, thy chastity and modesty; and thou shalt live unto God. Observe from henceforth those things which I speak with thee, and command thee to observe; from the time <sup>a</sup>that I have been delivered unto thee, and dwell in thy house. So shall thy former sins be forgiven, if thou shalt keep these my commandments. And in like manner shall all others be forgiven, who shall observe these my Commandments."

#### THE FIFTH COMMAND.

##### *Of the Sadness of the Heart; and of Patience.*

I. "Be patient," says he, "and <sup>b</sup>long-suffering; so shalt thou have dominion over all wicked works, and shalt <sup>c</sup>fulfil all righteousness. For if thou shalt be patient, the holy spirit which dwelleth in thee shall be pure, and not be darkened by any evil spirit; but, being full of joy, shall be enlarged,

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Not. Coteler. in loc. p.64. B. C. Rom. vii. 3. Comp. 1 Cor. vii.

<sup>2</sup> MS. Lamb. *melius*: *Ex quo mihi traditus es*; That thou hast been delivered unto me, and I dwell, &c.

<sup>3</sup> *Gr. Μαρτύριος*. MS. Lamb. *Animagus*.

<sup>4</sup> Work.

and feast 'in the body in which it dwells, and 'serve the Lord with joy, and in great peace. But if any' anger shall overtake thee, presently the holy spirit which is in thee, will be straightened, and seek to depart from thee. For he is choked by the evil spirit; and has not the 'liberty of 'serving the Lord as he would; for he is grieved by 'anger. 'When, therefore, both these spirits dwell together, it is destructive to a man. As if one should take a little wormwood, and put it into a vessel of honey, the whole honey would be spoiled; and a great quantity of honey is corrupted by a very little wormwood, and loses the sweetness of honey, and is no longer acceptable to its lord, because the whole honey is made bitter, and loses its use. But if no wormwood be put into the honey, it is sweet and profitable to its Lord. Thus is forbearance sweeter than honey, and profitable to the Lord, who dwelleth in it. But 'anger is unprofitable. If, therefore, anger shall be mixed with forbearance, the soul is distressed, and its prayer is not profitable 'with God." And I said unto him: "Sir, I would know the sinfulness of 'anger, that I may keep myself from it." And he said unto me, "Thou shalt know it; and if thou shalt not keep thyself from it, thou shalt lose thy hope with all thy house. Wherefore depart from it. For I the 'messenger of righteousness am with thee; and all that depart from it, as many as shall repent with all their

<sup>1</sup> MS. Lamb. *melius*, *Cum vase*: et Gr. *μὲν τοῦ σώματος*, With the body, or vessel.

<sup>2</sup> Gr. *Αὐτοῦ γὰρ τῇ παρουσίᾳ*.

<sup>3</sup> Ὁξύχολία. Gr. Bitterness of gall.

<sup>4</sup> Place.

<sup>5</sup> Gr. *Αὐτοῦ γὰρ τῇ παρουσίᾳ*.

<sup>6</sup> Both Athanasius and Antiochus add here these words; omitted in our copies: "For in forbearance (or, long-suffering) the Lord dwelleth, "but in bitterness the devil."

<sup>7</sup> To.

<sup>8</sup> Angel.

hearts, shall live unto God; and I will be with them, and will keep them all. For all such as have repented, have been justified by the Most Holy Messenger, who is a minister of salvation."

II. "And now," says he, "hear the wickedness of <sup>1</sup>anger; how evil and hurtful it is, and how it overthrows the servants of God: for it cannot <sup>2</sup>hurt those that are full of faith, because the <sup>3</sup>power of God is with them; but it overthrows the doubtful, and those that are destitute of faith. For as often as it sees <sup>4</sup>such men, it casts itself into their hearts; and so a man or woman is in bitterness for nothing—for the things of life; or for sustenance; or for a vain word, if any should chance to fall in; or by reason of any friend; or for a debt; or for any other superfluous things of the like nature. For these things are foolish, and superfluous, and vain to the servants of God. But equanimity is strong, and forcible, and of great power, and sitteth in great enlargement; is cheerful, rejoicing in peace; and glorifying God at all times <sup>5</sup>with meekness. And this long-suffering dwells with those that are full of faith. But <sup>6</sup>anger is foolish, and light, and empty. Now bitterness is bred through folly; by bitterness, <sup>7</sup>anger; by <sup>8</sup>anger, fury. And this fury arising from so many evil principles, worketh a great and uncurable sin. For when all these things are in the same <sup>9</sup>man in which the holy spirit dwells; the vessel cannot contain them, but runs over; and because the spirit, being

<sup>1</sup> Angriness. <sup>2</sup> Gr. Work upon. *ἐργάζου*; et MS. Lamb. *facere*.

<sup>3</sup> Virtue.

<sup>4</sup> Gr. *τοιούτους ἀνθρώπους*.

<sup>5</sup> In the Greek of Athanasius and Antiochus the sense is fuller: "Having nothing of bitterness in itself, and continuing always in meekness, and quietness."

<sup>6</sup> Angriness. Disposition to anger. See above.

<sup>7</sup> Vessel.

tender, cannot tarry with the evil one, it departs and dwells with him that is meek. When, therefore, it is departed from the man in whom it dwelt, that man becomes destitute of the holy spirit, and is afterwards filled with wicked spirits<sup>1</sup>, and is blinded with evil thoughts. Thus does it happen to all angry men. Wherefore depart thou from anger, and put on equanimity, and resist wrath; so shalt thou be 'found with modesty and chastity by God. Take good heed, therefore, that thou neglect not this commandment. For if thou shalt obey this command, then shalt thou also be able to observe the other commandments which I shall command thee. Wherefore strengthen thyself now in these commands, that thou mayest live unto God. And whosoever shall observe these commandments, shall live unto God."

#### THE SIXTH COMMAND.

*That every Man has two 'Angels, and of the Suggestions of both.*

"I COMMANDED thee," said he, "in my first commandment, that thou shouldst keep faith and fear, and 'repentance." "Yes, Sir," said I. He continued. "But now I will shew thee the virtues of these commands, that thou mayest know their effects; how they are 'prescribed alike to the just and

<sup>1</sup> In the Gr. of Athanasius follow these words, omitted in the Latin vers. of Hermas: "And is unstable in all his doings, being drawn hither and thither by wicked men."

<sup>2</sup> In the Gr. of Athanasius it runs better thus: "Applauded with reverence, by those who are beloved of God."

<sup>3</sup> Vid. Coteler. Annot. in loc. p. 67, 68. Comp. edit. Oxon. p. 61. Not. a.

<sup>4</sup> Lat. *penitentiam*. It should rather be *abstinentiam*; as in the Gr. of Athanasius, as appears by the first Commandment, which is here referred to.

<sup>5</sup> Placed. Lat. *posita sunt*.

unjust. Do thou, therefore, believe the righteous, but give no credit to the unrighteous. For righteousness keepeth the right way, but unrighteousness the wicked way. Do thou, therefore, keep the right way, and leave that which is evil. For the evil way has not a good end, but hath many stumbling-blocks; it is rugged and full of thorns, and leads to destruction; and is hurtful to all such as walk in it. But they who go in the right way, walk with evenness, and without offence; because it is not rough nor thorny. Thou seest, therefore, how it is best to walk in this way. Thou shalt, therefore, go," says he, "and all others as many as believe in God with all their heart, shall go through it."

II. "And now," says he, "understand<sup>1</sup>, first of all, what belongs to faith. There are two angels with man; one of righteousness, the other of iniquity." And I said unto him, "Sir, how shall I know that there are two such angels with man?" "Hear," says he, "and understand. The angel of righteousness is mild, and modest, and gentle, and quiet. When, therefore, he gets into thy heart, immediately he talks with thee of righteousness, of modesty, of chastity, of bountifulness, of forgiveness, of charity, and piety. When all these things come into thy heart, know then that the angel of righteousness is with thee. Wherefore hearken to this angel, and to his works. Learn also the works of the angel of iniquity. He is, first of all, bitter, and angry, and foolish; and his works are pernicious, and overthrow the servants of God. When, therefore, these things come into thy

---

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Antioch. Hom. lxi. Comp. Orig. lib. iii. De Princip. et in Luc. Hom. xxxv.

heart, thou shalt know, by his works, that this is the angel of iniquity." And I said unto him: "Sir, how shall I understand these things?" "Hear," says he, "and understand. When anger overtakes thee, or bitterness, know that he is in thee: as also, when the desire of many things, and of the best meats, and of drunkenness; when the love of what belongs to others; pride, and much speaking; and ambition; and the like things, come upon thee. When, therefore, these things arise in thy heart, know that the angel of iniquity is with thee. Seeing, therefore, thou knowest his works, depart from them all, and give no credit to him: because his works are evil, and become not the servants of God. Here, therefore, thou hast the works of both these angels. Understand now, and believe the angel of righteousness, because his instruction is good. For let a man be never so happy, yet if the thoughts of the other angel rise in his heart, that man or woman must needs sin. But let a man or woman be never so wicked, if the works of the angel of righteousness come into his heart, that man or woman must needs do some good. Thou seest, therefore, how it is good to follow the angel of righteousness. If, therefore, thou shalt follow him, and submit to his works, thou shalt live unto God. And as many as shall submit to his works, shall live also unto God."

#### THE SEVENTH COMMAND.

*That we must fear God, but not the Devil.*

"<sup>1</sup>FEAR God," says he, "and keep his commandments. For if thou keepest his commandments,

<sup>1</sup> Works. Gr. ἵπταται. <sup>2</sup> Gr. Πιστεύς. Lat. *Credideris*; Believe.

<sup>3</sup> Vid. Antioch. Hom. cxxvii. Eccles. xii. 13.

thou shalt be powerful in every work, and all thy work shall be 'excellent. For by fearing God, thou shalt do every thing well. This is that fear with which thou must be affected, that thou mayest be saved. But fear not the devil: for if thou fearest the Lord, thou shalt have dominion over him; because there is no power in him. Now if there be no power in him, then neither is he to be feared. But he in whom there is excellent power, he is to be feared; for every one that has power, is to be feared. But he that has no power is despised by every one. Fear the works of the devil, because they are evil. For by fearing the Lord, thou wilt fear, and not do the works of the devil, but keep thyself from them. There is, therefore, a two-fold fear. <sup>1</sup>If thou wilt not do evil, fear the Lord, and thou shalt not do it. But if thou wilt do good, <sup>2</sup>the fear of the Lord is strong, and great, and glorious. Wherefore, fear God, and thou shalt live: and whosoever shall fear him, and keep his commandments, their life is with the Lord. But they who keep them not, neither is life in them."

#### THE EIGHTH COMMAND.

*That we must flee from Evil, and do Good.*

"I HAVE told thee," said he, "that there are two kinds of creatures of the Lord, and that there is a two-fold 'abstinence. From some things, therefore, thou must abstain, and from others not." I answered: "Declare to me, Sir, from what I must

<sup>1</sup> *Ἀνεμίχτες*. Without comparison, or without mixture. <sup>2</sup>

Gr. Antiochi.

<sup>3</sup> In the Gr. of Antiochus these words follow, which make the connection more clear: "Fear also the Lord, and

"thou shalt be able to do it, for."

<sup>4</sup> Antioch. Hom. lxxix.

abstain, and from what not." "Hearken!" said he. "Keep thyself from evil, and do it not; but abstain not from good, but do it. For if thou shalt abstain from what is good, and not do it, thou shalt sin. Abstain, therefore, from all evil, and thou shalt know all righteousness." I said, "What evil things are they from which I must abstain?" "Hearken," said he; "from adultery, from drunkenness, from riots, from excess of eating, from daintiness and dishonesty, from pride, from fraud, from lying, from detraction, from hypocrisy, from remembrance of injuries, and from all evil speaking. For these are the works of iniquity, from which the servant of God must abstain. For he that cannot keep himself from these things, cannot live unto God. But hear," said he, "what follows of these kind of things: for indeed many more there are from which the servant of God must abstain: From theft and cheating, from false-witness, from covetousness, from boasting, and all other things of the like nature. Do these things seem to thee to be evil or not? Indeed they are very evil to the servants of God. Wherefore the servant of God must abstain from all these <sup>1</sup>works. Keep thyself, therefore, from them, that thou mayest live unto God, and be written among those that abstain from them. And thus have I shewn thee what things thou must avoid: now learn from what thou must not abstain. Abstain not from any good works, but do them. Hear," said he, "what the virtue of those good works is which thou must do, that thou mayest be saved. The first of all is faith, the fear of the Lord, charity, concord, equity, truth, patience, chastity.

---

<sup>1</sup> Do, according to the Greek, *ἐργασίας*.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. Coteler. in loc.



There is nothing better than these things in the life of man ; <sup>1</sup> who shall keep and do these things in their life. Hear next what follow these. To minister to the widows ; not to despise the fatherless and poor ; to redeem the servants of God from necessity ; to be hospitable, (for in hospitality there is sometimes <sup>2</sup> great fruit,) not to be contentious, but be quiet ; to be humble above all men ; to reverence the aged ; to labour to be righteous ; <sup>3</sup> to respect the brotherhood ; to bear affronts ; to be long-suffering ; <sup>4</sup> not to cast away those that have fallen from the faith, but to convert them, and make them be of <sup>5</sup> good cheer ; to admonish sinners ; not to oppress those that are our debtors ; and all other things of a like kind. Do these things seem to thee to be good, or not ?" And I said, "What can be better than these words ?" "Live then," said he, "in these commandments, and do not depart from them. For if thou shalt keep all these commandments, thou shalt live unto God. And all they that shall keep these commandments shall live unto God."

#### THE NINTH COMMAND.

*That we must ask of God daily, and without  
Doubting.*

AGAIN he said unto me ; " <sup>6</sup> Remove from thee all doubting, and question nothing at all, when

---

<sup>1</sup> The sense here is defective, and may be thus restored from the Greek of Athanasius : " Whosoever keeps these things, and doth abstain from them, shall be happy in his life." And so the Lamb. MS. *Hæc qui custodierit.* <sup>2</sup> Gr. *ἀγαθὸν αἶμα*, good deed.

<sup>3</sup> *Σοφία*.

<sup>4</sup> Add from the Gr. of Athanasius and Antiochus : " Not to remember injuries ; to comfort those who labour in their minds."

<sup>5</sup> Gr. *ἀνέμω*.

<sup>6</sup> Vid. Antioch. Hom. lxxxiii. Confer. Fragm. D. Grabe. Spicileg. tom. i. page 303.

thou askest any thing of the Lord, saying within thyself, How shall I be able to ask any thing of the Lord and receive it, seeing I have so greatly sinned against him? Do not think thus, but turn unto the Lord with all thy heart, and ask of him without doubting, and thou shalt know the mercy of the Lord, how that he will not forsake thee, but will fulfil the request of thy soul. For God is not as men, mindful of the injuries he has received; but he forgets injuries, and has compassion upon his creature. Wherefore purify thy heart from all the vices of this present world; and observe the commands I have before delivered unto thee from God; and thou shalt receive whatsoever good things thou shalt ask, and nothing shall be wanting unto thee of all thy petitions, if thou shalt ask of the Lord without doubting. But they that are not such, shall obtain none of those things which they ask. For they that are full of faith, ask all things with confidence, and receive from the Lord, because they ask without doubting. But he that doubts, shall hardly live unto God, except he repent. Wherefore purify thy heart from doubting, and put on faith, and trust in God, and thou shalt receive all that thou shalt ask. But and if thou shouldst chance to ask somewhat, and not [<sup>1</sup>immediately] receive it, yet do not, therefore, doubt, because thou hast not presently received the petition of thy soul. For it may be thou shalt not presently receive it for thy trial, or else for some sin which thou knowest not. But

---

<sup>1</sup> Add, from the Gr. both of Athanas. and Antioch. "But if thou doubttest in thy heart, thou shalt receive none of thy petitions. For those who distrust (or doubt of) God, are like the double minded, who shall obtain none of these things."

<sup>2</sup> So MS. Lamb, *Tardius accipias*; and so the Gr. *Ἐσθίουσιν λαμβάνουσιν*.

do not thou leave off to ask, 'and then thou shalt receive. Else if thou shalt cease to ask, thou must complain of thyself, and not of God, that he has not given unto thee what thou didst desire. Consider, therefore, this doubting, how cruel and pernicious it is; and how utterly it roots out many from the faith, who were very faithful and firm. For this doubting is the daughter of the devil; and deals very wickedly with the servants of God. Despise it, therefore, and thou shalt rule over it 'on every occasion. Put on a firm and powerful faith: for faith promises all things, and perfects all things. But doubting will not believe that it shall obtain any thing by all that it can do. Thou seest, therefore," says he, "how faith cometh from above, from God, and has great power. But doubting is an earthly spirit, and proceedeth from the devil, and has no strength. Do thou, therefore, keep the virtue of faith, and depart from doubting, in which is no virtue, and thou shalt live unto God. And all shall live unto God, as many as shall do these things."

#### THE TENTH COMMAND.

*Of the Sadness of the Heart, and that we must take heed not to grieve the Spirit of God that is in us.*

I. "PUT all sadness far from thee; for it is the sister of doubting and of anger." "How, Sir," said I, "is it the sister of these? For sadness, and anger, and doubting, seem to me to be very different from one another." And he answered: "'Art thou without sense, that thou dost not understand it? For sadness is the most mischievous of all

---

<sup>1</sup> Asking the petition of thy soul.

<sup>2</sup> In every thing.

<sup>3</sup> Without sense thou dost not understand it.

spirits, and the worst to the servants of God: 'it destroys the spirits of all men, and torments the holy spirit; and again it saves.' "Sir," said I, "I am very foolish, and understand not these things. I cannot apprehend how it can torment, and yet save?" "Hear," said he, "and understand. They who never sought out the truth, nor inquired concerning the majesty of God, but only believed, are involved in the affairs of the heathen. And there is another lying prophet, that destroys the minds of the servants of God; that is, of those that are doubtful, not of those that fully trust in the Lord. Now those doubtful persons come to him, as to a Divine Spirit, and inquire of him, what shall befall them. And this lying prophet, having no power in him of the Divine Spirit, answers them according to their demands; and fills their souls with promises according as they desire. Howbeit that prophet is vain, and answers vain things to those who are themselves vain. And whatsoever is asked of him by vain men, he answers them vainly. Nevertheless he speaketh some things truly. For the devil fills him with his spirit, that he may overthrow some of the righteous.

II. "Whosoever, therefore, are strong in the faith of the Lord, and have put on the truth; they are not joined to such Spirits, but depart from them. But they that are doubtful, and often repenting; like the heathens, consult them, and heap up to themselves great sin, serving idols. As many, therefore, as are such, inquire of them

<sup>1</sup> So the Lat. vers. but the Gr. of Athanasius is better: "And destroyeth man more than any other spirit."

<sup>2</sup> Questions.

<sup>3</sup> Vid. edit. Oxon. p. 70. b. Comp. 2 Cor. vii. 10.

<sup>4</sup> Lat. *Sensus*: from the Gr. *Nûs*.

upon every occasion; worship idols, and are foolish, and void of the truth. For every spirit that is given from God needs not to be asked; but, having the power of the divinity, speaks all things of itself; because He comes from above, from the power of the Spirit of God. But he that being asked speaks according to men's desires, and concerning many other affairs of this present world, understands not the things which relate unto God. For these spirits are darkened through such affairs, and corrupted, and broken. As good vines, if they are neglected, are oppressed with weeds and thorns, and at last killed by them; so are the men who believe such spirits: they fall into many actions and businesses,<sup>1</sup> and are void of sense; <sup>2</sup>and when they think of things pertaining unto God, they understand nothing at all: but if at any time they chance to hear any thing concerning the Lord, their <sup>3</sup>thoughts are upon their business. But they that have the fear of the Lord, and search out the truth concerning God, <sup>4</sup>having all their thoughts towards the Lord, apprehend whatsoever is said to them, <sup>5</sup>and forthwith understand it, because they have the fear of the Lord in them. For where the spirit of the Lord dwells, there is also <sup>6</sup>much understanding added. Wherefore join thyself to the Lord, <sup>7</sup>and thou shalt understand all things.

III. "Learn now, O unwise man! how sadness troubleth the holy spirit; and how it saves. When a man that is doubtful is engaged in any affair, and does not accomplish it by reason of his doubting,

---

<sup>1</sup> And understand nothing at all, thinking of riches. *Lat.*

<sup>2</sup> Senses.

<sup>3</sup> Gr. of Athanasius, καρδιαν ἔχοντες πρὸς Κύριον. So that the Latin should be *habentes*, not *habent*. <sup>4</sup> Gr. συνέσις πολλή.

<sup>5</sup> Gr. Πάντων νοήσις; and so the Lamb. MS. *Omnia scies*.

<sup>6</sup> Gr. ἐνέψιχον.

this sadness enters into him and grieves the holy spirit, and makes him sad. Again, anger when it overtakes any man for any business, he is greatly moved: 'And then again sadness entereth into the heart of him who was moved with anger, and he is troubled for what he hath done, and repenteth because he hath done amiss. This sadness therefore seemeth to bring salvation, because he repenteth of his evil deed. But both the other things, namely, doubting and sadness, such as before was mentioned, vex the spirit: doubting, because his work did not succeed; and sadness, because he angered the holy spirit. 'Remove, therefore, sadness from thyself; 'and afflict not the holy spirit which dwelleth in thee, lest he 'intreat God, and depart from thee. \* For the

<sup>1</sup> In the Greek of Athanasius, follows: *καὶ πῶς τι κακὸν*, "And he doth something which is ill;" which better agrees with what follows, "because he has done amiss." The text in this place being evidently corrupted, I have endeavoured to restore the true sense of it from the Greek of Athanasius, which is as follows. Πάλιν ἡ λύπη εισπνεύσεται εἰς τὴν καρδίαν τοῦ ἀνθρώπου τοῦ ἐμψυχολήσαντος, καὶ λυπῶνται ἐπὶ τῇ πράξει αὐτοῦ ὃ ἔπραξε, καὶ μετανοοῖ ὅτι πονηρὸν ἐργάσατο. Αὕτη δὲ ἡ λύπη δοκεῖ σωτηρίας ἔχειν, ὅτι τὸ πονηρὸν πράξας μετανοήσει. Ἀποστείλει δὲ τὸν πῶντων λυπῶσι, &c.

<sup>2</sup> Antioch. Hom. xxv.

<sup>3</sup> Gr. *Μὴ θάλας*. MS. Lamb. *Noli nocere*.

<sup>4</sup> Gr. *Μὴ ἐντιθέσθαι τῷ Θεῷ*. Comp. Rom. vii. 27.

\* When Hermas here saith of the holy spirit, that he intreats God; and before, that he is vexed and grieved: to prevent any mistakes in a matter of such moment, the Reader may please to observe, that he speaketh not of the Holy Ghost as He is the Spirit of God, and the Third Person in the sacred Trinity; but of the spirit given to Christians, which dwelleth in their souls and bodies, being an emanation of gift from the Spirit of God; and though not an essential part of man, yet a perfecting part of a Christian; which Hermas himself elsewhere declareth to be created in man, lib. iii. cap. v. § 6. But then that he thought this created spirit of regenerate persons to be distinct from, though a participation of, the Spirit of God, is plain from what we before read in the second section of this very Command; where he distinguisheth between the spirit given from God, and the Spirit of God. "Every spirit," says he, "that is given from God, having the power of the Divinity, speaketh all things of itself, because He cometh from above, from the power of the Spirit of God." And indeed St. Paul himself, in that remarkable place, 1 Cor. ii. 11, 12, mentioneth distinctly, *πνεῦμα τὸ ἐκ τοῦ Θεοῦ*, and *πνεῦμα τοῦ Θεοῦ*; and plainly teaches

spirit of the Lord 'which is given to dwell in the flesh, endureth no such sadness. Wherefore clothe thyself with cheerfulness, which has always favour with the Lord, and thou shalt rejoice in it. For every cheerful man does well; and relishes those things that are good, and despises 'sadness. But the sad man does always wickedly. First, he doth wickedly, 'because he grieveth the holy spirit, which is given to man being of a cheerful nature. And again he does ill, because he prays with sadness unto the Lord, and maketh not first a thankful acknowledgment unto him of former mercies; and obtains not of God what he asks. For the prayer of a sad man has not efficacy to come up to the altar of God." And I said unto him: "Sir, why has not the prayer of a sad man virtue to come up to the altar of God?" "Because," said he, "that sadness remaineth in his heart. When, therefore, a man's prayer shall be accompanied with sadness, it will not suffer his requests to ascend pure to the altar of God. For as wine when it is mingled with vinegar, has not the sweetness it had before; so sadness, being mixed with the holy spirit, suffers not a man's prayer to be the same that it would be otherwise. Wherefore cleanse thyself from sadness, which is evil, and thou shalt live unto God. And all others shall live unto God, as many as shall lay aside sadness, and put on cheerfulness."

---

that this is in God, and the other in men, although from God. Now when Hermas here speaketh of the spirit's entreating God, he expressly speaketh of the spirit which dwelleth in us, and the spirit which is given to dwell in the flesh; not of the spirit as he is in God, and consequently uncreated, and God himself: for all that is in God is such.

<sup>1</sup> Gr. Τὸ θεὸν εἰς τὴν σάρκα, αὐτὸν λύων ἐν ὑποφύῳ.

<sup>2</sup> Gr. λύων.

<sup>3</sup> So the Greek: ὁ δὲ λυσιτελεῖ ἀπὸ πάντων ποιημάτων. Πρῶτον μὲν ποιημάτων, &c.

II. I said, "How then shall a man be able to discern them?" "Consider what I am going to say concerning both kinds of 'men; and as I speak unto thee, so shalt thou prove the prophet of God, and the false prophet. And first, try the man who hath the spirit of God; because the spirit which is from above is humble, and quiet, and departs from all wickedness; and from the vain desires of the present world; and makes himself more humble than all men, and answers to none when he is asked, nor to every one singly: for the Spirit of God doth not speak to a man when he will, but when God pleases. When, therefore, a man who hath the spirit of God shall come into the church of the righteous, who hath the faith of God, and they pray unto the Lord; then the holy angel of God fills that man with the Blessed Spirit, and he speaks in the congregation as he is moved of God. Thus, therefore, is the spirit of God known, because whosoever speaketh by the spirit of God, speaketh as the Lord will.

III. "Hear now concerning the earthly spirit, which is empty and foolish, and without virtue. And first of all, the man who is supposed to have the spirit (whereas he hath it not in reality) exalteth himself, and desires to have the first seat, and is wicked, and full of words; and spends his time in pleasure, and in all manner of voluptuousness; and receives the reward of his divination;

---

the defect of this, but makes way for the more easy connexion of his discourse in that. And for this, besides the plain reason of the thing itself, we have the authority of Athanasius in that other Command; who leaves out what has been falsely inserted there; as I shall shew when I come to it, from his own words. For both these reasons, I have reduced both places to what I take to have been their true order; and shall submit it to the reader (to judge upon this advertisement) whether I had not good reason, as well as sufficient authority, so to do.

<sup>1</sup> Vessels.



which if he receives not, he does not divine." "Should the spirit of God receive reward and divine?" "It doth not become a prophet of God so to do. Thus you see the life of each of these kind of prophets. Wherefore prove that man by his life and works, who says that he hath the holy spirit: and believe the spirit which comes from God, and has power as such. But believe not the earthly and empty spirit, which is from the devil, in whom there is no faith nor virtue. Hear now the similitude which I am about to speak unto thee. Take a stone, and throw it up towards Heaven; or take a spout of water, and mount it up thitherward; and see if thou canst reach unto Heaven." "Sir," said I, "how can this be done? For neither of those things which you have mentioned, are possible to be done." And he answered: "Therefore, as these things cannot be done, so is the earthly spirit without virtue, and without effect. Understand yet farther the power which cometh from above, in this similitude. The grains of hail that drop down are exceeding small; and yet when they fall upon the head of a man, how do they cause pain to it? And again; consider the droppings of a house; how the little drops falling upon the earth, work a hollow in the stones. So in like manner the least things which come from above, and fall upon the earth, have great force. Wherefore, join thyself to this Spirit, which has power; and depart from the other, which is empty."

## THE TWELFTH COMMAND.

*Of a two-fold Desire: that the Commands of God are not impossible; and that the Devil is not to be feared by them that believe.*

I. Again he said unto me: "Remove<sup>1</sup> from thee all evil desires, and put on good and holy desires. For having put on a good desire, thou shalt hate that which is evil, and bridle it as thou wilt. But an evil desire is dreadful, and hard to be tamed. It is very horrible and wild; and by its wildness consumes men: and especially if a servant of God shall chance to fall into it, except he be very wise, he<sup>2</sup> is ruined by it. For it destroys those who have not the garment of a good desire, and<sup>3</sup> are engaged in the affairs of this present world, and delivers them unto death." \* "Sir," said I, "what are the works of an evil desire, which bring men unto death? Shew them to me, that I may depart from them." "Hear," said he, "by what works an evil desire bringeth the servants of God unto death. First of all, it is an evil desire to covet another man's wife, or for a woman to covet another's husband; as also to desire the dainties of riches, and multitude of superfluous meats, and drunkenness, and many delights.

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Antioch. Hom. lxxiv.

<sup>2</sup> MS. Lamb. *consumitur*, et Gr. Athanas. *δασυνῶται*.

<sup>3</sup> *ἐμπυρμένους τῷ αἵνῳ τούτῳ*. Gr. Athanas. Instead of *implicat eos*, the Latin vers. should be *implicatos*.

\* That the words here inserted, and removed by me into their proper place in the foregoing Command, do not belong to this discourse, the Greek of Athanasius clearly shews. In which they are all omitted, and the connexion lies as I have now represented it. Πῶτα, Κύριε, εἰς τῆς ἐκιδρυμίας τῆς πορνείας, τὰ παραδόντα τοῖς ἀσέλγους εἰς θάνατον; γυναικί μου, ἢ αὐτῷ ἀπ' αὐτῶν. "Λυσοι. Πρῶτοι πάντων ἐκιδρυμίας γυναικὸς, καὶ πολυτελείας πλούτου, καὶ ἡμερόντων πολλῶν, &c. And so the Lamb. MS. *Primum omnium concupiscere uxorem alienam*: Not. *Spiritus omnium*.

For in much delicacy there is folly; and many pleasures are needless to the servants of God. Such lusting, therefore, is evil and pernicious, which brings to death the servants of God. For all such lusting is from the devil. Whosoever, therefore, shall depart from all evil desires, shall live unto God; but they that are subject unto them shall die for ever. For this evil lusting is deadly. Do thou, therefore, put on the desire of righteousness, and being armed with the fear of the Lord resist all wicked lusting. For this fear dwelleth in good desires; and when evil coveting shall see thee armed with the fear of the Lord, and resisting it, it will fly far from thee, and not appear before thee, but be afraid of thy armour; and and thou shalt have the victory, and be crowned for it; and shalt attain unto that desire which is good, and shalt give the victory which thou hast obtained unto God, and shalt serve him in doing what thou thyself wouldst do. For if thou shalt serve good desires, and be subject to them, thou shalt be able to get the dominion over thy wicked lustings, and they shall be subject to thee as thou wilt."

III. And I said: "Sir, I would know how to serve that desire which is good?" "Hearken!" said he, "fear God, and put thy trust in him, and love truth, and righteousness, and do that which is good. If thou shalt do these things, thou shalt be an approved servant of God; and shalt serve him: and all others who shall in like manner serve a good desire shall live unto God." And when he had finished these Twelve Commands, he said unto me: "Thou hast now these Commands, walk in them; and exhort those that hear them that they repent, and that they keep their repentance pure all the remaining days of their life: and fulfil

diligently this ministry which I commit to thee, and thou shalt receive great advantage by it; and shalt find favour with all such as shall repent, and shall believe thy words. For I am with thee, and will force them to believe." And I said unto him: "Sir, these Commands are great and excellent, and able to cheer the heart of that man that shall be able to keep them. But, Sir, I cannot tell, whether they can be observed by any man?" He answered: "Thou shalt easily keep these Commands, and they shall not be hard: howbeit, if thou shalt suffer it once to enter into thy heart that they cannot be kept by any one, thou shalt not fulfil them. But now I say unto thee; if thou shalt not observe these Commands, but shalt neglect them, thou shalt not be saved, nor thy children, nor thy house: because thou hast judged that these Commands cannot be kept by man."

IV. These things he spake very angrily unto me, insomuch that he greatly affrighted me. For he changed his countenance, so that a man could not bear his anger. And when he saw me altogether troubled and confounded, he began to speak more moderately and cheerfully, saying, "O foolish, and without understanding! Unconstant, not knowing the majesty of God, how great, and wonderful he is: who created the world for man, and hath made every creature subject unto him, and given him all power, that he should be able to fulfil all these Commands. He is able," said he, "to fulfil all these Commands, who has the Lord in his heart: but they who have the Lord only in their mouths, and their heart is hardened, and they are far from the Lord; to such persons these Commands are hard and difficult. Put, therefore, ye that are empty and light in the faith, the

---

<sup>1</sup> Ut dominetur.

Lord your God in your hearts, and ye shall perceive how that nothing is more easy than these Commands, nor more pleasant, nor more gentle and holy: and turn yourselves to the Lord your God, and forsake the devil and his pleasures, because they are evil, and bitter, and impure. And fear not the devil, because he has no power over you. For I am with you, the <sup>1</sup>messenger of repentance, who have the dominion over him. The devil does indeed affright men; but his terror is vain. Wherefore fear him not, and he will flee from you."

V. And I said unto him: "Sir, hear me speak a few words unto you." He answered: "Say on." "A man indeed desires to keep the commandments of God; and there is no one but what prays unto God, that he may be able to keep his commandments. But the devil is hard, and by his power rules over the servants of God." And he said: "He cannot rule over the servants of God, <sup>2</sup>who trust in him with all their hearts. The devil may strive, but he cannot overcome them. For if ye resist him, he will flee away with confusion from you. But they that are not full in the faith, fear the devil, as if he had some great power. For the devil tries the servants of God; and if he finds them empty, he destroys them. For as a man, when he fills up vessels with good wine, and among them puts a few vessels half full, and comes to try and taste of the vessels, does not try those that are full, because he knows that they are good; but tastes those that are half full, lest they should grow sour; (for vessels half full soon grow sour, and lose the taste of wine :) so the devil comes to the servants of God to try them. They

---

<sup>1</sup> Angel.

<sup>2</sup> Gr. *ἠσυχῶντες ἐν αὐτῷ*.

<sup>3</sup> Origen. in Matt. xxiv. 42.

that are full of faith resist him stoutly, and he departs from them, because he finds no place where to enter into them: then he goes to those that are not full of faith, and because he has place of entrance, he goes into them, and does what he will with them, and they become his servants.

VI. "But I, the 'messenger of repentance, say unto you, fear not the devil: for I am sent unto you, that I may be with you, as many as shall repent with your whole heart, and that I may confirm you in the faith. <sup>1</sup>Believe, therefore, ye who by reason of your transgressions have forgot <sup>2</sup>God, and your own salvation; <sup>3</sup>and adding to your sins have made your life very heavy; that if ye shall turn to the Lord with your whole hearts, and shall serve him according to his will, he will heal you of your former sins, and ye shall have dominion over all the works of the devil. Be not then afraid in the least of his threatnings, for they are without force, as the nerves of a dead man. But hearken unto me, and fear the Lord Almighty, who is able to save and to destroy you; and keep his commands, that ye may live unto God." And I said unto him: "Sir, I am now confirmed in all the commands of the Lord whilst that you are with me; and I know that you will break all the power of the devil. And we also shall overcome him, if we shall be able, through the help of the Lord, to keep these Commands which you have delivered." "Thou shalt keep them," said he, "if thou shalt purify thy heart towards the Lord. And all they also shall keep them who shall cleanse their hearts from the vain desires of the present world, and shall live unto God."

<sup>1</sup> Angel.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. Antioch. Hom. lxxvii.

<sup>3</sup> MS. Lamb. *Qui obliiti estis Deum, et salutem vestram.*

<sup>4</sup> What follows should be corrected thus: *Et qui adicientes peccatis vestris gravatis vitam vestram.*

be received, but shalt be excluded thence. . See, therefore, that like a man in another country, thou procure no more to thyself than what is necessary and sufficient for thee ; and be ready, that when the God or Lord of this city shall drive thee out of it, thou mayst oppose his law, and go into thine own city, where thou mayst, with all cheerfulness, live according to thine own law without wrong. Take heed, therefore, ye that serve God, and have him in your hearts : work ye the works of God, being mindful both of his commands and of his promises, which he has promised ; and be assured, that he will make them good unto you, if ye shall keep his commandments. Instead, therefore, of the possessions that ye would otherwise purchase, redeem <sup>1</sup>those that are in want from their necessities, as every one is able : justify the widows ; judge the cause of the fatherless ; and spend your riches and your wealth in such works as these. For, for this end has God enriched you, that ye might fulfil these kind of services. It is much better to do this, than to buy lands or houses ; because all such things shall perish with this present time. But what ye shall do for the name of the Lord, ye shall find in your city, and shall have joy without sadness or fear. Wherefore covet not the riches of the heathen ; for they are destructive to the servants of God. <sup>2</sup>But trade with your own riches which you possess, by which ye may attain unto everlasting joy. And do not commit adultery, nor touch any other man's wife, nor desire her ; but covet that which is thy own business, and thou shalt be saved."

---

<sup>1</sup> Souls.

<sup>2</sup> *MS. Lambeth.*—*Proprias autem quas habetis agite.*

## THE SECOND SIMILITUDE.

*As the Vine is supported by the Elm, so is the rich Man helped by the Prayers of the Poor.*

As I was walking into the field, and considered the elm and the vine, and thought with myself of their fruits, an angel appeared unto me, and said unto me: "What is it that thou thinkest upon thus long within thyself;" And I said unto him: "Sir, I think of this vine and this elm, because their fruits are fair." And he said unto me: "These two trees are set for a pattern to the servants of God. And I said unto him: "Sir, I would know in what the pattern of these trees which thou mentionest, does consist." "Hearken! saith he," Seest thou this vine and this elm?" "Sir," said I, "I see them." "This vine," saith he, "is fruitful, but the elm is a tree without fruit. Nevertheless this vine, unless it were set by this elm, and supported by it, would not bear much fruit, but lying along upon the ground, would bear but ill fruit, because it did not hang upon the elm: whereas now being supported upon the elm, it bears fruit both for itself, and for that. See, therefore, how the elm gives no less, but rather more fruit, than the vine." "How, Sir," said I "does it bear more fruit than the vine? Because," said he, "the vine being supported upon the elm, gives both much and good fruit: whereas if it lay along upon the ground, it would bear but little, and that very ill too. This Similitude, therefore, is set forth to the servants of God; and it represents the rich and poor man." I answered: "Sir, make this manifest

---

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Origen. in Jos. Hom. x.



unto me." "Hear!" said he: "the rich man has wealth; howbeit towards the Lord he is poor: for he is 'taken up about his riches, and prays but little to the Lord; and the prayers which he makes are lazy and without force. When, therefore, the rich man reaches out to the poor those things which he wants, the poor man prays unto the Lord for the rich; and God grants unto the rich man all good things, because the poor man is rich in prayer; and his requests have great power with the Lord. Then the rich man ministers all things to the poor, because he perceives that he is heard by the Lord; and he the more willingly, and without doubting, affords him what he wants, and takes care that nothing be lacking to him. And the poor man gives thanks unto the Lord for the rich; because they do both their work from the Lord. With men, therefore, the elm is not thought to give any fruit; and they know not, neither understand that its company being added to the vine, the vine bears a double increase, both for itself and for the elm. Even so the poor praying unto the Lord for the rich, are heard by him; and their riches are increased, because they minister to the poor of their wealth. They are, therefore, both made partakers of each other's good works. Whosoever, therefore, shall do these things, he shall not be forsaken by the Lord, but shall be written in the book of life. Happy are they who are rich, and perceive themselves to be increased: for he that is sensible of this, will be able to minister somewhat to others."

---

<sup>1</sup> Distracted.

## THE THIRD SIMILITUDE.

*As the Green Trees in Winter cannot be distinguished from the Dry; so neither can the righteous from the Wicked in this present World.*

AGAIN he shewed me many trees whose leaves were shed; and which seemed to me to be withered, for they were all alike. And he said unto me: "Seest thou these trees?" I said: "Sir, I see that they look like dry trees." He, answering, said unto me: "These trees are like unto the men who live in this present world." I replied: "Sir, why are they like unto dried trees?" "Because," said he, "neither the righteous nor unrighteous are known from one another, but are all alike in this present world. For this world is as the winter to the righteous men, 'because they are not known, but dwell among sinners. As in the winter all the trees, having lost their leaves, are like dry trees, nor can it be discerned which are dry and which are green; so in this present world, neither the righteous, nor wicked, are discerned from each other, but they are all alike."

## THE FOURTH SIMILITUDE.

*As in Summer the living Trees are distinguished from the dry, by their Fruit and Green Leaves; so in the World to come, the Righteous shall be distinguished from the Unrighteous by their Happiness.*

AGAIN he shewed me many other trees, of which some had leaves, and others appeared dry

---

<sup>1</sup> Who are.

and withered. And he said unto me: "Seest thou these trees?" I answered: "Sir, I see them; and some are dry, and others full of leaves." "These trees," saith he, "which are green, are the righteous, who shall possess the world to come. For the world to come is the summer to the righteous; but to sinners it is the winter. When, therefore, the mercy of the Lord shall shine forth, then they who serve God shall be made manifest, and plain unto all. For as in the summer the fruit of every tree is shewn and made manifest, so also the works of the righteous shall be declared and made manifest; and they shall all be restored in that world merry and joyful. For the other<sup>1</sup> kind of men, namely, the wicked, like the trees which thou sawest dry, shall as such be found dry, and without fruit in that other world; and like dry wood shall be burnt; and it shall be made manifest that they have done evil all the time of their life; and they shall be burnt, because they have sinned, and have not repented of their sins. And also all the other nations shall be burnt, because they have not acknowledged God their Creator. Do thou, therefore, bring forth good fruit, that in the summer thy fruit may be known; and keep thyself from much business, and thou shalt not offend. For they who are involved in much business, sin much; because they are taken up with their affairs, and serve not God. And how can a man that does not serve God, ask any thing of God, and receive it? But they who serve him ask, and receive what they desire. But if a man has only one thing to follow, he may serve God; because his mind is not taken off from God, but he

---

<sup>1</sup> Nations.

mind. But trust in the Lord, that if thou dost these things, and fearest him, and abstainest from every evil work, thou shalt live unto God. If thou shalt do this, thou shalt perfect a great fast, and an acceptable one unto the Lord.

II. "Hearken unto the Similitude which I am about to propose unto thee, as to this matter. A certain man having a farm, and many servants, planted a vineyard in a certain part of his estate for his posterity: and taking a journey into a far country, chose one of his servants which he thought the most faithful and approved, and delivered the vineyard into his care, commanding him that he should stake up his vines: which if he did, and fulfilled his command, he promised to give him his liberty. Nor did he command him to do any thing more; and so went into a far country. After then that that servant had taken that charge upon him, he did whatsoever his lord commanded him: and when he had staked the vineyard, and found it to be full of weeds, he began to think with himself, saying: I have done what my lord commanded me; I will now dig this vineyard, and when it is digged it will be more beautiful; and the weeds being pulled up, it will bring forth more fruit, and not be choked by the weeds. So setting about his work, he digged it, and plucked up all the weeds that were in it; and so the vineyard became very beautiful and prosperous, not being choked with weeds. After some time the lord of the vineyard comes, and goes into the vineyard; and when he saw that it was handsomely staked, and digged, and the weeds plucked up that were in it, and the vines flourishing, he rejoiced greatly at the care of his servant: and calling his son, whom he loved, and who was to be his heir, and his friends with whom he was

he, "expound all things unto thee whatsoever I have talked with thee, or shewn unto thee. Keep the commandments of the Lord, and thou shalt be approved, and shalt be written in the number of those that keep his commandments. But if besides those things which the Lord hath commanded, thou shalt add some good thing, thou shalt purchase to thyself a greater dignity, and be in more favour with the Lord than thou shouldst otherwise have been. If, therefore, thou shalt keep the commandments of the Lord, and shalt add to them these stations, thou shalt rejoice; but especially if thou shalt keep them according to my commands." I said unto him: "Sir, whatsoever thou shalt command me, I will observe; for I know that thou wilt be with me." "I will," said he, "be with thee, who hast taken up such a resolution; and I will be with all those who purpose in like manner. This fast," saith he, "whilst thou dost also observe the commandments of the Lord, is exceeding good. Thus, therefore, shalt thou keep it. First of all, take heed to thyself, and keep thyself from every wicked<sup>1</sup> act, and from every filthy word, and from every hurtful desire; and purify thy mind from all the vanity of this present world. If thou shalt observe these things, this fast shall be right. Thus, therefore, do. Having performed what is before written, that day on which thou fastest thou shalt taste nothing at all but <sup>2</sup>bread and water; <sup>3</sup>and computing the quantity of food which thou art wont to eat upon other days, thou shalt <sup>4</sup>lay aside the expense which thou shouldst have made that day, and give it unto the widow, the fatherless, and the poor. And

<sup>1</sup> Shameful, or upbraiding.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. Not. Coteler. ii. p. 74. A. B. C.

<sup>3</sup> Vid. Antioch. Hom. vii.

thus<sup>1</sup> thou shalt perfect the humiliation of thy soul, that he who receives of it may satisfy his soul, and his prayer come up to the Lord God for thee. If, therefore, thou shalt thus accomplish thy fast, as I command thee, thy sacrifice shall be acceptable unto the Lord, and thy fast shall be written in his book. This station, thus performed, is good, and pleasing, and acceptable unto the Lord. These things, if thou shalt observe with thy children, and with all thy house, thou shalt be happy. And whosoever when they hear these things shall do them, they also shall be happy; and whatsoever they shall ask of the Lord they shall receive it."

IV. And I prayed him that he would expound unto me the Similitude of the farm, and the lord, and of the vineyard, and of the servant that had staked the vineyard; and of the weeds that were plucked out of the vineyard; and of his son, and his friends which he took into counsel with him. For I understood that that was a Similitude. He said unto me, "Thou art very bold in asking: for thou oughtest not to ask any thing; because if it be fitting to shew it unto thee, it shall be shewed unto thee." I answered him: "Sir, whatsoever thou shalt shew me, without explaining it unto me, I shall in vain see it if I do not understand what it is. And if thou shalt propose any Similitudes, and not expound them, I shall in vain hear them." He answered me again, saying: "Whosoever is the servant of God, and has the Lord in his heart, he desires understanding of him, and receives it; and he explains every Similitude, and understands the words of the Lord which need an inquiry. But they that are lazy and slow to pray, doubt to seek from the Lord; although the Lord be of such an

---

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Not. Cotelier. ut supra.

extraordinary goodness, that without ceasing he giveth all things to them that ask of him. Thou, therefore, who art strengthened by that venerable messenger; and hast received such a powerful gift of prayer, seeing thou art not slothful, why dost thou not now ask understanding of the Lord, and receive it?" I said unto him: "Seeing I have thee present, it is necessary that I should seek it of thee, and ask thee; for thou shewest all things unto me, and speakest to me when thou art present. But if I should see or hear these things when thou wert not present, I would then ask the Lord that he would shew them unto me."

V. And he replied: "I said a little before that thou wert subtle and bold, in that thou askest the meaning of these Similitudes. But because thou still persistest, I will unfold to thee this parable which thou desirest, that thou mayst make it known unto all men. Hear, therefore," said he, "and understand. The farm before mentioned denotes the whole earth. The lord of the farm is He who created and finished all things, and gave virtue unto them. His Son is the Holy Spirit: the servant is the Son of God: the vineyard is the people whom he saves. The stakes are the 'messengers which are set over them by the Lord, to support his people. The weeds that are plucked up out of the vineyard, are the sins which the servants of God had committed. The food which he sent him from his supper, are the commands which he gave to his people by his son. The friends whom he called to counsel with him, are the holy angels whom he first created. The absence of the master of the household, is the time that remains unto his coming." I said unto him:

---

<sup>1</sup> Angels.

spirit. Seeing, therefore, the body at all times obeyed the holy spirit, and laboured rightly and chastly with him, nor faltered at any time—that body, being wearied, conversed indeed servilely—but being mightily approved to God with the holy spirit, was accepted by him. For such a stout course pleased God, because he was not defiled in the earth, keeping the holy spirit. He called, therefore, to counsel, his Son and the good angels, that there might be some place of standing given to this body, which had served the holy spirit without blame; lest it should seem to have lost the reward of its service: for every pure body shall receive its reward, that is found without spot, in which the holy spirit has been appointed to dwell. And thus you have now the exposition of this parable also.”

VII. “Sir,” said I, “I now understand your meaning, since I have heard this exposition.” “Hearken farther,” said he: “keep this thy body clean and pure, that the spirit which shall dwell in it may bear witness unto it, and be judged to have been with thee. Also take heed that it be not instilled into thy mind, that this body perishes, and thou abuse it to any lust. For if thou shalt defile thy body, thou shalt also at the same time defile the holy spirit; and if thou shalt defile<sup>1</sup> the holy spirit, thou shalt not live.” And I said: “What if through ignorance this should have been already committed, before a man heard these words; how can he attain unto salvation, who has thus defiled his body?” He replied: “As for men’s former actions, which through ignorance they have committed, God only can afford a

---

<sup>1</sup> Thy body, according to some copies.



remedy unto them; for, all power belongeth unto him. But now guard thyself; and seeing God is almighty and merciful, he will grant a remedy to what thou hast formerly done amiss, if, for the time to come, thou shalt not defile thy body and spirit: for they are companions together, and the one cannot be defiled, but the other will be so too. Keep, therefore, both of them pure, and thou shalt live unto God.

#### THE SIXTH SIMILITUDE.

*Of two sorts of Voluptuous Men, and of their Death, Defection, and of the Continuance of their Pains.*

I. As I was sitting at home, and praising God for all the things which I had seen; and was thinking concerning the Commands, that they were exceeding good, and great, and honest, and pleasant; and such as were able to bring a man to salvation; I said thus within myself. "I shall be happy if I shall walk according to these commands; and whosoever shall walk in them shall live unto God." Whilst I was speaking on this wise within myself, I saw him whom I had before been wont to see, sitting by me; and he spake thus unto me: "What doubtest thou concerning my commands, which I have delivered unto thee? They are good, doubt not; but trust in the Lord, and thou shalt walk in them. For I will give thee strength<sup>1</sup> to fulfil them. These commands are profitable to those who shall repent of those sins which they have formerly committed; if, for the time to come, they shall not continue in them. Whosoever, therefore, ye be that repent, cast away from you

---

<sup>1</sup> In them.

the naughtiness of the present world : and put on all virtue and righteousness ; and so shall ye be able to keep these commands, and not sin from henceforth any more. For if ye shall keep yourselves from sin for the time to come, ye shall cut off a great deal of your former sins. Walk in my commands, and ye shall live unto God. These things have I spoken unto you." And when he had said this, he added : " Let us go into the field, and I will shew thee shepherds of sheep." I replied, " Sir, let us go." And we came into a certain field, and there he shewed me a young shepherd, 'finely arrayed, with his garments of a purple colour. And he fed large flocks ; and his sheep were full of pleasure, and in much delight and cheerfulness ; and they, skipping, ran here and there. And the shepherd took very great satisfaction in his flock ; and the countenance of that shepherd was cheerful, running up and down among his flock."

II. Then the angel said unto me : " Seest thou this shepherd ?" I answered, " Sir, I see him." He said unto me : " this is the <sup>1</sup>messenger of delight and pleasure. He, therefore, corrupts the minds of the servants of God, and turns them from the truth, delighting them with many pleasures, and they perish. For they forget the commands of the living God, and live in luxury and in vain pleasures ; and are corrupted by this evil angel, some of them even unto death ; and others to <sup>2</sup>a falling-away." I replied : " I understand not what you mean, by saying unto death, and to a falling-away." " Hear!" says he : " all those sheep which thou sawest exceedingly <sup>3</sup>joyful, are such

---

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Annot. Coteler. in loc.

<sup>2</sup> Ad defectionem.—*Lat.*

<sup>3</sup> Angel.

<sup>4</sup> Exsultantia.—*Lat.*

because they were greatly tormented, nor had they any rest afforded them. And I said unto the shepherd that was with me: "Sir, who is this cruel and implacable shepherd, who is moved with no compassion towards these sheep?" He answered: "This 'shepherd is, indeed, one of the 'holy angels; but is appointed for the punishment of sinners. To him, therefore, are delivered those who have erred from God, and served the lusts and pleasures of this world. For this cause he punishes them, every one according to their deserts, with cruel and various kind of pains." "Sir," said I, "I would know, what kind of pains they are which every one undergoes?" "Hearken!" said he, "the several pains and torments are those which men every day undergo in their present lives. For some suffer losses; others, poverty; others, divers sicknesses. Some are unsettled; others suffer injuries from those that are unworthy; others fall under many other trials and inconveniences. For many, with an unsettled design, aim at many things, and it profiteth them not; and they say that they have not success in their undertakings. 'They do not call to their mind what they have done amiss, and they complain of the Lord. When, therefore, they shall have undergone all kind of vexation and inconvenience, then they are delivered over to me for good instruction, and are confirmed in the faith of the Lord, and serve the Lord all the rest of their days, with a pure mind. And when they begin to repent of their sins, then they call to mind

---

<sup>1</sup> Vid. Origen. in Psal. xxxvii. Hom. i.

<sup>2</sup> Righteous. In Gr. Athanas. *ἐν τῶν Ἀγγέλων τῶν δικαίων ἔσσι*, &c. Et sic MS. Lamb.

<sup>3</sup> MS. Lamb. Succurrit iis.—Gr. Athanas. *ὁ βοηθῶν αὐτοῖς*.

how that the time of worldly enjoyments is but short; but that of pain and torments, a great deal more."

V. I replied: "Sir, forasmuch as I do not understand 'at all these times of pleasure and pain, I intreat you that you would explain yourself more clearly concerning them." He answered me, saying: "thy foolishness still sticks unto thee. Shouldst thou not rather purify thy mind, and serve God? Take heed, lest when thy time is fulfilled, thou be found still unwise. Hear then, as thou desirest, that thou mayst the more easily understand. He that gives himself up one day to his pleasures and delights, and does whatsoever his soul desires, is full of great folly, nor understands what he does, but the day following forgets what he did the day before. For delight and worldly pleasure are not kept in memory, by reason of the folly that is rooted in them. But when pain and torment befall a man a day, he is in effect troubled the whole year after; because his punishment continues firm in his memory. Wherefore he remembers it with sorrow the whole year; and then calls to mind his vain pleasure and delight, and perceives that for the sake of that he was punished. Whosoever, therefore, have delivered themselves over to such pleasures, are thus punished; because that when they had life, they rendered themselves liable to death." I said unto him: "Sir, what pleasures are hurtful?" He answered: "That is pleasure to every man which he does willingly. For the angry man, gratifying his passion, perceives pleasure in it; and so the adulterer, and drunkard; the slanderer, and liar;

"Hearken!" said he, "thou art, indeed, guilty of many sins, yet not so many that thou shouldst be delivered to this 'messenger: but thy house hath committed many sins and offences; and, therefore, that good 'messenger, being grieved at their doings, commanded that for some time thou shouldst suffer affliction, that they may both repent of what they have done, and may wash themselves from all the lusts of this present world. When, therefore, they shall have repented, and be purified, then that messenger which is appointed over thy punishment shall depart from thee." I said unto him: "Sir, if they have behaved themselves so as to anger that good angel, yet what have I done?" He answered: "They cannot otherwise be afflicted, unless thou, who art the head of the family, suffer. For whatsoever thou shalt suffer, they must needs feel it: but as long as thou shalt stand well established, they cannot experience any vexation." I replied: "But, Sir, behold, they also now repent with all their hearts." "I know," says he, "that they repent with all their hearts; but dost thou, therefore, think that their offences, who repent, are immediately blotted out? No, they are not presently; but he that repents must afflict his soul, and shew himself humble in all his affairs, and undergo many and divers vexations. And when he shall have suffered all things that were appointed for him, then, perhaps, He that made him, and formed all things besides, will be moved with compassion towards him, and afford him some remedy; and especially if he shall perceive his heart, who repents, to be pure from every evil work. But at present it is expedient for thee, and for thy house, to be grieved; and it is needful that thou shouldst endure much vexation, as the angel of the Lord who committed thee unto

them, he laid aside his hook, and the tree continued entire, as I had before seen it. At which I wondered, and mused within myself. Then that shepherd said unto me: "Forbear to wonder that that tree continues whole, notwithstanding so many boughs have been cut off from it: but stay a little, for now it shall be shewn thee what that angel means, who gave those rods to the people." So he again demanded the rods of them; and in the same order that every one had received them, was he called to him, and restored his rod; which when he had received, he examined them. From some he received them dry and rotten, and as it were 'touched with the moth: those he commanded to be separated from the rest, and placed by themselves. Others gave him their rods dry, indeed, but not touched with the moth; these also he ordered to be set by themselves. Others gave in their rods half dry: these also were set apart. Others gave in their rods half dry, and cleft; these too were set by themselves. \*Others brought in their rods, one half dry and the other green; and these were in like manner placed by themselves. Others delivered up their rods, two parts green, and the third dry; and they too were set apart. Others brought their rods two parts dry, and the third green; and were also placed by themselves. Others delivered up their rods less dry (for there was but a very little, to wit, their tops dry), but they had clefts; and these were set in like manner by themselves. In the rods of others there was but a little green, and the rest dry; and these were

---

<sup>1</sup> Worm eaten.

<sup>2</sup> By reason of the repeated words *others* and *cleft*, those have been omitted, *Whose rods were green, but cleft*, who are expressly mentioned, § v. and vii. and therefore must likewise have been named here.

set aside by themselves. Others came, and brought their rods green as they had received them, and the greatest part of the people brought their rods thus; and the messenger greatly rejoiced at these, and they also were put apart by themselves. Others brought their rods not only green, but full of branches; and these were set aside, being also received by the angel with great joy. Others brought their rods green with branches, and those also some fruit upon them. They who had such rods, were very cheerful; and the angel himself took great joy at them; nor was the shepherd that stood with me less pleased with them.

II. Then the angel of the Lord commanded crowns to be brought: and the crowns were brought, made of palms: and the angel crowned those men in whose rods he found the young branches with fruit; and commanded them to go into the tower. He also sent those into the tower, in whose rods he found branches without fruit, giving a seal unto them. For they had the same garment, that is, one white as snow; with which he bade them go into the tower. And so he did to those who returned their rods green as they received them; giving them a white garment, and so sent them away to go into the tower. Having done this, he said to the shepherd that was with me: "I go my way; but do thou send these within the walls, every one into the place in which he has deserved to dwell; examining first their rods, but examine them diligently, that no one deceive thee. But and if any one shall escape thee, I will try them upon the altar." Having said this to the shepherd, he departed. After he was gone, the shepherd said unto me: "Let us take the rods from them all, and plant them; if perchance they may grow green again." I said unto him: "Sir,

how can those dry rods ever grow green again?" He answered me: "That tree is a willow, and always loves to live. If, therefore, these rods shall be planted, and receive a little moisture, many of them will recover themselves. Wherefore I will try, and will pour water upon them; and if any of them can live, I will rejoice with him: but if not, at least by this means I shall be found not to have neglected my part." Then he commanded me to call them; and they all came unto him, every one in the rank in which he stood, and gave him their rods; which having received, he planted every one of them in their several orders. And after he had planted them all, he poured much water upon them, insomuch that they were covered with water, and did not appear above it. Then when he had watered them, he said unto me: "Let us depart, and after a little time we will return and visit them. For he who created this tree, would have all those live that received rods from it. And I hope, now that these rods are thus watered, many of them, receiving in the moisture, will recover."

III. I said unto him: "Sir, tell me what this tree denotes? for I am greatly astonished, that after so many branches have been cut off, it seems still to be whole; nor does there any thing the less of it appear to remain, which greatly amazes me." He answered: "Hearken! This great tree which covers the plains and the mountains, and all the earth, is the law of God, published throughout the whole world. Now <sup>2</sup>this law is the Son of God, who is preached to all the ends of the earth. The people that stand under its shadow, are those which have heard his preaching, and believed. The

---

<sup>1</sup> Moved. <sup>2</sup> MS. Lamb, *Hæc autem lex filius Dei est, prædicatus, &c.*



great and venerable angel which you saw, was Michael, who has the power over this people, and governs them. For he has planted the law in the hearts of those who have believed: and, therefore, he visits them to whom he has given the law, to see if they have kept it. And he examines every one's rod; and of those, many that are weakened: for those rods are the law of the Lord. Then he discerns all those who have not kept the law, knowing the place of every one of them." I said unto him: "Sir, why did he send away some to the tower, and left others here to you?" He replied: "Those who have transgressed the law which they received from him, are left in my power, that they may repent of their sins: but they who fulfilled the law and kept it, are under his power." "But who then," said I, "are those who went into the tower crowned?" He replied: "All such as having striven with the devil, have overcome him, are crowned: and they are those who have suffered hard things that they might keep the law. But they who gave up their rods green, and with young branches, but without fruit, have, indeed, endured trouble for the same law, but have not suffered death; neither have they denied their holy law. They who have delivered up their rods green as they received them, are those who were modest and just, and have lived with a very pure mind, and kept the commandments of God. The rest thou shalt know, when I shall have considered those rods which I have planted and watered."

IV. After a few days we returned; and in the same place stood that glorious angel, and I stood by him. Then he said unto me: "Gird thyself

---

<sup>1</sup> Satisfied.

with a 'towel, and serve me." And I girded myself with a clean towel, which was made of coarse cloth. And when he saw me girded, and ready to minister unto him, he said: " Call those men whose rods have been planted, every one in his order as they gave them." And he brought me into the field; and I called them all, and they all stood ready in their several ranks. Then he said unto them: " Let every one pluck up his rod, and bring it unto me." And first they delivered theirs, whose rods had been dry and rotten. And those whose rods still continued so, he commanded to stand apart. Then they came whose rods had been dry but not rotten. Some of these delivered in their rods green; others dry and rotten, as if they had been 'touched by the moth. Those who gave them up green, he commanded to stand apart: but those whose rods were dry and rotten, he caused to stand with the first sort. Then came they whose rods had been half dry, and cleft: many of these gave up their rods green, and uncleft. Others delivered them up green with branches, and fruit upon the branches, like unto theirs who went crowned into the tower. Others delivered them up dry, but not rotten: and some gave them as they were before, half dry, and cleft. Every one of these he ordered to stand apart; some by themselves, others in their respective ranks.

V. Then came they whose rods had been green, but cleft. These delivered their rods altogether green, and stood in their own order. And the shepherd rejoiced at these, because they were all changed, and free from their clefts. Then they gave in their rods, who had them half green

---

<sup>1</sup> Sebano. Vid. edit. Oxon. p. 129. not. d.

<sup>2</sup> Worm-eaten.

repentance. But for those whose deceit and wickedness he beheld, and perceived that they would not truly return unto him; to them he denied any return unto repentance, lest they should again blaspheme his law with wicked words." I said unto him: "Now, Sir, make known unto me, what is the place of every one of those who have given up their rods, and what their 'portion; that when they who have not kept their seal entire, but have wasted the seal which they received, shall hear and believe these things, they may acknowledge their evil deeds and repent; and, receiving again their seal from you, may give glory to God, that he was moved with compassion towards them, and sent you to renew their spirits." "Hearken!" said he: "they whose rods have been found dry and rotten, and as it were <sup>1</sup>touched with the moth; are the deserters and betrayers of the Church; who, with the rest of their crimes, have also blasphemed the Lord, and denied his name which had been called upon them. Therefore all these are dead unto God; and thou seest that none of them have repented, although they have heard my commands which thou hast delivered unto them. From these men, therefore, life is far distant. They also who have delivered up their rods dry, but not rotten, have not been far from them: for they have been counterfeits, and brought in evil doctrines; and have perverted the servants of God; but especially those who had sinned, not suffering them to return unto repentance, but keeping them back by their false doctrines. These, therefore, have hope; and thou seest that many of them have repented, since the time that thou hast

---

<sup>1</sup> Seat.<sup>2</sup> Worm-eaten.

and shall lose his life. For the life of those who keep the commandments of the Lord, consists in doing what they are commanded; not in principality, or in any other dignity. For by forbearance and humility of mind, men shall attain unto life; but by seditions and contempt of the law, they shall purchase death unto themselves.

VIII. "They who in their rods had one half dry and the other green, are those who are engaged in many affairs of the world, and are not joined to the saints. For which cause half of them liveth, and half is dead. Wherefore many of these, since the time that they have heard my commands, have repented, and begun to dwell in the tower. But some of them have wholly fallen away; to these there is no more place for repentance. For by reason of their present interests, they have blasphemed and denied God; and for this wickedness they have lost life. And of these many are still in doubt: these may yet return; and if they shall quickly repent, they shall have a place in the tower; but if they shall be more slow, they shall dwell within the walls: but if they shall not repent, they shall die. As for those who had two parts of their rods green, and the third dry, they have, by manifold ways, denied the Lord. Of these many have repented, and found a place in the tower; and many have altogether departed from God. These have utterly lost life. And some, being in a doubtful state, have raised up dissensions: these may yet return, if they shall suddenly repent, and not continue in their lusts; but if they shall continue in their evil doing, they shall die.

IX. "They who gave in their rods two parts dry,

---

<sup>1</sup> Lamb. MS. *quamplurimis generibus inficiati*.

words, repented forthwith; and began to dwell in the tower. Nevertheless, some grew doubtful, and others to their doubtful minds added dissensions. To these, therefore, there is still hope of return, because they were always good; but they shall hardly be moved. As for those, lastly, who gave in their rods dry, their tops only excepted, which alone were green: they are such as have believed, indeed, in God, but have lived in wickedness; yet without departing from God, having always willingly borne the name of the lord, and readily received into their houses the servants of God. Wherefore hearing these things, they returned, and without delay repented, and lived in all righteousness. And some of them suffered death; others readily underwent many trials, being mindful of their evil doings."

XI. And when he had ended his explications of all the rods, he said unto me: "Go, and say unto all men, that they repent, and they shall live unto God: because the Lord being moved with great clemency hath sent me to preach repentance unto all, even unto those who, by reason of their evil doings, deserve not to attain unto salvation. But the Lord will be patient, and keep the invitation that was made by his Son." I said unto him: "Sir, I hope that all, when they shall hear these things, will repent. For I trust that every one, acknowledging his crimes, and taking up the fear of the Lord, will return unto repentance." He said unto me: "Whosoever shall repent with all their hearts, and cleanse themselves from all the evils that I have beforementioned, and not add any thing more to their sins, shall receive from the Lord the cure of their former iniquities, if they shall not make any doubt of these Commands, and shall live unto God. But they that

great plain, and about it twelve mountains in different figures. The first was black as soot. The second was smooth, without herbs. The third was full of thorns and thistles. The fourth had herbs half dried; of which the upper part was green, but that next the root was dry; and some of the herbs, when the sun grew hot, were dry. The fifth mountain was very rugged, but yet had green herbs. The sixth mountain was full of clefts, some lesser, and some greater; and in those clefts grew grass, not flourishing, but which seemed to be withering. The seventh mountain had delightful pasture, and was wholly fruitful; and all kinds of cattle, and of the birds of heaven, fed upon it; and the more they fed of it, the more and better did the grass grow. The eighth mountain was full of fountains, and from those fountains were watered all kinds of the creatures of God. The ninth mountain had no water at all, but was wholly destitute of it; and nourished deadly serpents, and destructive to men. The tenth mountain was full of tall trees, and altogether shady; and under the shade of them lay cattle resting and chewing the cud. The eleventh mountain was full of the thickest trees; and those trees seemed to be loaded with several sorts of fruits, that whosoever saw them could not choose but desire to eat of their fruit. The twelfth mountain was altogether white, and of a most pleasant aspect; and itself gave a most excellent beauty to itself.

II. In the middle of the <sup>1</sup>plain he shewed me a huge white rock, which rose out of the plain; and the rock was higher than those mountains, and was square, so that it seemed capable of supporting

---

<sup>1</sup> Origen. Hom. iii. in Ezech.

looked up, and behold I saw six tall and venerable men coming; their countenances were all alike: and they called a certain multitude of men; and they who came at their call were also tall and stout. And those six commanded them to build a certain tower over that gate. And immediately there began to be a great noise of those men running here and there about the gate, who were come together to build the tower. But those virgins which stood about the gate perceived that the building of the tower was to be hastened by them. And they stretched out their hands, as if they were to receive somewhat from them to do. Then those six men commanded, that they should lift up stones out of a certain deep place, and prepare them for the building of the tower. And there were lifted up ten white stones, square, and not cut round. Then those six men called the virgins to them, and commanded them to carry all the stones that were to be put into the building; and having carried them through the gate, to deliver them to those that were about to build that tower. Immediately the virgins began, all of them together, to lift up those stones that were before taken out of the deep.

IV. And they also who stood about the gate did carry stones in such a manner, that those stones which seemed to be the strongest were laid at the corners, the rest were put into the sides: and thus they carried all the stones, and, bringing them through the gate, delivered them to the builders, as they had been commanded; who receiving them at their hands, built with them. But this building was made upon that great rock, and over

---

<sup>1</sup> So Cotelerius in loc.

the gate; and by these the whole tower was supported. But the building of the ten stones filled the whole gate, which began to be made for the foundation of that tower. After those ten stones, did five and twenty others <sup>1</sup>rise up out of the deep; and these were placed in the building of the same tower, being lifted up by those virgins, as the others had been before. After these, did five and thirty others <sup>1</sup>rise up; and these were also, in like manner, fitted into the same work. Then forty other stones were brought up; and all these were added unto the building of that tower. So there began to be four ranks in the foundation of that tower; and the stones ceased to <sup>1</sup>rise out of the deep; and they also which built rested a little. Again, those six men commanded the multitude, that they should bring stones out of those twelve mountains to the building of the same tower. So they cut out of all the mountains stones of divers colours, and brought them, and gave them to the virgins; which when they had received, they carried them, and delivered them into the building of the tower: in which when they were built, they became white, and different from what they were before; for they were all alike, and did change their former colours. And some were reached up by the men themselves, which, when they came into the building, continued such as they were put in. These neither became white, nor different from what they were before; because they were not carried by the virgins through the gate. Wherefore these stones were disagreeable in the building; which when those six men perceived, they commanded them to be removed, and put

---

<sup>1</sup> MS. Lamb. *Ascenderunt.*



again in the place from which they were brought. And they said to those who brought those stones: "Do not ye reach up to us any stones for this building, but lay them down by the tower, that these virgins may carry them and reach them to us. For unless they shall be carried by these virgins through this gate, they cannot change their colours: therefore do not labour in vain."

V. So the building that day was done, howbeit the tower was not finished; for it was afterwards to be built; therefore now also there was some delay made of it. And these six men commanded those that built to depart, and, as it were, to rest for some time; but they ordered those virgins that they should not depart from the tower. Now they seemed to me to be left for the guarding of it. When all were departed, I said unto that shepherd: "Sir, why is not the building of the tower finished?"—"Because it cannot," said he, "be finished until its Lord comes and approves of the building; that if he shall find any stones in it that are not good, they may be changed; for this tower is built according to his will."—"Sir," said I, "I would know, what the building of this tower signifies; as also, I would be informed concerning this rock and this gate, and concerning the mountains and the virgins, and the stones that did rise out of the deep, and were not cut, but put into the building just as they came forth; and why the ten stones were first laid in the foundation; then the twenty-five; then thirty-five; then forty? Also concerning those stones that were put into the building, and again taken out, and carried back into their place? Fulfil, I pray, the desire of my soul as to all these things, and manifest all unto me." And he said unto me: "If thou shalt not be dull, thou shalt know all, and shalt see all the

were laid aside; but he forbad them to bring any from the mountains, and commanded that they should take them out of a certain field that was near: so they digged in that field, and found many bright square stones, and some also that were round. Howbeit, all that were found in that field were taken and carried through the gate by those virgins; and those of them that were square were fitted and put into the places of those that were pulled out: but the round ones were not put into the building, because they were hard, and it would have required too much time to cut them; but they were placed about the tower, as if they should hereafter be cut square, and put into the building; for they were very white.

VII. When he who was chief in dignity, and Lord of the whole tower, saw this, he called to him the shepherd that was with me, and gave him the stones that were rejected and laid about the tower, and said unto him: "Cleanse these stones with all care, and fit them into the building of the tower, that they may agree with the rest; but those that will not suit with the rest, cast away afar off from the tower. When he had thus commanded him, he departed, with all those that came with him to the tower: but those virgins still stood about the tower to keep it. And I said unto that shepherd: "How can these stones, seeing they have been rejected, return into the building of this tower?" He replied, "I will cut off the greatest part from these stones, and will add them to the building, and they will agree with the rest." And I said: "Sir, how will they be able to fill the same place, when they shall be so much cut away?" He answered: "They that shall be found too little shall be put into the middle of

the building, and the greater shall be placed without, and keep them in." When he had said thus unto me, he added: "Let us go, and after three days we will return, and I will put these stones, being cleansed, into the tower. For all these that are about the tower must be cleansed, lest the master of the house chance to come upon the sudden, and find those which are about the tower unclean, and be so exasperated that these stones should never be put into the building of this tower, and I shall be looked upon to have been <sup>1</sup>unmindful of my master's commands. When therefore we came, after three days, to the tower, he said unto me: "Let us examine all these stones, and let us see which of them may go into the building." I answered: "Sir, let us see."

VIII. And first of all we began to consider those which had been black; for they were found just such as they were when they were pulled out of the tower: wherefore he commanded them to be removed from the tower, and put by themselves. Then he examined those which had been rough; and commanded many of those to be cut round, and to be fitted by the virgins into the building of the tower: so they took them, and fitted them into the middle of the building; and he commanded the rest to be laid by with the black ones, for they also were become black. Next he considered those which were full of cracks; and many of those also he ordered to be pared away, and so to be added to the rest of the building, by the same virgins: these were placed without, because they were found entire; but the residue, through the multitude of their cracks,

---

<sup>1</sup> MS. Lamb. *Ita exasperetur, ut hi lapides.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. Lamb. *Negligens patris familias.*

could not be reformed, and therefore were cast away from the building of the tower. Then he considered those that had been maimed; many of these had cracks, and were become black, others had large clefts: these he commanded to be placed with those that were rejected; but the rest, being cleansed and reformed, he commanded to be put into the building. These, therefore, those virgins took up, and fitted into the middle of the building, because they were but weak. After these, he examined those which were found half white and half black; and many of those were now black: these also he ordered to be laid among those that were cast away. The rest were found altogether white; those were taken up by the virgins, and fitted into the same tower: and these were put in the outside, because they were found entire; that so they might keep in those that were placed in the middle, for nothing was cut off from them. Next he looked upon those which had been hard and sharp; but few of these were made use of, because they could not be cut, for they were found very hard: but the rest were formed, and fitted by the virgins into the middle of the building, because they were more weak. Then he considered those which had spots; of these a few were found black, and these were carried to their fellows. The rest were white and intire; and they were fitted by the virgins into the building, and placed in the outside, by reason of their strength.

IX. After this, he came to consider those stones which were white and round; and he said unto me: "What shall we do with these stones?" I answered: "Sir, I cannot tell." He replied:

---

<sup>1</sup> Vid. MS. Lamb. edit. Oxon. p. 187.

<sup>2</sup> MS. Lamb. *Fuerant*.

been in love with the building : for it seemed to be all but one stone, nor did a joint any where appear ; but it looked as if it had all been cut out of one rock.

X. And when I diligently considered what a tower it was, I was extremely pleased ; and he said unto me : " Bring hither some lime and little shells, that I may fill up the 'spaces of those stones that were taken out of the building, and put in again ; for all things about the tower must be made even." And I did as he commanded me, and brought them unto him : and he said unto me ; " Be ready to help me, and this work will quickly be finished." He therefore filled up the spaces of those stones, and commanded the place about the tower to be cleansed. Then those virgins took besoms, and cleansed all the place around, and took away all the rubbish, and threw on water ; which being done, the place became delightful, and the tower beauteous. Then he said unto me : " All is now clean ; if the Lord should come to finish the tower, he will find nothing whereby to complain of us." When he had said this, he would have departed ; but I laid hold on his bag, and began to entreat him, for the Lord's sake, that he would explain to me all things that he had shewn me. He said unto me : " I have at present a little business ; but I will suddenly explain all things unto thee. Tarry here for me till I come." I said unto him : " Sir, what shall I do here alone ?" He answered : " Thou art not alone, seeing all these virgins are with thee." I said : " Sir, deliver me then unto them." Then he called them, and said unto them : " I commend

*this man unto you till I shall come."* So I remained with those virgins. Now they were cheerful and courteous unto me; especially the four, which seemed to be the chiefest among them.

XI. Then those virgins said unto me: "That shepherd will not return hither to day." I said unto them: "What then shall I do?" They answered: "Tarry for him till the evening, if perhaps he may come and speak with thee; but if not, yet thou shalt continue with us till he does come." I said unto them; "I will tarry for him till evening; but if he comes not by that time, I will go home, and return hither again the next morning." They answered me: "Thou art delivered unto us; thou mayst not depart from us." I said: "Where shall I tarry?" They replied: "Thou shalt sleep with us as a brother, not as a husband: for thou art our brother, and we are ready from henceforth to dwell with thee; for thou art very dear to us." Howbeit I was ashamed to continue with them. But she that seemed to be the chiefest amongst them embraced me, and began to kiss me. And the rest, when they saw that I was kissed by her, began also to kiss me as a brother; and led me about the tower, and played with me. Some of them also sung psalms, others made up the chorus with them. But I walked about the tower with them, rejoicing silently, and seeming to myself to be grown young again. When the evening came on, I would forthwith have gone home, but they withheld me, and suffered me not to depart. Wherefore I continued with them that night near the same tower. So they spread their linen garments upon the ground, and placed me in the middle; nor did they any thing else, only they prayed. I also prayed with them without ceasing, no less than they; who, when they saw me pray

in that manner, rejoiced greatly; and I continued there with them till the next day. And when we had worshipped God, then the shepherd came and said unto them: "You have done no injury to this man?" They answered: "Ask him." I said unto him: "Sir, I have received a great deal of satisfaction in that I have remained with them." And he said unto me: "How didst thou sup?" I answered: "Sir, I feasted the whole night upon the words of the Lord. "They received thee well then," said he. I said: "Sir, very well." He answered: "Wilt thou now learn what thou didst desire?" I replied: "Sir, I will; and, first, I pray thee that thou wouldst shew me all things in the order that I asked them." He answered: "I will do all as thou wouldst have me, nor will I hide any thing from thee."

XII. "First of all, Sir," said I, "tell me what this rock and this gate denote?"—"Hearken," said he; "This rock and this gate are the Son of God." I replied: "Sir, how can that be, seeing the rock is old, but the gate new?"—"Hear," said he, "O foolish man! and understand. The Son of God is, indeed, more ancient than any creature; insomuch that he was in council with his Father at the creation of <sup>a</sup> all things. But the gate is, therefore, new, because he appeared in the last days, at the fulness of time; that they who shall attain unto salvation, may by it enter into the kingdom of God. You have seen," said he, "those stones which were carried through the gate, how they were placed in the building of the tower; but that those which were not carried through the gate, were sent away into their own

---

<sup>a</sup> *Res ut*—Lat.

<sup>b</sup> The creatures.

to take up the name of the Son of God, unless thou shalt also receive their garment from them. For these virgins are the powers of the Son of God. So shall a man in vain bear his name, unless he shall also be endued with his powers." And he said unto me: "Sawest thou those stones that were cast away? They bore, indeed, the name, but put not on their garment." I said, "Sir, what is their garment?"—"Their very names," said he, "are their garment. Therefore whosoever beareth the name of the Son of God, ought to bear their names also; for the Son of God also himself beareth their names. As for those stones," continued he, "which being delivered by their hands, thou sawest remain in the building, they were clothed with their power; for which cause thou seest the whole tower of the same <sup>a</sup>colour with the rock, and made, as it were, of one stone. So also those who have believed in God by his Son, have put on this spirit. Behold there shall be one spirit, and one body, and one colour of their garments: and all they shall attain this who shall bear the names of these virgins." And I said, "Sir, why then were those stones cast away which were rejected; seeing they also were carried through the gate, and delivered by the hands of these virgins into the building of this tower?"—"Seeing," said he, "thou takest care to inquire diligently into all things, hear also concerning those stones which were rejected. All these received the name of the Son of God, and with that the power of these virgins. Having therefore received these spirits, they were perfected, and brought into the number of the servants

---

<sup>a</sup> Vid. Annot. edit. Oxon. p. 116. d.

<sup>a</sup> Vid. Origen. Philocal. c. viii.



hope of salvation, but are now refreshed to the renewal of life." Then I said, "Shew me now, Sir, why this tower is not built upon the ground, but upon a rock, and upon the gate?" He replied, "Thou art foolish and without understanding, therefore thou askest this." And I said, "Sir, I must needs ask all things of you, because I understand nothing at all. For all your answers are great and excellent; and which a man can hardly understand."—"Hear," said he: "The name of the Son of God is great, and without bounds, and the whole world is supported by it."—"If, therefore," said I, "every creature of God be sustained by his Son, why should he not support those also who have been invited by him, and who carry his name and walk in his commandments?"—"Seest thou not," said he, "that he does support them, who with all their heart bear his name? He therefore is their foundation, and gladly supports those who do not deny his name, but willingly bear it."

XV. And I said, "Sir, tell me the names of these virgins; and of those women that were clothed with the black garment."—"Hear!" said he, "the names of those virgins who are the more powerful, and stand at the corners of the gate. These are their names: the first is called 'Faith; the second, Continnence; the third, Power; the fourth, Patience; the rest, which stand beneath these, are, Simplicity, Innocence, Chastity, Cheerfulness, Truth, Understanding, Concord, Charity: Whosoever therefore bear these names, and the name of the Son of God, shall enter into the kingdom of God. Hear now!" said he, "the names of those women who were clothed with the black

---

<sup>1</sup> Origen. Hom. 13. in Ezek.

They therefore, being dead, were nevertheless sealed with the seal of the Son of God, and so entered into the kingdom of God. For before a man receives the name of the Son of God, he is ordained unto death; but when he receives that seal, he is freed from death, and assigned unto life. Now that seal is the water of Baptism, into which men go down under the obligation unto death, but come up appointed unto life. Wherefore to those also was this seal<sup>1</sup> preached; and they made use of it, that they might enter into the kingdom of God." And I said, "Why then, Sir, did these forty stones also ascend with them out of the deep, having already received that seal?" He answered, "'Because these apostles and teachers, who preached the name of the Son of God, dying after they had received his faith and power, preached to them who were dead before; and they gave this seal to them. They went down, therefore, into the water with them, and again came up. But these went down whilst they were alive, and came up again alive; whereas those, who were before dead, went down dead, but came up alive. Through these, therefore, they received life, and knew the Son of God: for which cause they came up with them, and were fit to come into the building of the tower; and were not cut, but put in intire; because they died in righteousness, and in great purity; only this seal was wanting to them. Thus you have the explication of these things."

XVII. I answered, "Sir, tell me now what concerns those mountains, why they are so different; some of one form, and some of another?"

<sup>1</sup> *Traditur*, delivered.

<sup>2</sup> Vid. Cotelier. Annot. in loc. p. 77, 78. Comp. 1 Pet. iii. 19.

<sup>3</sup> Vid. Clem. Alex. Strom. ii. et vi.

"Hear!" said he: "These twelve mountains which thou seest are twelve nations, which make up the whole world. Wherefore the Son of God is preached to them, by those whom he sent unto them."—"But why," said I, "are they different, and every one of a figure?" He replied: "Hearken! Those twelve nations which possess the whole world, are twelve people: and as thou hast beheld these mountains different, so are they. I will, therefore, open to thee the meaning and actions of every mountain."—"But first, Sir," said I, "shew me this: seeing these mountains are so different, how have they agreed into the building of this tower, and been brought to one colour; and are no less bright than those which came out of the deep?"—"Because," replied he, "all the nations which are under heaven, have heard and believed in the same one name of the Son of God, by whom they are called. Wherefore, having received his seal, they have all been made partakers of the same <sup>1</sup>understanding and <sup>2</sup>knowledge; and their faith and charity have been the same; and they have carried the spirits of these virgins together with his name. And therefore the building of this tower appeared to be of the same colour, and did shine like the brightness of the sun. But after they had thus agreed in one mind, there began to be one body of them all: howbeit some of them polluted themselves, and were cast off from the kind of the righteous, and again returned to their former state, and became even worse than they were before."

XVIII. "How," said I, "Sir, were they worse who knew the Lord?" He answered: "If he who knows not the Lord liveth wickedly, the

---

<sup>1</sup> Prudence.

<sup>2</sup> Sense.

punishment of his wickedness attends him. But he who has known the Lord ought to abstain altogether from all wickedness, and more and more to be the servant of righteousness. And does not he then seem to thee to sin more who ought to follow goodness, if he shall prefer the part of sin, than he who offends without knowing the 'power of God? Wherefore these are, indeed, ordained unto death; but they who have known the Lord, and have seen his wonderful works, if they shall live wickedly, they shall be doubly punished, and shall die for ever. As therefore thou hast seen, that after the stones were cast out of the tower, which had been rejected, they were delivered to wicked and cruel spirits; and thou beheldst the tower so cleansed, as if it had all been made of one stone; <sup>2</sup>so the church of God, when it shall be purified, (the 'wicked and counterfeits, the 'mischievous and doubtful, and all that have behaved themselves wickedly in it, and committed divers kinds of sin, being cast out,) shall become one body; and there shall be one understanding, one opinion, one faith, and the same charity: and then shall the Son of God rejoice among them, and shall receive his people with a pure will." And I said: "Sir, all these things are great and honourable; but now shew unto me the effect and force of every mountain; that every soul which trusteth in the Lord, when it shall hear these things, may honour his great, and wonderful, and holy name!" "Hear!" said he, "the variety of these mountains, that is, of the twelve nations:—

XIX. "They who have believed of the first

---

<sup>1</sup> Lat. *Virtutem*.

<sup>2</sup> Evil.

<sup>3</sup> Vid. Orig. Philocal. c. viii.

<sup>4</sup> Profligate.

mountain, which is black, are those who have revolted from the faith, and spoken wicked things against the Lord, and betrayed the servants of God. These are condemned to death; there is no repentance for them; and therefore they are black, because their kind is wicked. Of the second mountain, which was smooth, are the 'hypocrites, who have believed, and the teachers of naughtiness: and these are next to the foregoing, which have not in them the fruit of righteousness. For as their mountain is barren, and without fruit, so also such kind of men have, indeed, the name of Christians, but are empty of faith; nor is there any fruit of the truth in them. Nevertheless there is room left to them for repentance, if they shall suddenly pursue it: but if they shall delay, they also shall be partakers of death with the foregoing kind." I said, "Sir, why is there room left to those for repentance, and not to the foregoing kind, seeing their sins are well nigh the same?" "There is, therefore," said he, "to these a return unto life, by repentance, because they have not blasphemed against their Lord, nor betrayed the servants of God; but by their desire of gain have deceived men, leading them according to the lusts of sinners; wherefore they shall suffer for this thing. Howbeit there is still left them room for repentance, because they have not spoken any thing wickedly against their Lord.

XX. "They who are of the third mountain, which had thorns and brambles, are those who believed, but were some of them rich, others taken up with many affairs: the brambles are their riches; the thorns, those affairs in which they

were engaged. Now they who are entangled in much business, and in diversity of affairs, join not themselves to the servants of God, but wander, being called away by those affairs with which they are choked : and so they which are rich, with difficulty yield themselves to the 'conversation of the servants of God ; fearing lest any thing should be asked of them. These therefore shall hardly enter into the kingdom of God. For as men walk with difficulty barefoot over thorns, even so these kind of men shall scarcely enter into the kingdom of God. Nevertheless there is afforded to all these a return unto repentance ; if so be they shall quickly return to it ; that because in their former days they have neglected to work, in the time that is to come they may do some good. If therefore, having repented, they shall do the works of righteousness, they shall live : but if they shall continue in their evil courses, they shall be delivered to those women that will take away their life.

XXI. " As for the fourth mountain, which had many herbs, the upper part of which is green, but the roots dry, and some of which being touched with the heat of the sun, are withered ; it denotes the doubtful, who have believed, and some others who carry the Lord in their tongues, but have him not in their heart : therefore their grass is dry, and without root ; because they live only in words, but their works are dead. These therefore are neither dead nor living, and withal are doubtful. For the doubtful are neither green nor dry ; that is, neither dead nor alive. For as the herbs dry away at the sight of the sun ; so the doubtful, as soon as they hear of persecution, and fear incon-

---

<sup>1</sup> Vid. edit. Oxon. p. 178. not. b.

quarrels languish in the faith: nevertheless many of these have repented, and so will the rest when they shall hear my commands; for their controversies are but small, and they will easily return unto repentance. But those who have the greater clefts, will be as stiff stones, mindful of grudges and offences, and full of anger among themselves. These therefore are cast from the tower, and refused to be put into its building; for this kind of men shall hardly live. Our God and Lord, who ruleth over all things, and has power over all his creatures, will not remember our offences, but is easily appeased by those who confess their sins: but man, being languid, mortal, infirm, and full of sins, perseveres in his anger against man; as if it were in his power to save or to destroy him. But I, as the angel who am set over your repentance, admonish you, that whosoever among you has any such purpose, he should lay it aside, and return unto repentance, and the Lord will heal your former sins, if you shall purge yourselves from this evil spirit; but if you shall not do it, ye shall be delivered to him unto death.

XXIV. "As for the seventh mountain, in which the grass was green and flourishing, and the whole mountain fruitful; and all kind of cattle fed upon the grass of it; and the more the grass was eaten, so much the more it flourished; they are such as believed, and were always good and upright, and without any differences among themselves, but still rejoiced in the servants of God, having put on the spirit of these virgins, and been always forward to shew mercy to all men, readily giving to all men of their labours, without upbraiding, and without deliberation. Wherefore the Lord, seeing their simplicity and 'innocence, has increased them in

---

<sup>1</sup> Infancy.

God; but being separated from them, have for a little carefulness lost their lives. For as a vine that is forsaken in a hedge, and never dressed, perishes and is choked by the weeds, and in time becomes wild, and ceases to be useful to its Lord, so this kind of men, despairing of themselves, and being soured, have begun to be unprofitable to their Lord. Howbeit to these there is, after all, repentance allowed, if they shall not be found from their hearts to have denied Christ: but if any of these shall be found to have denied him from his heart, I cannot tell whether such a one can attain unto life. I say, therefore, that if any one hath denied, he should in these days return unto repentance; for it cannot be that any one who now denies the Lord can afterwards attain unto salvation: nevertheless, repentance is proposed unto them, who have formerly denied. But he who will repent must hasten on his repentance, before the building of this tower is finished; otherwise, he shall be delivered by those women unto death. But they that are maimed, are the deceitful; and those who mix with one another, these are the serpents that you saw mingled in that mountain. For as the poison of serpents is deadly unto men, so the words of such persons infect and destroy men. They are, therefore, maimed in their faith, by reason of that kind of life which they lead. Howbeit some of them, having repented, have been saved; and so shall others of the same kind be also saved, if they shall repent; but if not, they shall die by those women whose power and force they possess.

XXVII. "For what concerns the tenth mountain, in which were the trees covering the cattle; they are such as have believed; and some of them been bishops; that is, governors of the churches:



who suffer death for his name's sake, ought to honour the Lord, that he has esteemed you worthy to bear his name, and that you should be delivered from all your sins. And why, therefore, do you not rather esteem yourselves happy? Yea, think verily, that if any one among you suffer, he performs a great work? For the Lord giveth you life, and ye understand it not. For your offences did oppress you; and if you had not suffered for his name's sake, ye had now been dead unto the Lord. Wherefore I speak this unto you who deliberate, whether ye should confess or deny him—Confess that ye have the Lord for your God, lest at any time denying him, ye be delivered over into bonds. For if all nations punish their servants which deny their masters, what think you that the Lord will do unto you, who has the power of all things? Remove, therefore, out of your hearts these doubts, that ye may live for ever unto God.

XXIX. "As for the twelfth mountain, which was white; they are such as have believed like sincere children, into whose thoughts there never came any malice; nor have they ever known what sin was, but have always continued in their integrity. Wherefore this kind of men shall, without all doubt, inherit the kingdom of God; because they have never, in any thing, defiled the commandments of God, but have continued with sincerity in the same condition all the days of their life. Whosoever, therefore," said he, "shall continue as children without malice, shall be more honourable than all those of whom I have yet spoken: for all such children are honoured by the Lord, and esteemed the first of all. Happy, therefore, are ye who shall remove all malice from you, and put on innocence; because ye shall first see the Lord." And after he had thus ended his

truth, he commanded that they should continue good, and that their riches should be pared away: for he would not have them taken wholly away, to the end they might do some good with that which was left, and live unto God; because they also are of a good kind. Therefore was there a little cut off from them, and so they were put into the building of this tower.

XXXI. "As for the rest, which continued still round, and were not found fit for the building of this tower, because they have not yet received the seal; they were carried back to their place, because they were found very round. But this present world must be cut away from them, and the vanities of their riches; and then they will be fit for the kingdom of God. For they must enter into the kingdom of God, because God has blessed this innocent kind. Of this kind, therefore, none shall fall away; for though any of them being tempted by the devil should offend, he shall soon return to his Lord God. I, the angel of repentance, esteem you happy, whosoever are innocent as little children, because your portion is good and honourable with the Lord: and I say unto all you who have received this seal, Keep simplicity, and remember not the offences which are committed against you, nor continue in malice, or in bitterness, through the memory of offences, but become one spirit, and provide remedies for these evil rents, and remove them from you, that the Lord of the sheep may rejoice at it; for he will rejoice, if he shall find all whole. But if any of

<sup>1</sup> MS. Lamb. *Structuram turris hujus.*

<sup>2</sup> MS. Lamb. *Et unum quemque spiritum fieri*: which appears from the Greek of Antiochus to be the true reading—*καὶ ἑκάστου ἐν πνεύματι.*

<sup>3</sup> MS. Lamb. *Gaudeat de his.* Gr. Antioch. *χαρὰ ἐν αὐτοῖς.*

<sup>4</sup> Vide Antioch. Hom. cxlii.

the Lord do the same concerning his spirit, by reason of thy deed?"—"Undoubtedly," said I, "he will do the same to all those whom he shall find to continue in the remembrance of injuries." "Tread not then under foot," said he, "his mercy; but rather honour him, because he is so patient with respect to your offences, and not like one of you; but repent, for that will be profitable for you.

XXXIII. "All these things which are above written, I the Shepherd, the angel of repentance, have shewn and spoken to the servants of God. If therefore ye shall believe, and hearken to these words, and shall walk in them, and shall correct your ways, ye shall live. But if ye shall continue in malice, and in the remembrance of injuries, no such sinners shall live unto God. All these things which were to be spoken by me, I have thus delivered unto you." Then the Shepherd said unto me: "Hast thou asked all things of me?"—I answered: "Sir, I have."—"Why then," said he, "hast thou not asked concerning the spaces of these stones that were put in the building, that I may explain that also unto thee?" I answered: "Sir, I forgot it."—"Hear then," said he, "concerning those also. They are those who have now heard these commands, and have repented with all their hearts: and when the Lord saw that their repentance was good and pure, and that they should continue in it, he commanded their former sins to be blotted out. For these spaces were their sins; and they are, therefore, made even that they might not appear."

---

<sup>1</sup> See before, No. X.

hereafter do any such thing; and therefore I speak these things with thee, that thou mayst persevere; for he has given me a good account concerning thee. But thou shalt speak these things to others, that they who either have repented, or shall repent, <sup>1</sup>may be like-minded with thee; and he may give me as good an account of them also, and I may do the same unto the Lord." I answered: "Sir, I declare to all men the wonderful works of God; and I hope that all who love them, and have before sinned, when they shall hear these things, will repent, and recover life." "Continue, therefore," said he, "in this ministry, and fulfil it. And whosoever shall do according to the commands of this shepherd, he shall live; and shall have great honour both here and with the Lord. But they that shall not keep his commands, flee from their life, and are adversaries unto it. And they that follow not his commands, shall deliver themselves unto death, and shall be every one guilty of his own blood. But I say unto thee, keep these commandments, and thou shalt find a cure for all thy sins.

III. "Moreover, I have sent <sup>2</sup>these virgins to dwell with thee; for I have seen that they are very kind to thee. Thou shalt, therefore, have them for thy helpers, that thou mayst the better keep the commands which he has given thee; for these commands cannot be kept without these virgins. And <sup>3</sup>I see how they are willing to be with thee; and I will also command them, that they shall not at all depart from thy house. Only do thou

---

<sup>1</sup> *Eadem quæ tu sentiant.*

<sup>2</sup> What is meant by these virgins. See before, Simil. ix. sect. 15.

<sup>3</sup> MS. Lamb. *Vide*; which appears from the close of this sect. to be the true reading.

is in great torment and necessity. Whosoever therefore delivers such a soul from necessity, gets great joy unto himself. For he that is grieved with such inconveniences, is equally tormented, as if he were in chains. And many upon the account of such calamities, being not able to bear them, have chosen even to destroy themselves. He therefore that knows the calamity of such a man, and does not free him from it, commits a great sin, and is guilty of his blood. Wherefore exercise yourselves in good works, as many as have received ability from the Lord, lest whilst ye delay to do them, the building of the tower be finished; because for your sakes the building is stopped. Except, therefore, ye shall make haste to do well, the tower shall be finished, and ye shall be shut out of it. And after he had thus spoken with me, he rose up from the bed, and departed, taking the shepherd and virgins with him. Howbeit he said unto me, that he would send back the shepherd and virgins unto my house.  
*Amen.*

THE  
SECOND EPISTLE OF ST. CLEMENT  
TO  
THE CORINTHIANS.

---

I. BRETHREN, we ought so to think of Jesus Christ as of God; as of the Judge of the living and the dead: nor should we think 'any less of our salvation. For if we think 'meanly of him, we shall hope only to receive 'some small things from him. And if we 'do so, we shall sin; not considering<sup>3</sup> from whence we have been called, and by whom, and to what place; and how much Jesus Christ vouchsafed to suffer for our sakes. What recompense then shall we render unto him? Or what fruit that may be worthy of what he has given to us? For indeed 'how great are those advantages which we owe to him in relation to our holiness! He has illuminated us; as a father, he has called us his children; he has saved us who were lost and undone. What praise shall we give to him? Or what reward that may be answerable to those things which we have received? We were defective in our understandings; worshipping stones and wood, gold and silver, and brass, the works of men's hands; and our whole life was nothing else but death. Wherefore being encompassed with darkness, and having such a mist before our eyes, we have looked up, and through his will have laid aside the cloud wherewith we

---

<sup>1</sup> Little things, or meanly.

<sup>2</sup> Hear as of little things.

<sup>3</sup> Knowing.

<sup>4</sup> How great holy-things do we owe unto him.

were surrounded. For he had compassion upon us, and being moved in his bowels towards us, he saved us; having beheld in us much error, and destruction, and seen that we had no hope of salvation, but only through him. For he called us, who were not; and was pleased from nothing to give us a being.

II. *'Rejoice thou barren that bearest not, break forth and cry thou that travailest not; for she that is desolate hath many more children than she that hath an husband.* In that he said, *Rejoice thou barren that bearest not*, he spake of us; for our church was barren, before that children were given unto it. And again, when he said, *cry thou that travailest not*, he implied thus much: that after the manner of women in travail, we should not cease to put up our prayers unto God abundantly<sup>2</sup>. And for what follows: *because she that is desolate hath more children than she that hath an husband*<sup>3</sup>: It was therefore added, because our people which seemed to have been forsaken by God, now believing in him, are become more than they who seemed to have God. And another Scripture saith, *I came not to call the righteous but sinners [to repentance]*<sup>4</sup>. The meaning of which is this; that those who were lost, must be saved. For that is indeed truly great and wonderful, not to confirm those things that are yet standing, but those which are falling. Even so did it seem good to Christ to save what was lost; and when he came into the world, he saved many, and called us who were already lost.

III. Seeing then he had shewed so great mercy

<sup>1</sup> Isai. liv. 1.

<sup>2</sup> Ἀπαλυσίς. See St. Jam. i. 5.

<sup>3</sup> Compare Rom. xli. 8. 2 Cor. viii. 2. ix. 11, 13.

<sup>4</sup> Mat. ix. 13.

towards us; and chiefly for that we who are alive, do now no longer sacrifice to dead Gods, nor pay any worship to them, but have by him been brought to the knowledge of the Father of truth; 'whereby shall we shew that we do indeed know him, but by not denying him by whom we have come to the knowledge of him? For even he himself saith, *Whosoever shall confess me before men, him will I confess before my Father*<sup>1</sup>. This therefore is our reward, if we shall confess him by whom we have been saved. But wherein must we confess him? Namely, in doing those things which he saith, and not disobeying his commandments: by worshipping him not with our lips only, but with all our heart, and with all our mind. For he saith in Isaiah: *This people honoureth me with their lips, but their heart is far from me*<sup>2</sup>.

IV. Let us then not only call him Lord; for that will not save us. For he saith, *Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall be saved, but he that doth righteousness*<sup>3</sup>. Wherefore, brethren, let us confess him by our works; by loving one another; in not committing adultery—not speaking evil against each other—not envying one another: but by being temperate, merciful, good. Let us also have a mutual sense of one another's sufferings; and not be covetous of money: but let us, by our good works, confess God, and not by those that are otherwise. Also, let us not fear men; but rather God. <sup>4</sup>Wherefore if we should do such wicked things, the Lord hath said, *Though ye should be joined unto me, even in my very bosom, and not keep my commandments, I*

---

<sup>1</sup> What is the knowledge which is towards him.

<sup>2</sup> Mat. x. 32.

<sup>3</sup> Isai. xxix. 13.

<sup>4</sup> Mat. vii. 21.

<sup>5</sup> Wherefore we doing these things.



cannot therefore be the friends of both; but we must resolve by forsaking the one, to enjoy the other. And we think it is better to hate the present things, as little, short-lived, and corruptible; and to love those which are to come, which are truly good and incorruptible. For if we do the will of Christ, we shall find rest: but if not, nothing shall deliver us from eternal punishment if we shall disobey his commands. For even thus saith the Scripture in the prophet Ezekiel, *If Noah, Job, and Daniel should rise up*<sup>1</sup>, they shall not deliver their children in captivity. Wherefore, if such righteous men are not able by their righteousness to deliver their children; how can we hope to enter into the kingdom of God, except we keep our baptism holy and undefiled? Or who shall be our advocate, unless we shall be found to have done what is holy and just?

VII. Let us therefore, my brethren, contend with all earnestness, knowing that our combat is at hand; and that many go long voyages to encounter for a corruptible reward: and yet all are not crowned, but they only that labour much, and strive gloriously. Let us therefore so contend that we may all be crowned. Let us run in the straight road the race that is incorruptible: and let us in great numbers pass unto it, and strive that we may receive the crown. But, and if we cannot all be crowned, let us come as near to it as we are able. Moreover, we must consider, that he who contends in a corruptible combat, if he be found doing any thing that is not fair is taken away and scourged, and cast out of the lists. What think ye then that he shall suffer, who does

---

<sup>1</sup> Ezek. xiv. 14, 20.

flesh. 'Our one Lord Jesus Christ, who has saved us, being first a spirit, was made flesh, and so called us: Even so we also shall in this flesh receive the reward. Let us therefore love one another, that we may attain unto the kingdom of God. Whilst we have time to be healed, let us deliver up ourselves to God our physician, giving our reward unto him. And what reward shall we give? Repentance out of a pure heart. For he knows all things beforehand, and searches out our very hearts. Let us therefore give praise unto him; not only with our mouths, but with all our souls; that he may receive us as children<sup>1</sup>. For so the Lord hath said: *They are my brethren who do the will of my Father.*

X. Wherefore, my Brethren, let us do the will of the Father, who hath called us, that we may live. Let us pursue virtue, and forsake wickedness which leadeth us into sins; and let us flee all ungodliness, that evils overtake us not. For if we shall do our diligence to live well, peace shall follow us. 'And yet how hard is it to find a man that does this! For almost all are led by human fears, chusing rather the present enjoyments, than the future promise. For they know not how great a torment the present enjoyments bring with them; nor what delights the future promise. And if they themselves only did this, it might the more easily be endured: but now they go on to infect innocent souls with their evil doctrines; not knowing that both themselves, and those that hear them, shall receive a double condemnation.

XI. Let us therefore serve God with a pure

<sup>1</sup> MS. Alex. planè sic exhibet: *ὡς Χριστός*.

<sup>2</sup> Vox *Θεῶν* non est in MS. Mat. xii. 50.

<sup>3</sup> For, for this cause we cannot find a man. *Aliter Wendel in tract. Lat. q. v.*

# INDEX.

---

## ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THIS INDEX.

- Clem. . . . . *The First Epistle of St. Clement.*  
 2 Clem. . . . . *The Second Epistle of ditto.*  
 Polyc. . . . . *The Epistle of Polycarp to the Philippians.*  
 Ignat. Ephes. or Trall. &c. - *St. Ignatius's Epistles to the Ephesians, Trallians, &c.*  
 Mart. Ignat. or Polyc. . . . *The Martyrdom of St. Ignatius, or St. Polycarp.*  
 Barn. . . . . *The Epistle of Barnabas.*  
 Herm. Vis. Com. or Sim. - *The Visions, Commands, or Similitudes of Hermas.*

N. B. The Figures denote the Sections.

---

## Alms-giving.

- HOW we ought to give.* Barn. 19.  
 Herm. ii. Com.  
*Exhortations to it.* Barn. 19. Herm.  
 Vis. iii. 9. Sim. x. 4.

## Angels.

- Attend the Death of Good Men.*  
 Herm. Vis. ii. 2.  
*Every man hath two Angels.* Herm.  
 Com. vi.

## Anger.

- The Mischief and Sinfulness of it.*  
 Herm. Com. v. 2.

## Apostates.

- No Repentance allowed to them.*  
 Herm. Sim. vi. 2. viii. 6. 8. ix.  
 19.  
*They cannot be saved.* Herm. Sim.  
 ix. 19, 26.

## Baptism.

- Forgives all Sins committed before it.*  
 Barn. 11. Herm. Com. iv. 3.  
*Its Necessity.* Herm. Vis. iii. 3.  
 Sim. ix. 16.

## Bishops.

- Of Divine Institution.* Clem. 42,  
 43. Ignat. Ephes. 3, 6.  
*In the Primitive Church the same*  
*as they are with us now.* Ignat.  
 Magnes. 2, 6, 13. Trall. 2, 7.  
 Philad. Inscript. 4, 7, 10. Smyrn.  
 8, 12. Polyc. 6. Mart. Ignat. 9.  
*The Reverence due to them.* Ignat.  
 Magnes. 3. Smyrn. 9.

*That we ought to adhere to their*  
*Communion.* Ignat. Smyrn. 8.  
 Magnes. 6, 7, 13.

*The Holy Sacraments to be ad-*  
*ministered only by them, or such*  
*as are appointed by them.* Ignat.  
 Smyrn. 8.

*Marriage not to be made without*  
*their knowledge and consent.*  
 Ignat. Polyc. 5.

*A Bishop ought to instruct, as well as*  
*govern his Church.* Mart. Ignat. 1.  
*Exhortations proper to be given by*  
*a Bishop to his People.* Ignat.  
 Polyc. 5, 6, &c.

*The Duty of a Bishop.* Ignat.  
 Polyc. 1, 2, 4.

## Business.

*Much Business a hindrance to Reli-*  
*gion.* Herm. Sim. iv. ix. 20.

*Body, see Resurrection.*

*The Bodies we here have, shall be*  
*restored to us.* Herm. Sim. v. 7.

## Calamities.

*God sends them upon us to bring us*  
*to Repentance.* Herm. vi. Sim. 3.

## Charity.

*What true Charity is.* Clem. 49.  
*The Praise of it.* Clem. 49, 50,  
 53, 54.  
*Exhortations to it.* Clem. 54, 55, &c.

## Christ.

*His Divinity.* Clem. 16, 36. Ignat.  
 Ephes. Inscription; and 7, 18, 19.

## INDEX.

Rom. Inscript. 3, 6. Polyc. 8.  
 Barn. 5. 2 Clem. 1.  
*Pre-existence.* Ignat. Magnes. 6, 8.  
 Barnab. 5. 2 Clem. 9. Herm.  
 Sim. ix. 12.  
*Eternity.* Ignat. Magnes. 6, 8.  
 Polyc. 3. Mart. Polyc. 14. Herm.  
 Sim. ix. 12.  
*His two Natures.* Ignat. Ephes.  
 7, 20. Smyrn. 1, 3. Polyc. 3.  
 Barn. 5.  
*Of his Birth, &c.* Ignat. Ephes. 19.  
 Magnes. 11.  
*That He is our High-Priest, and  
 Protector.* Clem. 58.  
*That there is no coming to God but  
 by him.* Herm. Sim. ix. 12, 16.  
 2 Clem. 1.  
*That the Ancient Fathers were saved  
 by him.* Ignat. Philad. 5, 9.  
 Herm. Sim. ix. 16.  
*So are we.* 2 Clem. 2, 3.  
*That He suffered for our Salvation.*  
 Clem. 12, 21, 49. Ignat. Smyrn.  
 2. Barnab. 5, 7. 2 Clem. 1.  
 Polyc. Epist. 8. Mart. 17.  
*That He truly suffered.* Ignat.  
 Magnes. 11. Ignat. Trall. 9, 10.  
 Smyrn. 1. 2.  
*That he was raised from the dead by  
 the Father.* Ignat. Trall. 9.  
*By Himself.* Ignat. Smyrn. 2.  
*That He shall judge the World.*  
 Barn. 5, 9.  
*The Benefits which we have All re-  
 ceived from Christ, in order to our  
 Salvation.* 2 Clem. 1, 2.

### Christian.

*A Christian not to be judged of by his  
 outward Profession, but by his  
 true Piety.* Ignat. Ephes. 14.

### Commands.

*The Commands of God possible to be  
 obeyed.* Herm. Com. xii. 3.

### Communion.

*The necessity of Church Communion.*  
 Ignat. Ephes. 5.

### Confession.

*To be made to God.* Clem. 51.

### Contentment.

*Recommended.* Clem. 37, 38.

### Correction.

*The Benefit of it.* Clem. 56, 57.

### Covetousness.

*The Mischief of it.* Polyc. 4, 11.

### Death.

*While we live well, we should not  
 fear to die.* 2 Clem. 5.

### Deacons.

*Their Duty.* Polyc. 5.

### Desire.

*We must not encourage Evil-Desires.*  
 Herm. Com. xii. 1.

### Devil.

*That we ought not to fear him.*  
 Herm. Com. vii.

*He cannot overcome us if we strive  
 against him.* Herm. Com. xii. 5.

*Christ has subjected his power to us.*  
 Ignat. Mart. 5, 6.

### Devotion.

*The Benefit of frequent Public Dev-  
 otion.* Ignat. Ephes. 13.

### Differ.

*How we ought to behave ourselves  
 towards those who differ from us.*

Ignat. Ephes. 10.

*That we should not give offence to  
 them.* Ignat. Trall. 8.

### Envy.

*The Mischief of it.* Clem. 4, 5, &c.

### Evil.

*That we must abstain from evil, as  
 well as do good.* Herm. Com.  
 viii. Clem. 35.

*Eucharist, see Bishop—  
 Sacrament,*

### Example.

*That we should imitate the Exam-  
 ples of Christ and his Saints.*  
 Polyc. Epist. 8, 9.

*Especially in their Sufferings.* Polyc.  
 8, 9.

## INDEX.

### Exhortation.

*Proper to all Degrees of Men in the Church.* Clem. 21, 30. Ignat. Polyc. 5, 6.

### Fast.

*What a true Fast is. And how we may render our Fasting acceptable unto God.* Barnab. 3. Herm. Sim. v. 1, 3.

### Faith.

(*And see Justification.*)

*The necessity of Faith in Christ.* Ignat. Smyrn. 5, 6.

### Fear.

*We must fear God, and not be afraid of the Devil.* Herm. Com. vii.

*The Benefit of fearing God.* Ibid.

### Future Happiness.

*The Greatness of it.* Clem. 34, 35.

### Future Judgment.

*That there shall be such a Judgment.* Barn. 21.

*Christ shall be the Judge. See Christ.*

*There is no escaping the Judgment of God.* Clem. 28.

*We shall be judged in the same Flesh in which we live here.* 2 Clem. 9.

### God.

*His Attributes: Maker of all things.* Clem. 27.

*Omniscient.* Clem. 27. Ignat. Ephes. 15.

*Almighty.* Clem. 27. Herm. Com. iv. 1. Sim. v. 7.

*There is but One true God.* Ignat. Mart. 5. Herm. Com. i.

*There is no flying from Him.* Clem. 28.

*Of the Nature of God, and our Duty to Him.* Herm. Com. i.

*His Presence.* 2 Clem. 9.

*He searcheth the Heart.* Clem. 21. 2 Clem. 9. Polyc. 4. Ignat. Magnes. 3.

*Faithful in all his Promises.* Clem. 27.

*Ordereth all Events.* Mart. Polyc. 2.

### Good.

*What Good we must do.* Herm. Com. viii.

### Good Works.

*We must be diligent to perform them, if we mean to be saved.* Clem. 34.

Happiness, *see* Future.

### Heretics; Heresy.

*We must avoid Heretics.* Ignat. Ephes. 7, 8, 9, &c. Philad. 2, 3. Smyrn. 4, 7. Trall. 6, 7. Phil. 3.

*The Danger of Them.* Ignat. Ephes. 16. Smyrn. 4. Trall. 11.

*Yet we must pray for Them.* Ignat. Smyrn. 4.

*We must arm ourselves against falling into Heresy.* Ignat. Trall. 6. to 14. Philad. 2.

*Their main Errors in those first times.* Polyc. 7. Ignat. Magn. 8, 9, 10. Trall. 9. Phil. 6. Smyrn. 2, 5.

*Their Practices.* Ignat. Smyrn. 7.

### Hospitality.

*Recommended.* Clem. 10, 11, 12.

### Humility.

*Recommended.* Clem. 16, 17, 18.

### Image.

*Wherein the Image of God consists.* Clem. 33.

Judge, Judgment, *see* Future.

### Justification.

*By Faith.* Clem. 32.

*We are Justified by the same Faith that the Holy Men were from the beginning.* Clem. 32.

### Law.

*The Sacrifices and Ceremonies of the Jewish Law, abolished.* Barnab. 2, 3.

## INDEX.

### Life.

*That we should not be solicitous after the things of this Life.* Herm. Sim. i.

### Lying.

*To be avoided.* Herm. Com. iii.

### Lord's-Day.

*Observed in the Primitive Church, in opposition to the Jewish Sabbath.* Ignat. Magnes. 9. Barn. 15.

### Marriage; see Bishop, Priest.

### Martyr, Martyrdom.

*The Anniversaries of the Martyrs wont to be kept in the Primitive Church.* Ignat. Mart. 14. Polyc. Mart. 18, 19, 21.

*What Respect the Christians had for them.* Mart. Polyc. 17.

*The Greatness of their Sufferings.* Mart. Ignat. 12. Mart. Polyc. 2, 16. Herm. Vis. iii. 2.

*Martyrs shall have a more than ordinary Degree of Glory hereafter.* Herm. Vis. iii. 1, 2. Sim. viii. 3. *Martyrdom blots out all Sins.* Herm. Sim. ix. 28.

*It is therefore to be esteemed a Happiness so to suffer.* Herm. Sim. ix. 28.

*Yet Men ought not needlessly to expose themselves to Suffering.* Mart. Polyc. 4.

*The extraordinary Supports which were afforded them by God in their Sufferings.* Polyc. Mart. 2.

### Mind.

*Against Trouble and Anxiety of Mind.* Herm. Com. v. 1.

### Ministers (& see Priests.)

*Anciently chosen by, and with the consent of, the Church.* Clem. 44. *Of Divine Appointment.* Clem. 42, 43. Ignat. Ephes. 3. Philad. Inscription.

*The Obedience due to them from the People, especially to the Bishop.*

Polyc. 5. Ignat. Trall. 2, 13. Smyrn. 8.

*The three Orders of Bishops, Priests, and Deacons, in the Primitive Church.* Ignat. Magnes. 1, 6, 13. Trall. 2, 3, 7. Philad. *See the Inscript.* 4, 7, 10. Smyrn. 8, 12. Polyc. 6. Mart. Ign. 9.

*Without these there is no Church.* Ignat. Trall. 3.

### Obedience.

*Recommended.* Clem. 10, 20.

*The Necessity of it.* 2 Clem. 3, 4, 5.

### Order.

*The Necessity of different Orders in the Church.* Clem. 37.

*Every one ought to do his Duty in that Rank, in which he is placed.* Clem. 38, 40.

### St. Paul.

*Preached to the utmost Bounds of the West.* Clem. 5.

### Patience.

*The Benefit of it.* Herm. Com. v. 1.

### Peace.

*Exhortations to Peace and Unity.* Clem. 46, 54. Ignat. Magnes. 6, 7. Trall. 13. Rom. 3, 4. Polyc. 6. *See Unity.*

### Prayer.

*We must pray with Faith, not doubting.* Herm. Com. ix.

*Public Prayer.* *See Devotion and Worship.*

*We must persevere in Prayer.* Herm. Com. ix.

*We must pray for others.* Ignat. Ephes. 10.

*Especially the Faithful.* Ignat. Eph. 21. Magn. 14. Trall. 13. Rom. 9.

### Priests, Presbyters.

*Married in the Primitive Church.* Polyc. 11.

*Their Duty.* Polyc. 6.

*The Three Orders of them in the Ancient Church.* Clem. 40.

### Promise.

*God is faithful in his Promises;*

## INDEX.

*therefore we ought not to doubt of them.* 2 Clem. 11.

### Prophets, Prophecy.

*That the ancient Prophets were inspired by Christ.* Barn. 5.

*The Gift of Prophecy still in the Church.* Mart. Polyc. 5, 9, 12, 14. Herm. Vis. ii. 2, 3. iii. 9. iv.

### Providence.

*God's Providence ordereth all things.* Polyc. Mart. 2.

### Punishment.

*The Punishment of Sinners in the other World shall be eternal.* Mart. Polyc. 2, 11. 2 Clem. 6, 7.

### Reliques.

*What Respect the ancient Christians paid to the Remains of their Martyrs.* Mart. Ignat. 12. Mart. Polyc. 17, 18.

### Repentance.

*God allows Repentance to Sinners.* Clem. 7, 8. Herm. Sim. vi. 3, &c. viii. 6. ix. 33.

*Apostates only excepted. See Apostates.*

*The time of Repentance.* Herm. Vis. iii. 5.

*No Repentance after Death.* Herm. Sim. vi. 2. &c. 2 Clem. 8.

*The Benefit of Repentance purchased for us by Christ.* Clem. 7.

*Men are not presently pardoned as soon as they begin to repent, till it appears that their Repentance is sincere.* Herm. Sim. vii.

*How there is but one Repentance for Sins committed after Baptism.* Herm. Com. iv. 3.

### Resurrection.

*That there should be a future Resurrection.* Clem. 24, 25, 26. Polyc. 2. Ignat. Trall. 9.

*We shall rise in the same Bodies.* 2 Clem. 9. See Body.

### Riches.

*The Danger of Riches: What use*

*we ought to make of them.* Herm. Vis. iii. 6. Sim. 1.

*The Rich blessed through the Prayers of the Poor whom they relieve.* Herm. Sim. ii.

### Rule.

*Particular Rules of Life.* Clem. 21, 30, 35. Polyc. Epist. 2. Barnab. 19.

### Sacrament.

*The Holy Sacraments of Baptism and the Lord's-Supper not to be administered but by the Bishop, or him whom the Bishop appoints.* Ignat. Smyrn. 8.

*That which is broken, and received in the Sacrament of the Lord's-Supper, Bread.* Ignat. Ephes. 5, 20. Comp. Smyrn. 7.

### Sadness.

*The Mischief of it.* Herm. Com. x. 1.

### Salvation.

*We are saved by the Blood of Christ.* Clem. 12.

*God desires that all Christians should be saved.* Herm. Sim. viii. 2.

*So should all good Christians.* Mart. Polyc. 1.

*No man can be saved without Piety.* 2 Clem. 6.

*An Exhortation to strive for Salvation.* 2 Clem. 7.

*We are saved by Grace, not by Works.* Polyc. 1.

### Scandal.

*We must not give Scandal to the Enemies of our Religion.* Ignat. Trall. 8.

### Schism.

*The Danger of it.* Ignat. Ephes. 5. Rom. 3. Trall. 7. Phil. 3.

*Exhortations against it.* Clem. 46.

### Scripture.

*The Holy Scriptures written by Divine Inspiration.* Clem. 45.

## INDEX.

### Sedition.

*Against Strife and Sedition of the People against their Bishops and Ministers.* Clem. 46, 47.

### Sin.

*We must answer to God for the Sins of those who belong unto us.* Herm. Vis. i. 3. ii. 2, 3. Sim. vii.

*That we ought not to be Partakers of other Men's Sins.* Herm. Com. ii. iv. 1.

### Speech.

*Against Evil Speaking.* Herm. Com. ii.

*We must not give Countenance to those who speak Evil of others.* Herm. Com. ii.

### Spirit.

*The Spirit of Christ, the first created.* Herm. Sim. vi. 6.

### Suffer.

*Christ supports all such as suffer for Him.* Mart. Polyc. 9.

*Exhortation to suffer for Christ.* Ignat. Rom. Polyc. 2, 3.

### Thought.

*The Sinfulness of wicked, or filthy Thoughts.* Herm. Vis. i. 1, 2. Com. iv.

### Transubstantiation.

*Against it.* Ignat. Ephes. 3, 20. Compare Ignat. Smyrn. 7.

### Trinity.

*Proved.* Mart. Ignat. 15. Mart. Polyc. 14.

### Virginity.

*To be continued in without boasting.* Ignat. Polyc. 5.

### Unity, see Peace.

*Unity with the Bishop, the best means to secure us against falling into Heresy.* Ignat. Phil. 2, 3, 7. Trall. 7.

*Exhortations to Peace and Unity.* Clem. 14, 15. Ignat. Ephes. 4. Magnes. 6, 7. Philad. 4, 7. Polyc. 1.

### Way.

*There are two Ways; of Life, and of Death.* Barn. 19.

*How we may go in the Way of Life.* Barn. 19.

*What is the Way of Death.* Herm. 20.

### World.

*We live in this World as in a Pilgrimage.* Herm. Sim. iii. 1.

*We cannot serve this World and the Next.* 2 Clem. 6.

*The Good and Bad not to be distinguished in this World.* Herm. Sim. iii. *But they shall be in the Other.* Herm. Sim. iv.

### Worship.

*Appointed Times of Public-Worship.* Clem. 40, 41.

*Appointed Persons for the performing of it.* Clem. 40, 42.

*Settled by the Apostles.* Clem. 42, 44.

THE END.

R. Watts, Printer, Broxbourne.









3 2044 069 682 060

~~FEB 12 1972~~

JUN 24 1974

~~DEC 31 1979~~

~~JUN 30 1982~~

A  
1

